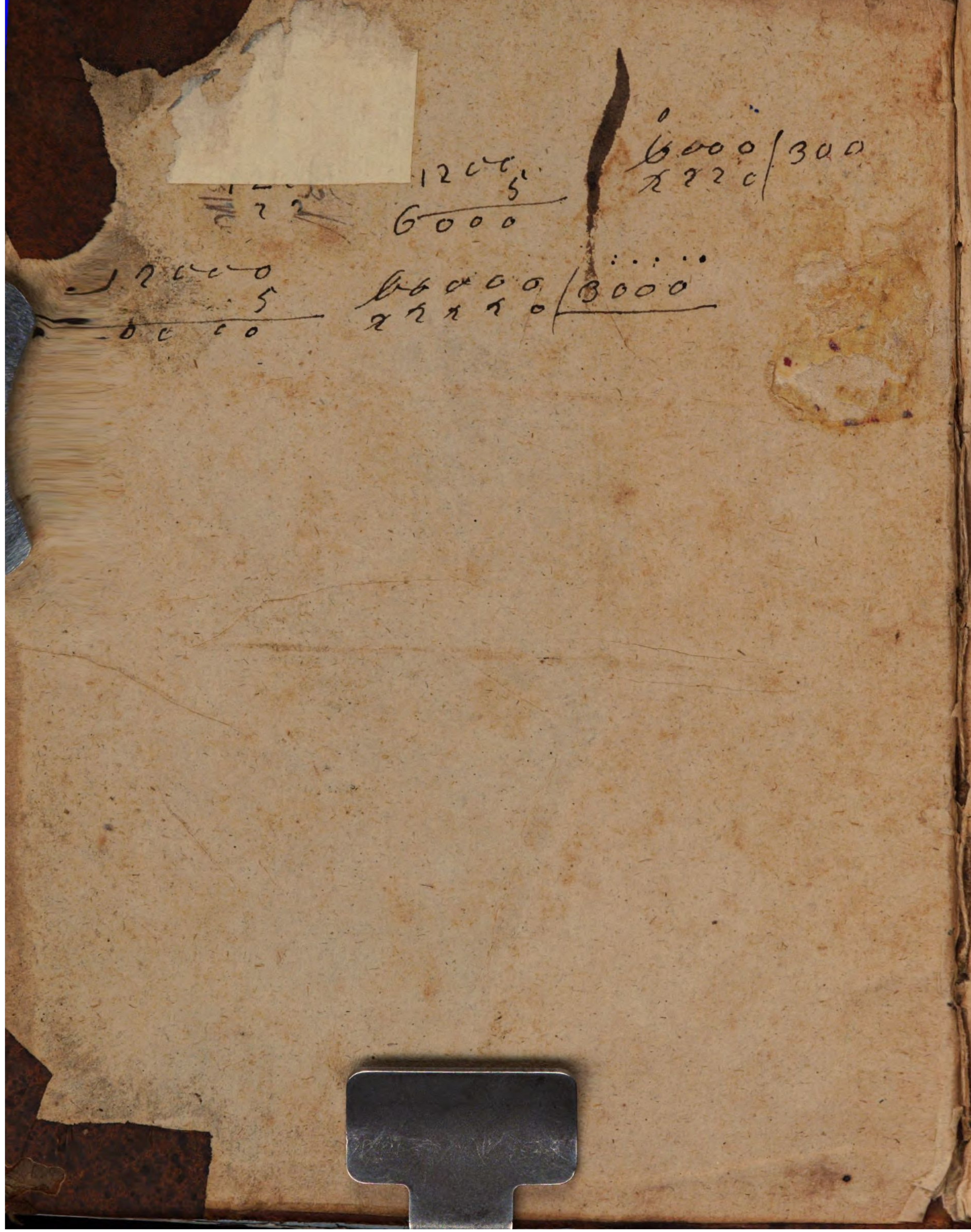


De Harold

London y. 27 of march 1729

BIBLIOTHECA
REGIA
MONACENSIS

Oec. 147 h 4 2 a 04

Oec. N. 147 s.

Oeconomia. Hortorum cultura. Systemata & methodi. 260.

4°

Oec. agr. N. 75

Oecon. 147

R

The Compleat

English Gardner:

Or, A Sure Guide to Young

Planters and Gardners:

In Three PARTS

I. Shewing the beſt Way and Order of Planting and Raiſing all ſorts of Stocks, Fruit-Trees, and Shrubs, with the divers Ways of Ingrafting and Inoculating in their ſeveral Seaſons.

II. How to Order the Kitchen Garden for all ſorts of Herbs, Roots, and Sallads.

III. The Ordering of the Garden of Pleaſure, with Variety of Knots, and Wilderneſs-Work, after the beſt and neweſt Faſhion, all cut in 24 curious Copper-Plates; alſo the moſt Approved Ways for Raiſing all ſorts of Flowers, with Directions to Order Arbours, and Hedges in Gardning.

The Eleventh Edition.

To which is now Added,

A SUPPLEMENT, Directing how to know what ſort of Earth is proper for all ſorts of Fruit-Trees, and when 'tis proper to Dung, and when not; Evils in Fruit-Trees how to remedy, to preſerve Wall-Fruits; rare Secrets, for want of Knowledge thereof, many chief Plants dye: To know the proper Seaſon for Herbs, Plants, &c.

A SUPPLEMENT to the Flower-Garden, in many rare Curioſities, being Secrets known to few, to order your Choice Plants, Flowers, and make them Flouriſh, as Oranges, Limons, Aloes, &c. The Seaſon to remove them, and how to order the Stow and Fire-Place, &c. What Greens and Choice Flowers beſt endure Cold, and when to timely Houſe them. Prognoſticks or Obſervations of the moſt proper Time to Sow, Set, Plant, &c. Monthly Obſervations relating to Greens; their Ordering, Preſerving, Houſing, and to make them Flouriſh, &c. Monthly Obſervations throughout the Year, to order the Orchard, Kitchen, and Flower-Gardning.

Begun by *Leonard Monger*, above Thirty Years a Practitioner in the ART of Garáning, and now enlarged by way of SUPPLEMENT, by a Lover of this Princely Diverſion, and Profitable Recreation.

LONDON: Printed for *M. Wotton*, at the *Three Daggers* in *Fleet-ſtreet*; and *G. Conyers*, at the *Ring* in *Little Britain*. Pr. 4 s.

Bayer. Staats-
Bibliothek
München

READER,

THE kind Acceptance this BOOK has deservedly met withal, put me upon making a Supplement to it, that it might be the most Compleat Book of this Nature; and tho' there are other Books of this kind, that runs near our Title, with Outlandish Names to set them off, yet I question not, but upon Trial, thou wilt find our English Author to exceed them all. Here you have Thirty Years Experience of an Able Gardner, (as also a Noble Man's,) and a plain and faithful Account of his Success in this curious Practice; whereas, among other Pretenders to that Art, you will find by woful Experience, if you try them, how you are Imposed upon. Therefore this Book I recommend, as a faithful Guide to all, especially the young Gardner and Planter.

Farewel, *S. G.*

BOOK's *Sold at the* Ring *in* Little-Britain.

THE *History of Bees:* Shewing their Admirable Nature, Property, Generation and Collony; their Government, Loyalty, and Industry, Enemies, Wars, Magnanimity: Together with the right Ordering of them. By *Ch. Butler*, price 1 *s.*

The Florists Vade Mecum: Or, Choice Directions for raising of Flowers of all sorts, with divers New Experiments: The 3d. Edition. By *S. Gilbert.* 1 *s.*

The Way to save Wealth: Or, How to Live for 2d. a Day.

The Way to get Wealth, by making 23 sorts of English Wine, equal to French. price 1. 6*d.*

One Thousand Notable Things about Gardning, Physick, *&c.* of great Use to all, especially those that delight in Gardning. price 1. 6*d.*

Markham's Master-piece, shewing how to cure Horses, and all sorts of Black and White Cattle. price 4 *s.*

Nourse's Husbandry. price 5 *s.*

Lambert of Cattle. price 1 *s.*

The Experienc'd Farrier's Jewel. price 1 *s.*

The CONTENTS. The order and manner of raiſing all ſorts of Fruit-Trees, with the ſeveral ways of Grafting, Inoculating, and Husbandring them for the aforeſaid purpoſe.

OF the raiſing of all ſorts of Stocks, with the ſeveral neceſſary Seaſons for the ſame Pag. 1

Of preparing the ground, ſowing Kernels and Stones of Fruit, either Pears, Apples, or Crabs, &c. 2

Of the Seaſon and Order of Planting out young Stocks. 4

Of the order and manner of Grafting, and of the neceſſary Tools for that purpoſe 6

Another way of Grafting call'd Whip-grafting, to be practiſed only upon ſmall ſticks 11

Another way of Grafting, different from the former for Stocks of a bigger ſize. ib

Another way of Graſting on ſuch Trees which are too big to cleave and Graft in the cleft. 12

Another way of Grafting, ca'l'd Inarching. 13

Another way of Propagating or increaſing of Fruit trees. 14

Of the way and manner of Inoculating. 15

Of the order and manner of Planting Trees at large. 20

Of the dreſſing and keeping your Trees in good order, and firſt of Wall-trees. 24

Of the ordering of thoſe Fruit-trees that ſtand at large in Standards, as Apples, and Pears, &c. 28

Of Vines and their ordering. 37

Of Roſes, their ordering and increaſing. 40

Of Gooſe-berries. 44

Of Currans. 45

Of Rasberries. ib.

Of Filbirds and Barberries. ib.

Of Figs. 46

Of Walnuts. ib.

Of Cheſnuts. 47

Of Quinces. ib.

Of Mulberries. ib.

Of Medlar-trees. ib.

Of ſeveral Trees fit to Plant by out-Walk-ſides. 48

A Catalogue of divers ſorts of Trees. ib.

Of the ordering of the Kitchen-garden. 52

Of the ſowing of Peaſe. ib.

Of ſowing Parſnip and Carrots. 54

Of Turneps and their ordering. 57

Of Radiſhes and their ordering. 58

Of ordering Lettice, Spinage, Garden-creſſes, Corn-Salet, and ſeveral other ſorts, from 60 to 73

Of Muskmellons and their ordering. 73

Of the ordering of Cucumbers. 79

Of the Seaſons, Order and Manner of ſowing and ſetting divers ſorts of Sweet-herbs. 80

Of the manner of ſowing ſmall Seeds. 81

The

The Contents.

The Names of divers sorts of Herbs, commonly call'd Sweet-herbs. 85
The Names of divers Physick-herbs, usually planted in Gardens. 86
The Names of divers ordinary Pot-herbs call'd Chopping-herbs. 88
The Names of divers Sallet-herbs and Roots, and other Herbage for the Kitchen uses. ib.
The Names of divers sorts of Pease. 89
Of Winter Sallets. ib.
Another sort of Winter Sallets.
Of the ordering of the Garden of Pleasure, the increasing and ordering of divers sorts of Flowers, with divers forms of Knots. 90
The Names of several Herbs fit to set Knots with, or to edge borders, to keep them in Fashion ib.
Of those Flowers call'd Fibrous, or Stringy-rocted Plants. 101
Of Carnation and Gilly-flowers, and their ordering. 102
Of the ordering and increasing of Auricula's, Bears-ear, call'd by some French-cowslips. 107
Of Primroses and Polianters. 109
A Catalogue of Flowers, both such as are yearly to be raised of Seed, and others of divers kinds, for the furnishing of Flowerpots, and adorning of Rooms in Houses; also such as are for Nosegays and others that are only for Ornament. from 110 to 113
The Names of divers Flowering-Trees very ornamental to a Garden 113
The Names of some sorts of Evergreen that are hardy, how increased. ib
The Names of some tender Housed-greens how increased. 114
The Names of divers sorts of Plants fit for Arbors with their ordering. ib.
Of several sorts fit for Hedges in Gardens, and their ordering. ib.
Directions to know what sort of Earth is proper for every kind of Fruit-trees. 117
Evils in Fruit-trees, remedied by Pruning, &c. 118
Means to preserve, and cause to flourish Standards and Wal-fruit, to know the Diseases in many rare Secrets. 119
A Supplement to the Kitchen-Garden, as to Herbs and Plants, how long they flourish and when decay, and ought to be removed, &c. 120
Directions for the Seasons that properly produce Herbs and Plants, which may be removed, and what not, &c. 121
A Supplement for the Flower-Garden, &c. 122
To keep Grass-plats from Weeds, and insects from Flowers. 132
Curiosities in Gardning, being rare Secrets. 127
How to place and order your Conservatory or Green-House, and the choice Plants and Flowers to be kept therein, 129
Prognosticks when proper to Sow, Set, Plant, Prune, &c. 133
Observations in Watering young Trees, Flowers, and Seeds, to preserve and encrease them, 134
To order Vineyards. 134
Greens to order Monthly. 144
Monthly Observations. 147
Miscellaneous Curiosities. 146

THE

Compleat Englifh Gardner.

Of the Order and Manner of raiſing all ſorts of Fruit-Trees, with the ſeveral ways of Grafting, Inoculating, Planting, Pruning, and Huſbandring them upon all Occaſions. And firſt, of the raiſing all ſorts of Stocks for the aforeſaid purpoſe: Together with the ſeveral Seaſons for every neceſſary buſineſs therein.

IN the choice of ground to plant a Nurſery of Fruit-Trees upon, let it be ſuch as is of a plyable nature to be wrought upon, not ſubject to the extreams either of wet or drineſs, neither very ſtony or gravelly, nor a ſtrong and clammy Clay, which is of a cold nature, and requires much labour to work upon it; and beſides, is apt to convert what Manure you beſtow upon it into its own nature in a ſhort time, without continued ſupply. The beſt Soil for ſuch a ground, and thoſe that come near to it, is ſtore of Chalk, Coal, or Buck-aſhes, with the dung you beſtow on it, which will cauſe it to work better, and be one means to prevent chopping and cleaving, which this natur'd ground is ſubject unto in dry weather. A wet ground may be helped by Drains, Ditches, or Ponds, being diſcreetly contrived, as alſo by laying your Beds or Quarters pretty high and riſing into the middle, the better to ſhoot off the water. And the ſame ſorts of dung and ſoil will be fit for this kind of ground as well as for the former. A courſe Gravel is altogether unfit for this employment, except you change the nature of it, by raiſing it of ſuch a thickneſs as may make it for your purpoſe, with any ſort of Earth which is apt to be wrought upon, and may yield nouriſhment to what you plant thereon. Alſo if your ground be very ſtony, your beſt way will be to dig and pick out what ſtones you can, at leaſt the biggeſt, and to make a ſupply either of Dung or Earth, that you may have at leaſt a full Spit deep of Earth to work upon, (the more the better.) Other ſorts of courſe grounds there are, that by labour and coſt may be made capable of

bringing forth Trees to good purpoſe. If a Marle or ſtiff Clay, get what rubbiſh you can together of Lime, Stone, ſmall pieces of Brick and Tyle, Coal-Aſhes and drift Sand, to mix with your beſt Mold and Dung. But I forbear to ſpeak farther of them at preſent, only take notice, that the beſt ſorts of ground for your purpoſe, to plant, or make Gardens upon are a fine ſandy Loam, or a fat Sand, or a ſhort brittle Loam, or Brick-earth, or any good thorow Mould, be the colour what it will. The Truth is, every man cannot have what is beſt for his purpoſe, and therefore muſt endeavour to ſupply the defect with good Husbandry.

To prepare the Ground, and ſow Kernels and Stones of Fruits, of Apples, &c.

HAving made choice of a piece of Ground, whereon to raiſe your Stocks, the firſt thing you are to do, is to dig it very exactly, or ſtock it with a Mattax, if occaſion require, and cleanſe it diligently from all roots, weeds and ſtones, that may hinder the thriving of your Stocks, eſpecially from Couch or Twitch-graſs, Nettles, or any other offenſive Weeds that are not eaſily deſtroyed by ordinary hand-weeding. But if it be a ground that hath been very much over-run with bad Weeds, as Twitch-graſs, &c. the beſt way is to dig it over a ſecond time before you ſow it; for it is very hard to cleanſe ſuch a ground with once digging. You may deſtroy Weeds by laying the whole ground fallow at the Summer, by digging them over 2 or 3 ſeveral times, eſpecially in the greateſt drougth and heat, which both kills the Weeds, and mellows and inriches the ground greatly: and indeed without clearing your Weeds, your labour is but loſt. Your ground being digged and cleanſed, and well enricht (for the heartier it is, the quicker will your profit be) then tread out one Bed or more, according as the quantity of ſtones or kernels you intend to ſow, require, either of the ſtampings or preſſings of Crabs, where Verjuice is made, or of Apples or Pears, where Cyder or Perry is made, or the Kernels of Apples or Pears, ſaved from Fruit otherwiſe. But I like the Stocks of Crabs and wild Pears better for a Nurſery, and to graft on, than thoſe raiſed from better Fruits, altho' theſe laſt do ſhoot more clear, and come faſter forward in ſtock; but the other are more hardy, and ordinarily make the better Tree, (yet the other may do well.) Sift your Mould from the courſeſt of the Droſs, that you may the better diſcern how thick or thin to ſow them: be ſure to ſow them in an indifferent manner; not too thick, leſt they ſtarve one onother; nor too thin, leſt they anſwer not your labour and coſt, by reaſon of their ſmall number; and beſides,

what

what is wanting in your intended Crop, will be made up in Weeds; therefore endeavour to keep a Mean: then cover them about two inches thick with fine Mould, having a care you leave none uncovered, leſt the Mice take your Bed, and deſtroy your Crop. After this manner ſow Cherry-ſtones, as I have often done with ſucceſs; or you may prick out your Kernels or Cherry-ſtones one, by one; about two or three inches or more aſunder, they will come on faſter, and ſave a year or more. Thus you may do with the Stones of Plums, Peaches, Walnuts, *&c.* only ſeting them ſomewhat farther aſunder. You may likewiſe ſet Nuts or Filberds, alſo ſweet-Bryar. (But in ſowing ſweet-Bryar, and other ſuch like, you muſt bruiſe the Berries between your hands, which is the ſureſt way.) Acorns, Aſhen-Keys, Sicamores, Haws, or the Seeds or Kernels of any other kinds of Shrubs or Trees. The Seaſon when this is to be done, is any time from the beginning of *September* till *Chriſtmas*, or ſooner, according to the time when every ſort is ripe, only Cheſnuts muſt not be ſet ſo ſoon, but rather towards the end of *February*, or thereabouts, for the Froſt is apt to kill them alſo. The Stones of Apricocks are apt to Spring too forward, and ſo ſubject to miſcarry by the Froſts coming on them, being tender. Yet ſome do uſe another order with their ſtones and kernels of all ſorts, which is keeping them in Earth in Tubs, or ſuch like materials; and then in *February*, having prepared the ground, they ſow them in Trenches, as Peaſe are ſown, only the Rows are nearer together. Take care that they do not ſpire too much before you ſow them, and ſow not too thick. I have practiſed this way of keeping the ſtones of Peaches, and ſuch like, until the Spring, and then ſet them out about half a foot aſunder, or more, in good Earth; thoſe that did not chip, I did crack, and ſet the kernels. Obſerve that they are to be kept in the houſe in ſome Cellar, or other convenient place, until your ſeaſon comes, keeping them covered from the Mice. Alſo take notice, that if your Peach-ſtones be put into earth any thing early, and the earth moiſt or damp, they will be ſomewhat apt to ſprout early, and therefore muſt be ſet out betimes. But this inconvenience happeneth, if it prove wet and cold; your tender ſprouted Peaches or Apricocks are ſubject to rot and come to nothing, except you defend them from the foreſaid inconveniencies. Another way I have uſed with good ſucceſs, which is, to keep my Peach-ſtones in an ordinary way without earth, till the next Spring, and then cracking them by ſetting them edge-long upon ſome hard thing, after that, laying them in ſome convenient place, with a laying of mould, and a laying of

kernels, ſo keeping them from overmuch moiſture, but giving them all the advantage of the Sun, in which caſe a little moiſture was requiſite; and when they were well ſprouted, the weather being moderately dry, I ſet them in their order: ſome will ſpire a month or two before others: I have ſet them out in *May*, which have been fit to inoculate the ſame Summer. That which comes next to be lookt after, is the keeping them clean from weeds at all times, which, if ſuffered to grow to any bigneſs, will ſtarve your Stocks; beſides you can ſcarce pull up a great weed, unleſs you pluck up your young Stocks with it. Take notice, that if you have the ſtones or kernels of any choice fruit, of which you deſire fruit quickly, then take ſome buds of the ſame years growth, if of a Peach or Nectarin, and inoculate on ſome convenient Stock; or if of other fruit, you may bring it to paſs the ſecond year at fartheſt, and ſo have your deſire.

Of the Seaſon and Order of Planting out of young Stocks.

AFter your Stocks are of two years growth, or after the firſt year, if they have thriven luſtily, you may take up the forwardeſt, or all of them if you pleaſe: But uſually a Bed of Stocks that's ſown indifferently thick, will yield a ſupply of Stocks for three or four years drawing, if you firſt take only the biggeſt and moſt thriving, ſuffering the reſt to grow bigger. And now having prepared a piece of ground, which ought to be well dug, and enricht with good rotten dung or ſoil, then ſort out your Stocks; thoſe that have good ſpreading roots, cut the ends of every root pretty near, and the tops within ſeven or eight inches of the root, unleſs you deſire to leave ſome of the ſtraiteſt, to run up to ingraft or inoculate, about ſtandard or heading height, and then where you intend to plant them range a Line, and plant them in order ſeven or eight inches diſtance one from another, allowing three or four foot between every range of Stocks, or more, if you deſire to ſow any Herbage between, as Carrots, Onions, *&c.* if not, three foot is wide enough. But as for thoſe Stocks that run with a down-right, or a tap root, top them as the former, and cut a good deal off the down-right root, and then in a Bed prepared, range your Line, and ſet them in order, ſomewhat thicker both in rank and file, with a ſtick, ſuch as we uſe to ſet Beans with, which is a quicker way than with your ſpade; beſure you forget not to cloſe the earth to the roots: ſo let them reſt till they have got ſome good ſpreading roots. Then you may plant them out where they may be grafted, which

may

may be after two years growth. You will find a great difference between a Tree that is planted ſhallow, and hath ſpreading roots, and one that hath a tap root, or is planted too deep: the ſhallow hath ordinarily the beſt ground, and the influence of the Heavens doth operate more ſpeedily and effectually, which cauſeth Trees to bear fruit beſt and quickeſt. And thus you may do with the ſuckers of any kind, either of Pears Plums, Cherries, *&c.* of which in a little time you may make a good improvement: After two years growth you may graft or inoculate many of them in caſe they thrive well. It will be your beſt way to let your Stocks for Pears or Apples be pretty luſty before you graft them, that then they may be able to ſhoot high enough the firſt year for their heading heighth. I have often found it inconvenient to graft ſtocks too weak; thoug I know ſome will graft them the ſame year they were planted. Indeed it may ſo chance amongſt many, ſome few may have ſome indifferent ſhoots; but I know, had they ſtayed two years, they would have been as forward and handſomer Trees. Beſides, there be ſeveral ſorts of Fruits, ſuch as Pairmains, Winter-Queenings, Julyflower Apples, *&c.* that will not make a Tree worth your labour, if the Stock be not very luſty before you graft them, they do naturally ſhoot ſo weakly and crooked. Thus it is with divers ſorts of Pears, of which the Warden is one of the worſt to make a handſom graceful Tree of. Obſerve this for certain, that generally thoſe Stocks which have been raiſed from the Stone or Kernel, have better Roots than thoſe raiſed from Suckers, after they have been once planted and the Tap-root cut pretty ſhort. The next thing to be conſidered, is the Seaſon when this work of planting is to be performed, which is from the end of *September* to the end of *February*, or a little later, if occaſion require: but if the Seaſon be very dry, or the Sap very high, as it is ſometimes at that time of the year, in many ſorts of ſtocks and trees that are very thriving, ſtay till the ground be well moiſtened, and then your ſtocks will riſe with leſs labour and better Roots, not being ſo apt to break; or you may ſtay till the ſap be a little more hardened: but if not, I know no inconvenience in it, being you are to cut off the greateſt part of your ſtock. You may know your ſtocks or trees have done growing for that ſeaſon, if your ſtock appear blunt, or only having a bud at the top; but on the contrary if there be very ſmall and freſh Leaves, then the tree is yet growing. In taking the head of the ſeaſon to plant your Trees, they will have taken new root, before the ground be much chilled and cooled with wet and cold weather, and thereby will

take

take root the ſooner, and ſo the Trees will be the better prepared to ſhoot with the firſt, which is oft-times as good as a year ſaved, they being free from miſcarriage in caſe of a very dry ſpring, which many times deſtroys ſuch Trees as are late planted. Take notice that Snow is as great an Enemy to Trees as any thing (in caſe it lye long on the Roots when they are taken up.) Alſo drying Winds are very bad.

Theſe things following are apt to grow of Cuttings or Slips.

As *Codlings*, *Genetings*, *Brets*, Some ſorts of *Sweetings*, *Genet-Moyles*, *Quinces*,	*Goosberries*, *Currants*, *Figgs*, *Vines*, *Tamarisk*, *Roſes* in ſome Grounds, *Honey-Suckles*.

By laying almoſt any ſort of Trees or Shrubs will grow, if a little Inciſion be made, as, I ſhall mention afterward.

As *Mulberries*, *Cornelions*, ſometimes of Slips.	*Lime-trees*, *Gilder-Roſess*, &c. *Roſes*, of all ſorts.

The ſeaſon for ſetting of the cutting of Trees to grow, is the ſame with planting of Fruit-trees; from the fall of the leaf, to the end of *February*.

The ſeaſon to increaſe Trees, and by laying, is any time, either Spring, Summer, or Winter; but by laying in the Spring or Summer, they may be fit to take off, and plant the Winter following.

Of the Order and Manner of Grafting, and firſt of the neceſſary Tools for that purpoſe.

THat you may proceed orderly, you are to furniſh your ſelf with a fine ſmall Saw, that is well ſet and ſharp; alſo a good ſtrong Pruning Knife, being made a very little coming, which will be very ready to cut off Heads of your Stocks which you intend to Graft, if they

they be not too big; but ſome uſe a kind of drawing Knife for that purpoſe, and is a little quicker than a Saw; alſo a good ordinary midling Knife to cleave your Stocks, as alſo to cut your Cyons, if it be not very good, or elſe another only for that purpoſe, which muſt be kept very ſharp, therefore you are to have a Whetſtone to quicken your Knives, as occaſion requires; alſo a ſtick of a foot or nine Inches long, made of a piece of an old Spade or Shovel handle, or ſome other hard Wood to uſe in the ſtead of a Mallet to drive your Knife when you cleave your Stock; it is more convenient and handſom for the purpoſe, as alſo an Iron Tool about an handful in length, or little more, made turning at each end about an Inch and an half, if it be ſteel'd at either end it will be the better, and not ſo apt to bend when you hold open a ſtrong Stock, thoſe ends are to be made flat a little like a Chizel, but not above half an Inch broad at moſt, only pretty ſtrong; if you will, one end may be pretty ſmall for ſmaller Stocks, the other bigger, and the uſe of it is to hold open your Stock till you have ſet your Graft or Cyon in its place; the ſhape of this and the other Tools are preſented to your view. Alſo in caſe you have any ſtrong or ſtubborn Stocks that are apt to pinch your Cyon too hard, you are to have ſome ſmall chips, or ſticks cut wedge-faſhion, to keep your Stock from pinching your Graft too hard. Alſo you are to prepare a quantity of Clay or Loam, which ought to be very well tempered, either with pretty ſtore of Hay or ſtable-litter chopt ſmall; if it be not very well tempered and wrought together, it will be apt to fall from your Graft in caſe of much wet, or chop or cleave in caſe of dry Weather.

The next thing you are to take notice of is, what Stocks are fitteſt for each ſort or kind of Fruit to be grafted upon. Know therefore that the Crab or Wilding Stocks are the fitteſt and beſt to Graft any ſort of Pippins or Apples upon, altho' ſome are of another Judgment, and think that thoſe Stocks that are raiſed of the Kernels of good Apples are better. But I have had cauſe to judge otherwiſe, although as I ſaid formerly, ſome ſorts of them will grow more free or gole, and be fit for uſe ſooner; But the Stocks of ſome ſorts of ſweetings are very bad, becauſe they never making a conſiderable Tree for ſtature, are exceeding apt to ſend forth Suckers from the Root. Likewiſe the Stock of wild Pears, either of Kernels or Suckers, is the beſt to graft any ſort of Pears upon or Medlars, the white Buſh is likewiſe good to Graft Medlars upon, and ſometimes Pears; but if they be not grafted very near the ground, the Graft will out-

grow

grow the Stock, and make a very unhandſom Tree; Pears are alſo grafted upon Quince-Stocks, and are good for ſuch Trees as are to be planted againſt a Wall, becauſe they do not uſually make ſo great a Tree as a Pear-Stock; Medlars may likewiſe be budded or grafted upon the Quince-Stock; but to gratt Pears upon Apples, or Apples upon Pears, I could never find it worth my labour: Alſo the wild black or Honey Cherry-Stocks are beſt to graft or inoculate any kind of Cherry upon, whether they be of Suckers, or ſown of the Cherry-ſtones: Alſo the ordinary wild *Engliſh* Cherry-Stocks are good to graft any ſort of good Cherry upon, but they are beſt for Wall or Dwarf Trees, and moſt fit for ſome ſorts of great-leav'd Cherries, which are apt to run much to Wood, and bear but little, their greateſt fault is to abound with Suckers. Alſo Plum-Stocks of divers ſorts, eſpecially the White, Black, and Red Pear-Plum, alſo the Red Damaſcen, with ſeveral other ſorts or fit Stocks for any ſort of Apricocks, Peaches, Nectarins, or for any ſort of good Plum, alſo the Stocks raiſed from the Stones or Kernels of Peaches or Nectarins, are very good to bud any ſort of Peaches or Nectarins on, they will likewiſe bear Fruit of themſelves according to their kind they came of, although ſome will vary ſomething, as indeed it is uſual in all ſorts of Fruits, of which there are divers kinds, to bring variety from their Stones or Kernels, being ſet, although ſome kinds of Airs and Grounds are more apt to produce variety than others, as appears by the many new ſorts, eſpecially of Peaches, Nectarins, or Pears that are brought us from Foreign Parts, chiefly from *France*. Plums grafted on Cherries, or Cherries on Plums, do not agree. I confeſs I have had them take well and thrive for one year, and then dye. So they that deſire Practice for Recreation, may inoculate one ſort of Currant upon another, and have both Red and White upon the ſame Tree; So likewiſe Goosberries, Filberds, or the great ſort of Nut upon the common Hazel, *&c.* as I have made Trial.

Being furniſhed with Tools, *&c.* you are to cut ſuch Cyons as are ſuitable for your Stock, not too ſmall or weak, neither very big, alſo ſuch as are of the laſt ſhoots; ſee that they have Buds, for ſome ſhoots which grow within the Tree immediately from the Body, may be of a fit Scantling for your purpoſe, and yet have no Buds, or at leaſt ſo ſmall and backward, that they will do you no ſervice: Some in cutting their Cyon do take an Inch or two of the Old, or former

former years Wood; but for my part, I never do it, but when I cannot ſpeed, or furniſh my ſelf otherwiſe, and in ſuch a caſe I have made uſe of ſuch as have been part of three years ſhoot. Then you may proceed as followeth; firſt, with your ſtrongeſt Knife or Saw cut off the Head of your Stock at a fit height where you would have your Tree to head, or which is better, within half a foot or leſs of the ground, if your Stock be not too big; and then pare the top of the Stock ſmooth; and if you put but one Cyon in, which uſually is the beſt way, then you are to cut off a piece with a ſlope cut, about an Inch and half deep on the worſt ſide of your Stock, putting your Graft on the ſmoothеſt and ſtraiteſt ſide, in cutting your Stocks thus, it will cover over the ſooner; then take your Cyon, which ought to be as the laſt ſhoot, it matters not for a joint of the former years growth, unleſs it be too ſhort, for the ſtraighter and ſmoother your cutting is, the more exact it may fit it to your Stock, eſpecially if your Stock be young and have a thin ſap: (I do not deny but Grafting at a Joint (as it is commonly call'd) may do well, if the Stock have a thick ſap, as commonly all your Wood Stocks have) then with your Knife being very ſharp, cut your Cyon or Graft with a ſlope cut about an Inch and an half more or leſs, according to the ſtrength of your Stock and Graft; firſt, on the one ſide, and then on the other, making it for ſhape like a Wedge, very ſmooth and even, that it may join cloſe all along, only that ſide of your cutting that is to ſtand outmoſt in your Stock, muſt be left a little thicker than the other, otherwiſe your Graft cannot join ſo exactly with the ſap as it ought, if your cuttings be long, you may make two or three Cyons of one, leaving four or five Buds to a Cyon; then take your Knife and place it even on the middle of the head of the Stock, and with your ſtick before-mentioned, in the ſtead of a Mallet drive your Knife a little way in your Stock, then raiſe your hand, and ſink the point of your Knife ſloping on the edge or Back of your Stock, or ſide-ways; cleave your Stock of ſuch a depth only, as you make way for your Graft, or very little more; by this Order your Stock will be cleft more ſmooth, and handſom, and even, and not cleave croſs nor ragged, as ſometimes ſmall Stocks are apt to do, and then your Inſtrument or Grafting Chizel being driven into the cleft of your Stock a little way, you may hold the cleft open until you have placed your Graft, the which muſt be ſet exactly ſap to ſap; and if your Stock be young, and hath a very thin ſap, then there is required more exactneſs and circumſpection in every part of the work: If your Soock have a thick ſap, you may place your Graft

a little more in, yet ſo that the edge of your Graft may be even with the ſap, which is the main in the buſineſs. Having placed your Graft, you are gently to take away, or knock out your Grafting-Chizel without miſplacing your Graft, and then with a handful, either more or leſs, of your tempered Clay, as the ſize of the Stock requires; lay upon the head of your Stock about an Inch above, and ſomething lower than the cleft of your Stock went; ſmooth your Clay round and handſom, that it may ſtick on, and keep out both Wet and Wind. I have known when Clay hath not been well tempered, a haſty ſhower hath waſh'd of all again within a day or two, much to the prejudice of the Grafts: If you put two Grafts in a Stock, you muſt cleave both ſides of your Stock ſmooth by raiſing and ſinking your hand, whereby you may cut the Bark ſmooth as you go; alſo if your Stocks are as big as a Man's Wriſt, you are to cleave your Stock twice, not croſs, but both overwhart, and put in four Grafts or Cyons; but if your Stock be too big to cleave, then you may graft them in the ſap as ſhall be ſhewed afterwards. Some do cut their Cyons with ſhoulders, the which I ſeldom do, unleſs my Graft be too big for my Stock, but being done handſom, it may occaſion the covering of the Stock the ſooner. Yet the former way will do well enough, and cover the ſooner, if the contrary ſide of your Stock be taken off with a good ſlope cut; take notice that your Cyons of Plums and Cherries muſt not be cut ſo thin as Pears and Apples may, eſpecially your great leav'd Cherries, as Hearts, *&c.* becauſe of the great Pith they have; the truth is, Budding, or Inoculating, and Whip-Grafting is ſureſt and beſt for all choice ſorts of Cherries. The Seaſon for this work of Grafting is from *January*, to the end of *March*: Sometimes I have Grafted both ſooner and later, even in *May*, but you muſt take notice my Cuttings have been cut betimes, and buried all over in the ground to keep them backward, otherwiſe your labour will come to nothing. Remember that all early Blooming Fruit ought to be grafted a Month before Apples at the leaſt.

If your Stock be very ſtiff, you muſt put in a little wedge of Wood to keep it from pinching your Cyon too hard, which may ſpoil it.

All great leaved Cherries and early Pears to be grafted in *February* at leaſt.

Another

Another manner of Grafting, call'd Whip-grafting, as followeth, to be practiſed only upon ſmall Stocks

YOU are to be provided of ſuch Grafts or Cyons as are pretty gole and ſtreight, of a ſuitable growth and ſubſtance with your Stocks, at leaſt with the place whereabout you would graft them, then make choice of a ſtreight place on your Stock, and cut off the head of it, (at ſuch a height and place as you can anſwer with your Cyon) with a ſlope cut about an inch and an half in length, more or leſs, as occaſion requires; then take your Cyon and cut it with the like ſlope cut on that ſide as will beſt anſwer your Stock, and of the ſame length, that it may anſwer as exactly, if poſſible, as if it had been cut off from the ſame place before, ſo as to anſwer ſap to ſap, without which you can expect no ſucceſs: * Some after they have fitted Stock and Graft, do give both Stock and Graft a little notch or ſlit to make them to ſtick or hang together whilſt they prepare their Baſs, and then wind their Baſs about it to keep them both even and cloſe, putting ſome Clay about it, and ſo let it reſt until it be well cloſed, but it may be perform'd ſufficiently without the notches, as I have often done; and then about Midſummer, or ſooner, as you may know by their thriving, you muſt untie them, otherwiſe it will gird them ſo that the Wind will be apt to break them off when the top groweth any thing big; it is a good way if you find they have been pent or girt over much, to tie them again for a littee time, otherwiſe they may be apt to crack where they were joyned, by reaſon of their ſudden liberty after their being ſo hard pent, which ſometimes make a fault: The ſeaſon is the ſame with other Grafting, according to the kinds of Fruits.

* The length of your Graft is as much as in other Grafting.

Another way of Grafting a little different from the former, is and for ſmall Stocks, but yet of a little bigger ſize than the former.

FIrſt, cut off the top of your Stock even at the top, at what heighth you pleaſe, then make thoſe of your Graft not very ſmall, and cut one ſide only of it with a ſlope cut as in the former way of Grafting, about an Inch or more, as the ſtrength of your Graft will bear; if you will, you may give it a croſs cut like a ſhoulder, only the depth of the Bark or Sap, very little more, that it

may a little reſt on the top of the Stock, and be careful to cut your Graft very ſmooth, that it may fit and joyn exactly on your Stock; then make choice of that ſide of your Stock that will ſuit beſt with your Graft for ſtraightneſs, then lay the cut part of your Graft againſt that part of your Stock where you deſire or intend to join it, and meaſure the length of it, and with a ſharp Knife cut or ſlice off ſo much of the Bark only, as the breadth and length of the cut of your Cyon or Graft contains, and then place it ſo exactly, as if it had been cut from the ſame place; then bind them together with ſome Baſs, and Clay it as you do other Grafts, letting it reſt until it be well taken, and then you may untie it, for the ſame reaſon with the former.

Another manner of Grafting, to be perform'd only upon ſuch Trees, which for the moſt part are too big to cleave and Graft in the Cleft.

THE way of it is, firſt to cut off the head of your Tree you would graft at a convenient height for heading, not very low, if it exceed the thickneſs of a Man's Arm; then pare the top of it ſmooth; then prepare your Grafts, cutting them only on one ſide with a ſlope cut about an Inch or more in length, and then taking off a little of the Bark, only on the other ſide; and if your Grafts are any thing gole or thick, you may cut them with a ſhoulder on that ſide which moſt, and then with a wedge of Iron, or of hard Wood made is to be placed next the Wood, which is that ſide which is cut of the ſhape of your Grafts that are to be ſet on your Tree, or rather an Inſtrument of the ſhape expreſſed in the foregoing Plate, the turning end of it which is to make way for your Graft, to be made and faſhioned after the form of your Graft as it is cut; the ſide of it, that is to go next the wood flat, being the fore-part of it, the other a very little round, rather inclining to flat, let it want ſomething of a quarter of an Inch in thickneſs, in the thickeſt or upper part, except you make it a pretty deal longer than you need, to drive in to make way for your Cyon; having your Cyons ready, you ſhall firſt with your Knife make a little ſhallow cut or ſmall ſcratch, that the Bark may the better yield or give way without breaking aſunder, and then juſt againſt your cut or ſcratch on the Bark, you are gently to drive in your Inſtrument between the Wood and the Bark, of ſuch a depth as may make way for your Graft, then beat out your Inſtrument, and thruſt in your Graft as low or deep as it is cut, and when you have put in as many Grafts as you think convenient, you muſt lay a ſufficient quantity of well-tempered Clay, to keep out

Wind

Wind and Water, raiſing your Clay high on the Top, that the wet do not get in, and ſpoil your Labour; this way of Grafting is very apt to take and thrive, but are oft ſubject to be broken off with the Wind, chiefly when the Bark is cut or broken quite open, which with care may be prevented; the danger of breaking off with the Wind may be prevented by faſtning a Stick or two to the Body of your Tree, and then tying your Grafts thereto, beginning to tie them before they have got too great a head, *&c.* to have a care of them for the firſt two Years after, by which Time they may be paſt that inconvenience; ſometimes when a ſtock hath not been very big, I have put two Cyons in the cleft, and two in the ſap, and hath been a good way both eaſie and ſure; a little practice will inform your judgment more than I can tell well how to expreſs, both in this and other the like practiſes. (The Seaſon is when the ſap begins to be a little ſtirring, the Bark will give way the eaſier.) Other forms of Grafting there are uſed, which I forbear to relate; theſe being both eaſie and ſufficient, only one form more I had almoſt forgot, which is uſeful for ſeveral ſorts of Fruits, and choice Flowering Trees or Shrubs: And is as followeth.

Another manner or way of Graſting, call'd Inarching.

HAving a ſort of Fruit or other choice Tree, or flowering ſhrub that is tender or hard to propagate by the more ordinary ways, (otherwiſe it is not worth the trouble) and there be Stocks of a ſuitable nature growing near accidentally, or planted purpoſely about it; your Stocks being of a ſufficient ſize and growth for the purpoſe, make choice of a convenient Branch, either of the laſt years, or two years growth; as alſo of ſuch a heighth on your Stock as may be beſt both for the ſize of your Tree, and the convenient joining of both Stock and Branch; then cut off the head of your Stock, and on the moſt convenient ſide for our purpoſe, cut a notch juſt againſt the middle of the head about an inch or two in length, from the head downward, and the depth as the thickneſs of your Cyon will neceſſarily require, or in the ſtead of cutting a notch, you may cleave your Stock, chiefly on the ſide where your branch is to be fixed or placed; but firſt, you are to prepare your Graft by cutting it in ſuch a form as may fit either the notch or cleft not cutting your branch off; you may cut it either with ſhoulders or without, leaving that ſide thickeſt that is to ſtand outmoſt on your Stock, and then fix it exactly ſap to ſap, as in other Graftings, with-

without which no Graft can take; then tie it with ſome Baſs, that it may not ſtart or ſlip out of its place, and then with well temper'd mortar or wax wrap it well, that no wind or Rain get in to ſpoil your Graft.

Another way for this kind of Grafting is, that in the ſtead of either notching or cleaving your Stock, ſlice or p re off a piece of the Bark, and a little of the Wood only on that ſide which is beſt for your purpoſe, about an inch or more, and then cut off only ſo much of the Bark from the convenient ſide of your Stock, as the cut on your branch will exactly fit, neither wider nor narrower, but as exact as if it had been cut for the ſame place; if you will, you may let them into another with a ſlit on the Stock, and Graft, as in Whip-grafting, and then tie them cloſe together, and either wax or clay it as aforeſaid, and ſo let it reſt until it be well taken, and ſhoot pretty well, and then untie your Graft, leſt it ſhould gird and occaſion it to break off with the Wind, you may if you will, tie it again gently, and clay it if you will, and ſo let it reſt until it hath had the years ſhoot, and then you may cut off the branch cloſe at the lower end, and beſtow your Tree as you pleaſe, and by this means you may have a bearing Tree the ſame year of its grafting. The Seaſon is the ſame with other Graftings, as the kind of Fruit is earlier or later.

Another way of propagating, or increaſing of Fruit-Trees.

ALthough this is no kind of Grafting, yet by the practice of it good ſorts of Fruits may be encreaſed, and to that end, having a Fruit-tree you deſire to encreaſe more of the kind, about *Midſummer*, ſometimes a little ſooner, as alſo later, whilſt the ſap is very high, which in ſome Trees of Fruit is earlier, in ſome later; make choice of a convenient branch or ſhoot of an indifferent ſize, not very big, and a little above the place from whence it ſpringeth, or where you ſee moſt convenient, apply a pretty quantity of well-tempered mortar round about, and make ſuch proviſion with convenient tying, that the mortar do not fall off either by the waſhing of the Rain, or otherwiſe; and ſo form your Clay on the top of it, that it may a little receive and retain moiſture in caſe of Rain, or otherwiſe; and then cut the Bark off round about under the place where the clay is, about two or three inches wide; you may cut the Bark round in two places, and peel it off with eaſe, and in the clay

clay or mortar it will either put forth root, or prepare it ſo for rooting, that being cut off about the beginning of the planting ſeaſon, it will grow, which ſometimes is very good about the end of *September*, (and ſometimes the beginning of *September*, for many ſorts of Fruit-trees;) but if the ſap be very high, and in a growing poſture, as ſometimes it is, you may ſtay longer, eſpecially if it prove very dry Weather, you muſt proportion your Plant with diſcretion, not leaving too much for your young root to feed, leſt you looſe your Plant and labour both; and thus any who delight in theſe kinds of exerciſes, may increaſe good Fruits naturally; if you plant early, and the ground ſomething dry, it will be the ſureſt way to keep your Plant moiſt at the root, eſpecially at the firſt planting.

Another form of Grafting I ſhould have mentioned before, but forgot; it is, or may be call'd Notch-Grafting; it is beſt practiſed on ſmall Stocks; the manner is, if it be very ſmall, as about the bigneſs of a Man's little Finger, or thereabout, cut off the top ſmooth, and then inſtead of cleaving your Stock, cut a deep notch with a very ſharp Knife about an Inch or leſs, if the Stock be very ſmall, and then cut your Cyon fit for it, placing it exactly ſap to ſap; if your Cyon doth anſwer the ſize of the Stock, you may fit it exactly on both ſides, if not, you may ſlope off the contrary ſide of your ſtock; alſo if your ſtock have ſubſtance enough, you need not cut your notch quite through on both ſides; you may cut your Cyon with ſhoulders or without, as you like beſt; ſhoulders may ſeem to cover the head ſooneſt; after you have plac'd your Cyon, you are to tie it with a little baſs, and then cover it with well tempered clay or wax, as in other Graftings, not forgetting to unite your baſs when it begins to thrive well.

Of the way and manner of Inoculating.

THE which is the taking off a Bud from one Tree, and putting it between the Bark and the Wood of another Tree or Stock, the end is the ſame with other ways of Grafting, and moreover by this way, divers ſorts of Fruit which are not apt to take or grow by ordinary ways of Grafting, are by this eaſily encreaſed; and therefore to this purpoſe, you are to be provided of a good ſharp Knife, ſomething bigger then an ordinary Pen-knife, being made flat at the end of the haft like a ſmal lwedge about an inch in length or a little more, and about half an inch in breadth or leſs, made thin and

taper

taper, with an edge as it were at the end; the uſe of it is to open and raiſe the bark of your ſtock within, in which you are to put your bud; alſo ſome Quills, ſome bigger and ſome leſs, cut after the faſhion of a Gouge, as it is expreſſed in the firſt Plate, or elſe ſome Tools made of the ſame ſhape of three or four ſizes, ſome bigger, ſome leſs, made of Steel, very thin and ſhallow, from the ſize of a good Gooſe-quill, to the ſize of a Crows-quill, which may pretty well fit with the ſeveral ſizes of ſhoots you may have occaſion to make uſe of in your practice: yet I am not ignorant that there are divers who uſe this Art, and do uſe neither Quills, nor any flat end as is mentioned at the Knifes haft end, but only a ſharp Knife with a ſlop point to open the Bark, their manner I ſhall mention anon; the ſeaſon for inoculating, is from the beginning of *June*, to the end of *July*, ſometimes a little ſooner upon ſome occaſions, but very often for Roſes and natural Peach-ſtocks, *&c.* till *September*; however it is the free running of the Sap that is the ſure Rule to go by, as alſo the ſtrength or fitneſs of the Bud, which ſometimes is not of ſufficient growth, when notwithſtanding the Stocks will riſe well enough: being provided with Tools, Stocks, and Fruit of a ſuitable nature, to take up your Stocks, and the Seaſon fitting, you are to make choice of ſuch ſhoots as are of the ſame Years growth, whoſe Buds are pretty forward, eaſily diſcerned behind the leaf, (otherwiſe you may loſe your labour, although the Shield or Scutcheon do take) then cut off the leaf, leaving only the Stalk, or but little of the leaf, leſt it ſhould be troubleſom; but it is no ways uſeful as to the growing of your bud, the ſtalk may be a little uſeful to hold by, but may be ſpared without prejudice; ſome do approve only of thoſe Buds that have one ſingle leaf only; but for my part, I uſually make uſe of thoſe with two or three leaves, as well as of any other, if the bud be not too forward, only I do refuſe a few of the lowermoſt buds, which oft are bloſſom buds, (except in young Trees that are not bearing) then go to your Stock, and prune only ſo much as may make way to do your work in the moſt convenient place of it, (much pruning doth oft occaſion your bud to ſpring the ſame Summer, which is not convenient, if oft doth blaſt in the Winter, at the beſt it doth not make ſo fair a ſhoot as thoſe that ſpring the next Seaſon) then begin at the loweſt or biggeſt end of your branch or cutting, and cut the Bark only with a croſs cut about half an inch below the bud you intend to uſe more or leſs, as your branch is in ſtrength, and then with your Knife cut off your bud with the bark, and a little wood, as much above your bud as the croſs cut

was

was under it, beginning your cut above your bud, and then the form of it will be like a Scutcheon or Shield turned upſide down ward; then take your Shield or Bud between your Thumb and Fore-finger of your left Hand, with the Bud next your Fore-finger, the Wood next your Thumb, your Finger cloſe under your Stalk or Bud, then with your Quill or Gouge ſhaped as aforeſaid, and as it is here expreſſed in the firſt Plate; thruſt it between the Wood and the Bark, taking the Bud and Bark clean from the Wood, which is of no farther uſe; and be ſure there be no hole in the inſide your Shield, eſpecially againſt the Bud, if there be, your Shield is of no uſe, the principal for growing being wanting; and therefore to ſlight that and take another, obſerving the former Rules, and then make choice of a ſmooth place of your Stock, at ſuch a height as is moſt fit for your purpoſe, whether for Wall or Standard, and then with your Knife make an over-thwart cut on your Stock the depth of the Bark only, and then from the middle of that over-thwart cut upward, make another cut of the length of your Shield or Scutcheon. the depth of the Bark only; ſometimes the cutting into the Wood occaſions it to gum and ſpoil your Bud; the ſhape of thoſe cuts will be like a Roman T I turned upſide down, and then with the flat end of your Knife, haft made for the purpoſe, thruſt it between the cut, and raiſe the Bark on each ſide ſo wide as for the Shield or Bud to lie flat and plain and be careful after you have made entrance between the Bark, that you bear up your Hand or Tool towards the Bark, ſo as not to rub or gall the ſap next the Wood, which ſhould take with your Bud; then hold open the Bark at the lower end, and put in the taper or picked end of your Bud, and draw it juſt even with the over-thwart cut, either by the Stalk, which it will eaſily do, or with the brand of your Knife thruſt it into its place, and then having ſome Baſs, (which is the beſt and readieſt of any other ſorts of ties) wind it all over, except the very Bud, pretty cloſe and tite, beginning at the lower end, that neither Wind or Rain get in to deſtroy your labours; and then tie it faſt, and ſo let it reſt for a Fortnight or thereabouts, or which is the ſureſt way, until you diſcern your baſs or ties begin to gird; but know that you may ſpoil your Bud as well by letting it be tied too long, as by untying too ſoon; but for the moſt part a Fortnight is ſufficient, ſometimes again three Weeks is little enough, a little obſervation will put you out of doubt; but for ſuch Stocks or Trees as are great and quick growers, as natural

Two Buds on a Stock may be ſufficient if well put in.

Peaches and Roſes, and the like, they muſt not be too long tied, leaſt they gird and break off at the Budding place with Wind, which is uſual: they that deſire to be very curious, and have but few to mind, may untie at a Fortnight or Ten days end, and gently tie their Buds again.

There are other forms of doing this work, which are as followeth: having made choice of a good ſhoot or cutting of the ſame years growth, as aforeſaid, cut off the leaves, leaving only the ſhort Stalks; then beginning at the lower end of your ſhoot, a little above the Eye or Bud make an over-thwart cut quite round, and then cut the Bark on each ſide of the Bud from the over-thwart cut above downward an inch in length or thereabout, and then ſloping each ſide towards the lower end, that it appear as the former turned upſide down, then pull off the looſe or ſuperfluous Bark in the backſide, and lower end, then holding your cutting in your left Hand, your Thumb being againſt the Bud leſt it ſhould ſlip off, and then with the flat end of your Knife haft raiſe the Bark on each ſide of your Scutcheon, and then with a Quill or Budding Gouge mention'd before; take your Shield or Scutcheon off, keeping the Thumb of your left Hand pretty hard againſt the Bud, leſt it ſhould ſlip off, and leave the ſubſtance of the Bud behind; but for my part, when I did uſe this faſhion of Budding, I did uſe no Quill, but after the Bark was raiſed on each ſide of my Bud as aforeſaid, I did ſlip off my Bud or Scutcheon with the Thumb and Fore-finger of the right Hand, bearing the Fore-finger of my left Hand hard againſt on the contrary ſide, and ſo forced it off ſideways, and a little downward withal, and then cut your Stock with an over-thwart cut on a clear place as aforeſaid, and another from the middle of that downward, and then the ſhape of thoſe cuts on the Bark will be of the faſhion of a Roman T; T then with the flat end of your haft raiſe the Bark on each ſide, T beginning at the top ſo wide, as that your Bud may lie flat or plain; put it in and tie it pretty cloſe and tite, as was formerly ſaid; this way I uſed divers Years with ſucceſs.

Another form of Budding is this, having your Branch and Buds ready as in the former ways, cut the Bark with an over-thwart cut quite round both above and below your Bud you would take off, then cut the Bark on each ſide your Bud with a down-right cut from the upper-thwart cut to the lower, then pull off the back part of the Bark behind your Bud, and lay it on a clear place on your Stock, where

where you would have your Bud grow, and then with your Knife cut the Bark off your Stock, with two over-thwart cuts, juſt of the ſame length with your piece of Bark, and then give another cut on the Bark of your Stock down-right from the upper over-thwart cut to the nethermoſt, and then open the Bark of your Stock on each ſide; then raiſe the Bark on each ſide of your Bud, and force it off in that manner, as was mentioned in the former way of Budding, and then your Bud or Shield will reſemble the laſt form, but the cuts on your Stock this form, ⊢⊣ then put in your Bud and it will exactly fit, then tie it up ⊢⊣ as aforeſaid.

Another way or form which is uſed by ſome, they cut the form of their Scutcheon with ſome Wood, as in the firſt manner or form of inoculating is mentioned, and then with a nimble ſlit which is eaſie enough, tear off the Scutcheon or Bud from the Wood, and then make ready your Stock after any of the former ways to put in your Bud either upwards or downwards; divers that uſe this way have only a ſhort good cutting Knife with a ſlope point, with which they open the Bark of their Stock, they that have not the right ſleight of taking or ſnatching off the Bud, are very apt to leave the ſubſtance of the Bud behind; the truth is, any of theſe forms or faſhions will do very well, neither is there any odds more than that ſome are more eaſie or quick, as having fewer circumſtances.

What Stocks are moſt ſuitable for every ſort or kind of Fruit to be Budded, or Grafted upon, is already mentioned before. Another thing to be taken notice of is, that ſo many Stocks as are Inoculated and hold their Buds, you are to cut off the Heads of them about half a foot above the Bud, any time from the beginning of the Winter following, to the beginning of the Spring; only in caſe you have Budded any Nectarins or choice Peaches, you are to ſpare ſome ſmall Branch off the Stock to grow up with your Bud, for the firſt Year at leaſt; yet ſo as to correct it, that it do not maſter or ſtarve your Bud, for there is ſome odds between a Natural and a Step-mother; this is chiefly to be done when you Bud Peaches and Nectarins on Plum-Stocks; alſo you are diligently to over-look your Buds in the ſpringing time leſt they ſhould be deſtroyed by young Caterpillars, which are apt to breed on your Bud,

The over timely cutting off the Heads of Head Socks, doth oft occaſion Buds to be a little too forward; therefore if you forbear to Head your tendereſts ſorts till the ſpring, they will be more ſure.

Bud, eſpecially your Apricocks, and will quickly deſtroy them if not timely prevented, therefore you are to ſearch for them, and where you find the leaves to ſtick together; you may be ſure to find them by gently opening the young leaves, with a Needle or Pin point, *&c.* Alſo when your Buds are ſhot out about half a foot or leſs, you are to tie a piece of Baſs about the top of your Stock, in the moſt convenient places, and then to tie up your tender Shoot, not only for the more handſom growing of it, but alſo to prevent its breaking off by the Wind, or other accidents, not forgetting to prune off ſuperfluous Buds or Shoots from your Stocks by degrees, as your inoculated Buds get ſtrength.

Of the order and manner of Planting Treees at large.

AND firſt I have here propounded to your View, the manner of Planting Orchards, or other Plots, after the handſomeſt and orderlieſt faſhion, by which you may perceive how convenient it is to obſerve good order in planting, and how capable the Ground is of being brought into ſeveral forms, without altering or hindring the order or beauty of your Plantation. And therefore if you deſire to make your Plantation very beautiful to the Eye, you are before you begin to Plant, to level your Ground either into a flat or hanging level, as the nature or form of your Ground requires, or may moſt conveniently be brought to: The way or manner how to level, is very plainly ſet down in that part of the Book that teacheth the ordering of the Garden of Pleaſure, to which I refer you for brevities ſake. But if you are not willing to be at that trouble or coſt, you may notwithſtanding plant your Trees according to the order ſet down, the conveniencies whereof are eaſily diſcerned. Then you are to ſtake out your ground according to the order propounded, or any other you like better; ſet your ſtakes exactly both for order and diſtance, as you deſire to have your Trees grow; about a ſcore of ſtakes or fewer may be a ſufficient rule to plant a great ground by; if you will, you may, after you have ſet your ſtakes, begin and take up a ſtake to plant a Tree in its place, or you may let them ſtand as a rule till you have planted every part of your ground beſides, and plant that laſt; but be ſure you do not plant your Trees too nigh to one another, for by ſo doing, they will in a ſhort time hinder one another of convenient Sun and Air, whereby your Fruit would be much better both for taſt and colour; likewiſe you would loſe the benefit of Roſes, Gooſberries, and Currants, which might bring much pleaſure or profit for divers Years; as alſo of

ſeveral

ſeveral ſorts of Herbage, which might be very uſeful, as Carrets, Onions, &c. or of Graſs, the which would be much better than when it is too much over-ſhadowed: Let not your Apple or Pear Trees ſtand nearer then twenty Foot, although the ground be poor, but in good ground twenty five, thirty, or forty Foot aſunder, and in ſo doing one Tree will be as good as two or three; but if any ſhall think this diſtance too much, then they may plant Cherries and Plumb Trees amongſt, I mean a Cherry or Plumb Tree between every four Apple or Pear Trees, which of ſome is call'd Antick; the form of it is expreſs'd in the foregoing Plate. And if you would have your Trees ſtand on borders, you are to make them before you plant, leſt your Trees ſhould ſtand too deep, which in all ſorts of grounds is no ſmall fault; take notice, that if you obſerve this order, your Cherry-Trees will be paſt the beſt in twenty Years time, or thereabout, which if they be then ſtock'd up, your Apple Tree will be in a very handſom Poſture, whereby they will thrive and bear the better; if your ground be very wet, it will be worth your labour to make ſome ſufficient Drains to draw the Water to ſome Pond or Ditch, or at leaſt to make your borders whereon you plant both wider and higher; alſo if your ground be not good or rich of it ſelf, it will be your beſt courſe to beſtow a quantity of good Mould to every Tree, more or leſs, as the nature of the ground requires; for if it be gravelly, hard, or ſtony, or the like, you are to make the holes the wider, and beſtow the more Mould upon them, for according to the goodneſs of your ground, or coſt you beſtow, you may expect your profit: Take notice that Dung is not good to lay next the roots of your Trees, except it be converted to Mould, but then it is better being mix'd with your Earth than alone. You are alſo to prune both tops and roots of every Tree you plant, in ſo doing your Trees will multiply both branches and roots, which indeed is the main end of pruning, the neglect whereof doth ſometimes occaſion the loſs of your Trees, or at leaſt of the not thriving ſo well, or ſpeedily; if your Trees be ſmall, and are well rooted, then you may top them the leſs, but if of a conſiderable ſize, take off the more of his head, there will be the leſs danger of miſcarriage; and in planting ſpread the roots, and let your Tree ſtand as ſhallow as you may conveniently, and in caſe any roots do incline too much downward, then you may give them a little plaſh, and lay them ſo as to ſpread near the upper cruſt of the ground, which is uſually the beſt, and Trees (as I ſaid formerly) receive ſpeedieſt virtue and nouriſhment both from the Sun and Showers, only you are to have a lit-

let

tle care of them the firſt Year, in caſe of a dry Spring or Summer, and in ſuch a caſe it will be well worth your labour to lay a little Horſe-litter or the like ſtuff, round about your Tree, the compaſs of the root, and in ſo doing one watering will be better than two or three without it; and as for ſtaking your Trees, I would never adviſe you to do it, if they will ſtand ſtraight and handſom without it, eſpecially after the firſt Year, unleſs (as I ſaid) it be to make a crooked Tree grow ſtraight, for caſe the head be two weighty for the root, which is a fault and would be mended; but ſee your ſtakes be ſtraight, or in. I have known handſom Trees ſpoiled with crooked ſtakes; alſo be careful to tie your Tree cloſe and tite, with ſome Oſier or Willow-twigs, or the like, leſt by being too ſlack, the Wind cauſe your ſtake to fret or gall your Tree, which doth ſometimes cauſe it to canker in that place; your beſt way is to renew your ties twice in the growing time of the Year, if your Tree be in a thriving condition, leſt your ties ſhould make a fault, and occaſion your Tree to break off in that place, you may put a little Hay, or the like, between the ſtake and the Tree, before you tie them, there can be no harm in that.

The next thing to be conſidered is the ſeaſon when this work of planting is to be performed, the which I have ſufficiently ſpoke to already in that place where I ſpake of planting out of young ſtocks, yet notwithſtanding I will here repeat it again with a little addition: and therefore know that it is good planting of all ſorts of Fruit-bearing Trees, and others, both for pleaſure or profit, whoſe leaves fall in the Winter, from the beginning of *October*, (and ſometimes ſooner, as the Year falls out, which any indifferent Judge may eaſily apprehend by the rules before ſet down) to the end of *February*, and ſomething after, eſpecially if ſome rules be well taken notice of which I ſhall mention anon: but the ſureſt way is to take the head of the Seaſon, for Trees will prepare and put more for root in a Fortnight or three Weeks when you plant betime, than they will in ſix or eight, when the ground is chill'd with wet and cold: and take notice, that you may ordinarily begin ſooner to plant well-grown Trees, than thoſe that are very young, and in a very thriving condition, eſpecially young Apple-Trees and Peaches, whoſe Stocks were raiſed of the Stone or Kernel, which will be in a growing poſture even until extreme Weather put them to a ſtand: and therefore for ſuch as theſe it would not be amiſs to ſtay a little longer, until the Sap be ſomewhat hardened, except your Tree be of ſuch a growth

as

as you may afford to take off a pretty deal of its top or head; or that the Weather be inclined to moiſture, the which may be a good opportunity. I have ſometimes removed both Vines and other Trees, in a caſe of neceſſity, at Midſummer, and with convenient watering and ſhadowing for a time, they have done very well; but this is no ſure rule to go by, but only ſhew you what I have done, and may be by any in the like caſe, and ſometimes to good purpoſe.

And altho' many of thoſe Trees which are removed very timely, as in the end of *September*, and in *October*, may ſhrink and ſeem to wither much, yet they will recover and come to their former plumpneſs, and do well, as I have oft experienced. Remember that it will be to good purpoſe to water all ſuch Trees as you plant either very early or very late, ſo ſoon as you have planted them: You may judge when the Sap is at a ſtand, by obſerving what I have writ in that place which treateth of the planting out of young Stocks, to which I refer you. Take notice, that Pear-Trees have ordinarily both leſs and more brittle or ſpalt roots, than Apple-Trees, and therefore you muſt take more pains in opening the ground deeper and wider, when you are to take up any, and not to pull over hard, leſt you leave moſt of the root behind; alſo the roots of ſuch Apple-Trees or Stocks as have been raiſed of the Kernels of good Fruit, are likewiſe more brittle than of thoſe raiſed of Crab or Wilding Kernels: another thing worth taking notice of, is, that in caſe you have occaſion to plant an Orchard, or any ranges of Trees near your Houſe or Walls, againſt which you have, or intend to plant any choice Fruit, be ſure to plant them at ſuch a diſtance from your Houſe or Walls, as that when they are grown up to any conſiderable bigneſs, they may not over-hang your Wall-Trees, or hinder the Sun too much from coming to them, whereby your Fruit is much better in every reſpect; and as for your Wall-Trees be ſure to plant your tendereſt and choiceſt Fruit, ſuch as Apricocks, Peaches, Nectarins, Figgs, choice Vines, and the earlieſt and beſt ſorts of Cherries, and where they may have half day Sun at leaſt, the more the better; and as for moſt ſorts of Plumbs, and great bearing Cherries, leſs Sun will ſerve turn, and do well enough, yea, where there is ſcarce any for the greateſt part of the Year, but yet the more they have the better taſted they will be; and as for the diſtance you are to obſerve between your Wall-Trees, it is to be more or leſs according to the height of your Wall, or the goodneſs of your ground; the moſt ordinary diſtance is three good paces, but where the Wall

is low, or your ground good, your beſt way is to obſerve a larger diſtance, eſpecially for Pears, except they be grafted upon Quince-ſtocks, otherwiſe you cannot keep them in good order without much cutting, which will increaſe Wood, but little Fruit, eſpecially in ſuch kinds of Fruit; but of this more afterward.

One thing more I will add to theſe Inſtructions, the which I have often proved very well worth my labour; that being reſolved to plant either Trees or Stocks, but by reaſon of ſome other occaſions I could not get my ground ready ſo ſoon as I deſired to plant, the Seaſon being fully come, I have taken up my Trees or Stocks, and pruned their roots ready to plant, and then have laid them in the ground, where they have remained, at the head of the Seaſon, a Fortnight or three Weeks; and ſometime when I have not begun ſo early, they have lain two Months or more, in which time they have ſo prepared for root, that being after ſet in their due places, they have been as forward as if they had been ſet in their order at the firſt taking up, whereby ſo much time hath been ſaved, and my Plants out of the danger of a dry Spring or Summer; only take notice, that thoſe which you take up very early or very late, muſt not lie ſo long before you plant them in their due places, as thoſe taken up in the more cold time of the Year: becauſe, as I hinted, they will draw root ſooner, and then having ſhot out young roots (which are very tender) before you plant them, they will be apt to be broken off, and prove a great hindrance; yet if they be not many, or very forward, the matter is not much.

Of the dreſſing and keeping your Trees in good order, and firſt of Wall-Trees.

AFter your Trees are well ſettled in their places, as alſo for thoſe that are well grown, (for indeed I do not like their way that wholly neglect the tacking up of their Trees the firſt Year, if need require; for they that do are oft enforc'd to cut, and alſo to ſtrain their Trees, to bring them cloſe and orderly to the Wall, after a Years extravagancy, which at firſt might be prevented with little labour, and leſs damage) you are to provide ſome nails, ſome bigger and ſome leſs, according to the goodneſs of your Wall, and bigneſs of your Trees you are to dreſs; for ſome Walls will hold a three-penny, or four-penny nail, better than ſome other will a ſix-penny nail; likewiſe ſome branches require a greater, others a leſs nail;

nail; according to the ſtubborneſs, weight, or plyableneſs there-of; alſo you are to provide ſome parings of Hats, or the upper leathers of old Shooes, or ſome parings of leather from the Shooemakers, which two laſt are more durable than the former, the which parings of leathers are to be cut into narrow ſlips the breadth of a Man s Finger, or thereabout, and then cut into ſhort pieces, about three Inches, ſome four, and ſome longer, as the bigneſs of the Branches may require, ſo as not to gird your Branches too much, neither to let them have too much liberty, the mean is beſt; if you drive your nails into one end of your leathers, before you begin to tack up your Tree, I take it to be a ready way; then you are to ſpread every Branch in an orderly manner, one by one, that your Tree when it is nail'd up may reſemble the form of a Fan, not laying your Branches a croſs upon one another, if you love good order in your work: You may begin either at the top or bottom, and in caſe your Wall be low, you muſt ſpread your Branches the more in breadth, they will run too faſt upward, leaving no Wall room unfurniſhed, if you have Branches although pretty near the ground, cutting off none, but ſuch as ſhoot fore-right and will not come cloſe and handſom to the Wall, except your Tree be poor and not thriving, which if it be, it will be your beſt way to take off ſome of the Branches or Arms in convenient places, from whence you would have your Tree to multiply its Branches.

The Seaſon for this nailing and dreſſing, is any time from the fall of the leaf, until the riſing of the ſap, but for Apricocks, whoſe Bloſſom-buds grow very goale towards *Chriſtmas*, it is beſt not to defer the dreſſing of them pretty timely, otherwiſe many of their Buds will be apt to be rubb'd off; yet this I will tell you, if your Apricocks are apt to blow too early, and thereupon apt to miſcarry, then your ſureſt way is to defer the cutting and nailing of them up until they are ready to bloſſom, but then you muſt be more than ordinary careful leſt you ſpoil too many bloſſoms; by this late Husbandry I have had plenty of Fruit; but remember upon what account I approve of this backward or late dreſſing, it is no general rule, one inconvenience is incident to Apricock-trees that are not timely nailed, chiefly in caſe of much Snow, or extream Froſt, for then ſome ſorts of Birds are apt to pick of the Bloſſom-buds, and make more waſt having the Branches more at liberty, as I have often ſeen; the Bird call'd *Tom-tit* is one of the chiefeſt in this miſchief. But beſides this Winter Husbandry, there is Summers dreſ-

ſing of Wall-trees, found by good experience to be as profitable for the increaſe of Fruit as the former, beſides the handſomneſs, as alſo for the better ripening or beautifying of the preſent Fruit, by careful and diſcreet cutting off ſuch Branches as are too much extravagant, and hinder convenient Sun from your Fruit, or carefully to nail or tack them up where there is convenient room for them to lie; alſo the cutting off the tops of ſome of the goaleſt or forwardeſt Branches, doth oft occaſion them to knit for Fruit the better, if done about *Midſummer:* You may prevent unneceſſary Branches, by rubbing or cutting off ſuch Buds as come forth where there is not convenient room for them to be laid, and may prove a very good piece of Husbandry for the curious, to buſie themſelves about in the growing time of the Year, and will prevent much pruning, which is very good in divers Fruits; but remember, as I hinted before, that this Summers dreſſing muſt be done with a great deal of care and circumſpection, leſt you ſhould ſhake your Fruit down: where this Summer's dreſſing is uſed, there is no need of plucking the leaves to make Fruit ripen or colour; but if it do ſeem needful, let your Fruit have its full growth firſt, leſt you ſpoil it. Alſo in caſe your Trees be over charged with Fruit, as ſometimes they be, which occaſioneth your Fruit to want that good reliſh, beſides the ſize they uſe to have, in ſuch a caſe it will be good Husbandry to pick off ſome of the ſmalleſt or under Fruit, that ſo your Tree may bring the reſt to better perfection; but this muſt not be done until the danger of miſcarriage by *May*'s Frofty Mornings be paſt, neither defer it too long.

The next thing to be conſidered is, that in caſe your Trees do not thrive, either through the barrenneſs of the Soil, being too dry, wet, or cold, *&c.* you are to endeavour to amend thoſe defects as followeth: if your ground be too dry, (which cauſeth Fruit to ſtarve, and ſometime to fall off) gravelly or ſtony, you are to open the ground ſome reaſonable compaſs about your Tree, and if your Tree be old, and of long ſtanding, you are to open it at a farther diſtance, that you may beſtow your coſt moſt where the moſt and youngeſt roots or feeders are, from whence your Tree receives its principal nouriſhment; and not only cloſe to the Body of your Tree, as is uſually practiſed to little or no purpoſe, in Trees that are well grown, and fetch their nouriſhment at a greater diſtance: and having opened the ground, you are to cut the ends of all ſuch roots as you meet with, and then to put in ſome good Earth, either of good ſhort

lome

lome, or other hearty Earth, to and amongſt the roots, ſpreading them and inclining them rather ſhallow than deep: and in caſe you uſe Dung, your beſt way is not to lay it very deep, neither next the roots of your Trees, but put ſome Earth between the roots and your dung, whether you lay your dung above or beneath the roots, and then level up your ground again; and if to this you do but prune your Trees a little, as you ſee cauſe, you ſhall not fail to have a thriving Tree.

If the Earth be of too cold and clung a nature, the which is not very pleaſing to many tender Fruits, often cauſing it to rot on the Tree, or often to want that good reliſh which is proper to your Fruit, or not to ripen kindly according to its nature and ſeaſon, if your Tree ſtand too deep in ſuch natured ground, it is not eaſily helped without taking up and new planting both ſhallower, and mending the ground with a more warm and better natured Earth; but if you may not take up your Tree, as being too old, you ſhall open the ground until you come to the roots, the which you have to raiſe, at leaſt good part of them, and cut the ends, and lay them as ſhallow as you may conveniently, covering them with ſome good natured Earth; as for thoſe that root more ſhallow, they are more eaſily and ſurely cured by the ſame means, either by taking away of the bad Earth for ſome reaſonble compaſs, or at leaſt by mingling it with ſome very good earth, very rotten dung, or ſome Lime-rubbiſh of old Walls, *&c.* which is exceeding good to mingle with any cold-natured earth, ſo likewiſe pretty ſtore of Sea-coal aſhes, well mingled with your dung or Mould: but theſe aſhes of themſelves are very dry and barren, but very uſeful, being mingled with any cold or wet ground, alſo ſmall ruddiſh Chalk, and Sand well mingled with good earth.

Alſo if your ground be very wet, then you are to make ſome convenient Dreins, of ſuch a depth as may be to purpoſe, and carry away all that offenſive moiſture to ſome Ditch or Pond, where it may be uſeful, or at leaſt not offenſive: if your Dreins or Trenches be made of a conſiderable depth, at leaſt ſome principal ones, it will deſtroy Ruſhes, and ſome other offenſive plants that are naturally fed by the exceſs of moiſture; theſe Dreins or Trenches, if you are not willing to be at the coſt of Brickwork, *&c.* to convey the Water under ground, then you may fill them up with great ſtones, laying them in ſuch a manner for hollowneſs, as notwithſtanding there may be a

cient paſſage for the Water to drein or paſs away as aforeſaid, you may firſt upon the ſtones lay ſome courſe gravel, and then cover them level as you ſee cauſe, by this means your over moiſt ground may be made more apt for to plant Fruit-trees upon, or other Garden-herbage, *&c.*

Of the Ordering or Husbanding of thoſe Fruit-Trees that ſtand at large in Standards, as Apples and Pears, &c.

YOUR beſt way is not to prune them either much or often, if you love Fruit more than a Tree to thrive in Wood, and therefore I would adviſe you whilſt your Tree is young, to endeavour to bring it into a handſom ſhape and order, and when it comes to bear Fruit, forbear pruning, unleſs in caſe of broken, or ſuch boughs as grow croſs, and lie galling or fretting others; but in caſe your Trees, or any of them are hide-bound, and thereupon do not ſhoot and thrive, then you are to make uſe of the former inſtructions, by pruning both top and root, and amending the earth if it be faulty; but ſometimes, only cutting off ſome of the branches, or topping your Tree towards the Spring, or in Winter, and then with the point of your Knife ſlit the Bark of your Tree in two or three places, from the top, or heading place, in caſe it be hard, it will be the better.

Take notice, that many a good bearing Tree, both Apple and Pear, have been much hindred by much and often pruning. Indeed for Stone-fruit, in caſe they grow old, or too thick, and if they be headed pretty near, they will become as young, and recover their bearing quickly again.

But yet in caſe your Pear or Apple Trees are grown old, and for want of nouriſhment are not able to bring their Fruit to that perfection as formerly, in ſuch a caſe, to take off ſome of the moſt undeſerving boughs, ſuch as have leaſt benefit of the Sun, or moſt unhandſom Water-boughs, as ſome call them, that grow altogether under the droppings of others, this pruning in the aforeſaid caſe, hath done good, but I do not like it ſhould be often done; ſo likewiſe if a Tree do thrive exceedingly in Wood, and doth not bear Fruit, to thin it a little, that the Sun and the Air may have more free paſſage amongſt the branches; but if for all this it doth not bear Fruit in ſome conſiderable manner in a Year or two after, then your beſt and ſureſt way is to Graft it again with ſuch Fruit as you find

doth

doth bear well in the like Air or Situation; the manner is taught before, and is worthy the practiſing in ſuch a caſe.

And as for the opening of the ground about old Trees, as it is uſually practiſed with many, about four or five foot wide, and letting them lie open a Month or two, or more, and then filling them up again, adding ſome Dung or Chalk, or both mingled together: for my part I do not ſee any reaſon how it ſhould advantage either the Tree or its Fruit, either as to its thriving or bearing, becauſe ſuch old or great Trees, I mean Apple or Pear Trees, that fetch their feeding or nouriſhment at a far greater diſtance, ſo that the coſt comes not near thoſe roots that feed or nouriſh the Tree; indeed, for young Trees, whoſe feeding roots are within four or five foot of the Tree, this Husbandry may be to good purpoſe, as alſo for Cherries, and Plumbs, which uſually are pretty full of feeding roots nigh home, if not very old: I ſay to ſuch, this Husbandry may contribute to the thriving, and alſo the bearing of the fairer Fruit, if not uſed too often.

If your Trees be ſubject to Moſs, the which is incident to Trees that grow on cold clay grounds, as alſo wet grounds, and likewiſe to Trees upon ſome ſorts of dry grounds, but the kind of Moſs is much differing, for that on the cold and moiſt grounds bring a long ſhaggy Moſs, the other a dry ſcurfie Moſs, both are enemies to your Trees, and very unhandſom, and therefore worth the labour to cleanſe them; if your Trees ſtand too thick, or nigh together, it is ſo much the worſe, for the more Air and Sun they have, the leſs the Moſs doth encreaſe, and the ground hath the more benefit from the Sun-beams to warm and quicken it; if you find your ground to be over-wet, uſe the former Inſtructions of Dreins, to make uſe of ſuch kind of ſoil as is of a warming and comforting nature, alſo to ſcrape or rub off the Moſs as much as you can with an Iron Tool, made in ſhape like a Howe, or Dough-rake, made a little hollow on each ſide, the better to anſwer the ſeveral ſhapes or ſizes of boughs that are to be Moſſed; it is to have a convenient ſtail or handle, rather ſhort than long, except you ſtand on the ground to do your work; the moſt convenient Seaſon for this work is in the Winter, when the Moſs is ſomething moiſt; defer it not too late, or nigh the Spring, leſt you ſpoil too many Bloſſom-buds which then grow gole and brittle, but if, as ſometimes I have ſeen, that the Moſs is ſo much and long that it even ſmothers the branches, and conſequently

quently hinders the bearing of Fruit, and ſeems an endleſs labour to Moſs it, then your ſureſt way is to prune off the greateſt part of the head, and Moſs the reſt, or to take off all its head, and your Tree will ſhoot and become as it were young again, and do ſervice; and in caſe your Plantation be too thick, which in cold Clay grounds occaſions Moſs to encreaſe the faſter, you are to mend that fault by taking away ſome of the worſt deſerving Trees, whereby your others may become more fruitful, or at leaſt better taſted Fruit, (and Moſs leſs apt to encreaſe) by having more benefit of the comforting and fructifying virtue of the Sun and Air. If the cauſe of the Moſs on your Trees be the drineſs or barrenneſs of the ground, then beſides ſcraping it off, you may help your Tree by opening the ground at a good diſtance about your Tree, and lay amongſt the feeding roots, at leaſt as many as you meet with, ſome good ſhort lome or the ſcowring of Ponds or Ditches, which will keep moiſture, and nouriſh your Tree better, and ſometimes prevent the falling and worm-eating of Fruit, which is incident to dry and barren grounds. Take notice, that notwithſtanding theſe directions are very good, being ſeaſonably and ſuitably perform'd or made uſe of, yet if your Tree bear Fruit competently and good according to its kind, I would adviſe you to forbear tampering with it, either by opening or pruning, unleſs in caſe of neceſſity, as in the caſe of dead, cankered, broken, or galling-boughs, miſſeltow, and the Moſs, which ought to be done with care, leaſt you ſpoil or break off the bearing Buds, and diſappoint your ſelf of Fruit.

The Canker is as bad a miſchief as any that happens to Trees, but eſpecially to young Trees, which being ſmall, are eaten or tainted round before one is aware of it: Therefore if your Fruit be of ſuch a kind as is ſubject to canker, as of a truth ſome are more than other, which makes it clear, that the cauſe is in it ſelf in a great meaſure, but yet very much furthered when it happens on a ground which doth feed that ſharp humour, which may be the cauſe; in ſuch a caſe it is hard curing. We ſee amongſt Men ſome Conſtitutions are more ſubject to itching, or breaking out, occaſioned by ſome ſharp or virulent humours, which is either more or leſs furthered, as they delight or feed on ſuch kind of Diet; or Drink ſuch liquors as feed that humour. Sometimes too deep planting cauſeth Trees to canker and blaſt on the top, and in ſome that are very ſubject to it, a little bruiſe, and ſometimes unſeaſonable pruning.

This may be a ſufficient ſatisfaction or reſolve from a meer labouring Gardner, who hath neither time to make more experiments nor learning to expreſs the reaſon and cauſe in a Philoſophical way: which would have been very acceptable to Scholars, *&c.* but I hope it may be reaſonable ſatisfaction to thoſe young practitioners in the Art of Gardning, for whoſe ſakes I chiefly write theſe Inſtructions. The way of Cure follows.

As I ſaid, if your Fruit-trees are of ſuch kind as are more than ordinary ſubject to Canker, or the nature of your ground more inclining your Trees thereto, your diligence is to be the more, in often viewing and ſearching your Nurſery or Plantation, eſpecially of your youngeſt, and upon the firſt opportunity to cut out the leaſt ſpeck of Canker you meet with; you may know when you have cut it out ſufficiently by this, if after the cutting thereof, the Sap in a little time after appears of a reddiſh colour, it is not ſufficiently cut out; but if on the contrary it continue freſh and green, it is a ſign of ſoundneſs: This clean cutting of it out, I have found tobe ſufficient for the Cure of the place ſo cut. But beſide the cutting of it out, ſome uſe applications to the place, as Cow-dung and Piſs mingled, others Horſe-dung mingled with Clay, ſome Hogs-dung, or dung of a Jakes: Others, after they have cut it out, and hack'd it round about the cut, do waſh it often with ſtrong Vinegar, or you may ſlake a Lime-ſtone in a little Water, Piſs or Lie, and being pretty thick, apply to the place, being as I ſaid firſt cut out; others uſe means to prevent the Cankering, by laying ſome ſtore of Hogs-dung in the hole where they plant their Trees, or ſome round about where the Tree roots are to run; and this I have heard ſome affirm with much confidence for a certain prevention; ſome uſe Buck-aſhes, others uſe Buck-aſhes, Fern, and Nettles; others in caſe their ground be gravelly, or of a nature inclining thereto, where they are to plant, uſe ſtore of good ſhort Lome, Clay, or the Scowering of Ponds, all which may prove very beneficial in one kind or other; but I have oft obſerved, as I ſaid before, that where the Canker hath been exactly cut out, it hath been cured without any application, whereas many by truſting too much to their Medicines, have neglected the principal of the Cure, I mean the exact cutting of the taint or infection out: I do know upon good experience, that too deep planting is as great a cauſe of Cankering, and blaſting the tops of Trees, as any thing, as alſo of not bearing Fruit. I have obſerved in divers places, that Trees whilſt they were young, were very much troubled with the Canker, the which, when they had gotten

ſome

ſome growth, were quite freed from it only for a time whilſt young, cutting it out as occaſion required; but if you find, as indeed it ſometimes ſo falls out, that you cannot rid your Trees of this diſeaſe, as it happeneth with ſome ſorts of Pippins, Harvie-Apples, and ſome others, in ſome ſorts of ground although of a pretty good nature, ſo that what your Trees ſhoot this Year, dies the next, or before: If it do not bear Fruit in ſome conſiderable manner, then it will be your beſt courſe to cut off the head of ſuch a Tree, or Trees, leaving only ſome convenient arms or boughs, whereon you may Gratt ſome other ſort of Fruit which in the like ground or ſituation doth bear Fruit well, and is not ſo ſubject to Canker.

In caſe any arm or bough be broken by the Wind, or other accident, your beſt way is to cut it off cloſe and ſmooth, although it be in the Summer, except it have Fruit on it which you deſire to ſave, the hurt being not ſo great as to hinder the paſſage of the Sap: In ſuch caſe, by tying it to ſome convenient neighbour bough, or ſome prop, your Fruit may grow to maturity; and then if you deſire to preſerve it, you may cut off ſome part of it, that ſo the Wind may not have too much power on it, or its own weight, to deſtroy it, until it be ſtrengthened by the return of the next Years Sap; if you will, you may bind ſome tempered Clay to the fracture, if not, I know no inconvenience in the neglect, ſome account it robbing of the Tree or root of ſo much Sap, by cutting branches, *&c.* in the Summer, ſupoſing a deſcent of Sap into the root again, which is but a miſtake, as I have before mentioned.

Miſſeltow is another inconvenience to Trees, robbing them of ſome uſeful ſap or nouriſhment, which might be better imployed, and therefore to be cut off where it appears.

Gum is another evil happning to thoſe Trees that bear Stone-fruit; I know no other cure, but to cut it pretty cloſe where it doth iſſue out, the which will in time heal up again; ſome grounds are very ſubject to it, inſomuch that any little ſtrain or bruiſe inclines to breed Gum, which ſometimes ſpoils Peaches, Apricocks, *&c.*

And beſides the diſeaſes that Trees are ſubject to, the Fruit is often deſtroyed or defaced by ſome kinds of Vermin, alſo Birds, the which doth moſt miſchief in the Winter, by pecking of the Bloſſom-buds: in hard Froſty or Snowy Weather, they do likewiſe ſpoil Cherries, the which both Jack-Daws and Jayes do: amongſt ſmall Birds the Tom-tit and Bull-finches do moſt miſchief, the which with Lime-twigs conveniently ſet, you may take many of them in hard Weather, on your Plumb and Apricock Trees, or you may deſtroy

many

many with a good Trunck, or Stone-bow; as for Jays, Mag-pyes, and Jack-daws, they are to be deſtroyed by Shooting them, or with Springs, by them that know how to ſet them for the purpoſe, which ſome do; ſome do take of theſe Fowls alive, and tie them in ſome convenient place, where they will ſcrame or cry, eſpecially the Jay, and will cauſe divers of their kind to gather together, by which means you may make greater deſtruction amongſt them with your Gun: they that dwell near Woods may make good uſe of this Experiment.

Crows and Jack-daws are great deſtroyers of Peaſe and Cherries, they may be frightened from coming to your Peaſe or Wheat, as I have made trial divers times, and for any thing I know to the contrary, may be as effectual for the preſervation of Cherries, if you ſhoot one or two, or more, if your ground be very large, and then in ſome open place near where they hunt, make a hole about the breadth of a Buſhel, and as deep, or more, and then pull your Crow, or the like, and ſtick and ſcatter the Feathers all about the hole, and ſome in the hole, and while the Feathers continue any thing freſh and dry, there will neither Crows nor Jack-Daws come near to meddle with your Peaſe, nor with your Cherries, I believe, after they have ſeen that ſight.

Snails are likewiſe great enemies to Wall-fruit, and eſpecially to the beſt ſort of Nectarins; you are to ſearch for them betimes in the Morning, or when it raineth, at which times they will be ſtirring about; at other times you may find them in the holes of your Wall, if there be any, or in other ſhady places behind Weeds or Herbs, that grow againſt Walls or Pales; alſo if in ſeveral places near your Trees, you ſet ſome ſmall Boards ends, or the like, leaning or lying ſomething hollow under, or behind which the Snails will creep for ſhelter from the Sun, where you may take them and deſtroy them.

Earwigs may be taken and deſtroyed, if in divers places of your Garden you ſtick ſome pieces of Canes, or great Kixes of Hemlock, hung or ſtuck with the hollow end downward, ſo as they creep in; alſo the Hoofs of Cattle hung on the tops of ſticks in divers places, into which they will creep for ſhelter, and once a day to take thoſe Canes or Hoofs, and knock them on the ground, and deſtroy the Earwigs with your Foot.

Piſs-ants are another ſort of troubleſome gueſts in a Garden, and amongſt Fruits, you muſt ſearch out their hills or place of abode, and having provided ſome ſcalding Water, open the ground a little,

and pour the Water into their hole or habitation. Another way which ſome have uſed to deſtroy them, is by making ſome ſmall Boxes of Cards, in the which they have put ſome Sugar, being firſt mingled with ſome Mercury, and beaten very fine, making ſome holes in the Boxes, of ſuch a bigneſs only as Piſs-ants may creep in, leſt you ſhould deſtroy Bees; theſe Boxes are to be hung or ſet in convenient places where the Piſs-ants do haunt. Some uſe Brimſtone-powder to ſtop the paſſages out of their holds or habitations, others uſe Tarr, or ſome other Gummy ſtuff, to anoint round the foot of their Trees, where they go up to eat their Fruit; in Standard Trees it may do ſomething to prevent them, but the moſt certain way is to prevent them in their places of abode, or dens.

Waſps are likewiſe ſpoilers of Fruit, and may be deſtroyed by ſetting divers Gally-pots or others, half full of Water, in convenient places, and ſmearing the tops and inſides with Honey, or Honey'd Water; or you may hang ſeveral Glaſſes ſo dreſſed in ſuch Trees, where you deſire moſt to preſerve your Fruit from ſuch Gueſts.

Catterpillars, of which there are divers ſorts, but thoſe are the worſt enemies to Trees and Fruit which are bred by the Eaſt Wind, when Trees firſt begin to ſhoot out their green Buds or leaves, the which, ſome Years where they prevail, make ſuch deſtruction, that the Trees look as if they were blaſted; they are bred within the Leaf or Bud, or at leaſt quickly make way under the fold of the Buds or Leaves before they be ſpread out, and there continue until they have deſtroy'd the very heart of the Bud that is for ſhoot, likewiſe thoſe for Bloſſom and Fruit; ſome, that have but a few Trees and leiſure, as alſo a love to their Fruit, have with a kind of Pump or Force made for that purpoſe, and being ſet in a Tub of Water, have often waſhed their Trees, both againſt their Walls, and others, whereby they have ſaved much Fruit, beſides ſome convenient ſhoot or growth of their Trees, which otherwiſe might have been loſt. Theſe kind of Caterpillars are very prejudicial to young Grafts, and inoculated Trees, eſpecially of the firſt Year, which if not timely prevented, doth ſometimes quite deſtroy, or at leaſt hinder much of their growth, and oft ſpoil the gracefulneſs of their ſhoot. Amongſt young Grafts, they muſt be ſearch'd for as I have elſewhere directed. Birds do much injury to young Apples and Pear Trees, by lighting upon the young and tender tops of them to ſearch for Catterpillars, and thereby have broken them, which have cauſed ſome to think, and ſay, they were eaten off by ſome other kind of

Ver-

Vermin. Other ſorts of Catterpillars there are, which are ingendred of Spawn, which at ſome times of the Spring you may find on divers ſorts of Trees and Boughs, wrapped as it were in Cobwebs, the which being taken before they are diſperſed, and deſtroy'd, they will do no farther harm, otherwiſe you may often find they will eat off all the leaves of the Trees where they are. Other ſorts there are, but they are but few, and may ſoon be found with diligence. Another ſort that uſe to eat up the leaves of Gooſeberry-buſhes, I have mentioned elſewhere; beſides thoſe that ſpoil Cabbages, Coliflowers, and Turnips, ſpoken of elſewhere; likewiſe ſome affirm with much confidence, that the oft ſmoaking of them with old Hay, or Straw, uſing the advantage of the Wind in the Spring, to be a ſure prevention.

There is another ſort of Vermin which is a very great annoyance to Cherry-trees, eſpecially great leav'd Cherries; it is a ſmall black Bug, and will be in great numbers on the leaves and ſpringing Buds, tainting the Tree, although in a very thriving condition, cauſing the Sap to be at a ſtand, even in the chiefeſt time of growing; what the name of it is I know not, or whether that Bug, call'd a Lady-bird, do cauſe them, I know not, but I do commonly ſee that Bug on Cherry-Trees, and amongſt thoſe ſmall Bugs, whether to feed on them, or to caſt that Spawn whereof they come: the only cure that I know, is often to waſh or daſh them after the manner mentioned a little before.

Orchards, and Nurſeries, have divers other Enemies and Caſualties whereby they are apt to be ſpoiled, as Deers, Goats, Hares, and Coneys, the beſt and ſureſt prevention is a good Fence; but if Coneys or Hares do come amongſt your Trees, either willingly keeping there, as ſome do, or by coming in againſt your will, if your Trees be young or ſmooth Bark'd, they will be apt to be ſpoil'd by them in hard Weather if not prevented, either by pitching up ſome Lathes round your Trees, or making ſome Trunks about each Tree either with three or with four ſides, or by wrapping ſome old, either Woollen or Linnen Cloaths, or old Stockings, about each Tree, ſo high as a Hare or Coney may not reach to Bark your Tree above it, and then dawb it with any kind of dung or garbage of Coneys, *&c.* and this will cauſe that they will not meddle with your Trees ſo long as the ſmell thereof remains; alſo ſome uſe Lime, being firſt ſlack'd, and being pretty thick, dawb their Trees of a convenient height: this muſt be renewed as you ſee cauſe.

To prevent the Inconvenience of great and ſtrong Winds, which often occaſion the loſs of much Fruit, as alſo the breaking of ſome arms or boughs of your Trees; the beſt prevention is to plant ſome ſort of Trees as may break the Violence of the Wind from your Orchard, yet at ſuch a diſtance, as they may not prove a worſe inconvenience than the Wind, either by over-hanging, or hindring the Sun too much from your Orchard, or by the running of their roots amongſt your Fruit-Trees, which in time they may do, and hinder them of much neceſſary nouriſhment; ſome have uſed divers ſorts of Plumbs, ſome Cherries, either red or black, which indeed will grow to a great ſtature. I have mentioned divers ſorts, which may ſerve for ſuch a purpoſe, as you may read toward the beginning of the Book, only you are to conſider which are of a large growing nature, and which not, and accordingly to plant them at a fit and convenient diſtance.

There are ſome other Caſualties ſometimes happening to Fruit, as Blaſtings, Froſts, *&c.* which none but the Provident Hand of God can effectually prevent; only there is a means, that is, and may be uſed, and often to good purpoſe, for ſome ſorts of early Bloſſoming, and tender Fruits that grow againſt Walls, as Apricocks, *&c.* the which in ſome Years, and alſo in ſome warm natur'd grounds, and very warm ſituated places, do blow very early, and are oft overtaken with Froſt, and come to nothing, the which miſcarriage to prevent, you may hang ſome Baſſe-matts, or Canvas, or the like before them, from the time of their firſt beginning to bloſſom, until they are well knit or ſet, and for ſome time after, if you ſee occaſion, opening or uncovering them every day, in caſe the Weather be mild; but open them not too early, nor very late, except the Weather be very mild, and after you do once begin to cover, you muſt be careful that you do not neglect to be conſtant, for you muſt know that covering will make them more tender, and therefore more apt to miſcarry; alſo you muſt make ſuch proviſion, that the Wind may not cauſe your covering to flap too and fro, and ſo cauſe more miſcarriage to your Fruit, than if you had not covered it at all. Alſo know, that by much covering and hindring your Trees from the benefit of the Sun in their uſual time of blowing, you may cauſe your Fruit to come later than is uſual for that kind of Fruit to do; and oft cauſe ſome ſorts of Fruit to bear pretty well, which ordinarily do not at all, or very little. Other ways might be related, both for theſe laſt mentioned Caſualties, and all the other, but

in

in regard they are either very troubleſome, uncertain, or full of danger, I forbear to relate them.

Of Vines and their Ordering.

FIrſt for the encreaſing of Vines, you may ſet them of cuttings from the fall of the Leaf, to the end of *Febrnary*, either all of the ſame Years ſhoot or growth, or you may take a joint or two of the former Years growth with your ſet, but it will do well enough being all of the ſame Years growth; let them be ſet the depth of two or three joints in the ground or more, if the joints be near or thick, and as much above ground; thoſe cuttings are accounted beſt by ſome, that are thickeſt of joints; let your ground be good, and the Situation temperate, not too dry, nor too wet, and after they have had two Years growth, you may remove and plant them in convenient places for bearing: when Vines are taken up to plant, being of one Years growth, either of cutting or layer, their root conſiſting only of a few ſappy ſtrings, in caſe they be not ſpeedily planted before the Wind take their roots, which will quickly be if not prevented, then I ſay your labour and expectation is fruſtrate; therefore, as I ſaid, let your Plants be of two Years growth before you re-plant them, unleſs you uſe more than ordinary diligence; ſome that have choice Vines, and deſire to increaſe them, if they cannot lay them on the ground, do make divers little troughs or boxes, *&c.* and faſten them in convenient places about their Vines, and therein lay ſeveral branches to root, and in fit ſeaſon for planting cut them for the Mother-plant, and diſpoſe of them as they deſire, only they are often to moiſten them, that they may take the better rooting: Vines are likewiſe often and eaſily increaſed by laying down ſome branches either young or old, (about half a foot deep in the ground or leſs) which being well rooted, may be cut off and planted elſewhere any time in Winter, and implanting, let them have as much Sun as you may conveniently, the pleaſure or profit in all likelihood will be the better, as to the ripening, *&c.* there are ſeveral ways of planting them, ſome againſt Houſe-ſides, where in ſome places they run a great height, and bear very much Fruit, ſome againſt lower Walls or Buttreſſes, conſtantly keeping them within ſome ſmall bounds, ſome plant them againſt Walls, but ſuffer them only to run on the top, or Coping of their Wall, ſome againſt Pales or Pole-work, Hedges or Arbors,

You may lay at any time of the Year, either Spring, Winter, or Summer.

Arbors, and ſome plant them after the manner of Vinyards in ſeveral ſtandards, about three, four, or five foot height, and about three or four foot aſunder, ſome tying them up to ſtakes, and ſome without, where they bear Fruit very prettily, and moſt commonly ripen well if the Ground and Husbandry be but good, (and the ground not too cold) and the kind not too tender: Now the Seaſon for the pruning of your Vines, it is any time from the fall of the Leaf, to the end of *February*, but moſt cut them from *December*, to the end of *January*, or middle of *February*, and many only in ſome of the twelve days; I have ſometimes cut Vines in *March*, but found no other inconvenience, except their Fruit being a little later in their ripening, which I confeſs is ſomething in caſe your Vines grew on a cold Ground or bad Situation for Sun; another inconvenience by late cutting, is their aptneſs to bleed much, which to ſome Vines that are not very luſty, may occaſion not only the lateneſs of the Fruits ripening, but ſometimes the ſtarving of the Fruit, and ſometimes, although but ſeldom, the death of your Vine; in the cutting of your Vines, if they are very luſty, you may leave only one Joint or Bud at a place, beſides convenient runners for the furniſhing of your Wall; but where Vines are but moderate in their growth, you may leave two or three joints at the moſt; ſome are ſo diligent and obſervant in cutting, that when their Vines do bleed (as moſt do little or much at the riſing of the Spring) if you mind it, you may cut ſo as it may not bleed on the Buds, but beſides, that it bleed not upon the Buds they leave, leſt it kill them. As for thoſe Vines that have but little room to ſpread in, they are kept very bare, as only one or two arms, and the reſt cut either within one or two joints of the Stock for bearing; ſo likewiſe thoſe that are planted in ſeveral ſtandards, as a Vineyard, are kept to one or two ſtandards, being faſtned to a good ſtrong ſtake, and cut either very near, or leaving two or three joints, and in ſome places they have made a ridge between every two ranges of Vines, that ſo the reflection of the Sun might the better haſten their ripening; but beſides this Winters pruning, they are to be dreſt once or twice in the Summer, once about the time of their blowing, cutting off unneceſſary ſhoots, or placing them in convenient order, and likewiſe bringing your bearers conveniently near your Wall where they may have the beſt advantage to ripen; the other time of dreſſing or cutting, is when they have their full growth or near it,

It is very good Husbandry when your Vine grows old to cut and ſupply young in its place, it will bear the better and fairer Fruit.

when

when you are to cut not only ſuperfluous branches that have no Fruit, yet ſo as to keep beauty or comlineſs in your Tree, but alſo to cut the ends of thoſe that have Fruit, leaving ſome two or three joints above the cluſter, leſt you ſhould ſtunt or ſtarve your Fruit; alſo if you ſee any new or young ſprouts ſpring out that may rob your Fruit, or any way hinder it as to its growth or ripening, you are to cut or pull them away; only if any branch comes forth in convenient places either to lay for increaſe, or to ſupply in place of ſome too old, you are to preſerve it, and help it, that it may be the ſtronger for any the aforeſaid purpoſes, remembring that young are more plentiful in bearing than old, beſides the handſomneſs; your Vine is then too old, when it ſends forth but few or weak ſtarving ſhoots, and bears but little in compariſon to what it had wont to do: Now in caſe your Vine do not thrive, and bring its Fruit to that perfection it formerly did, and that the cauſe was not through the unſeaſonableneſs of the Year or Weather, then you are to conſider the nature and temper of the ground, from whence your Vine hath its nouriſhment, whether it be not too hot and dry, which oft is accompanied with barrenneſs; in ſuch a caſe you are ſometime in the Winter Seaſon to open the ground ſome compaſs, where the roots run either more or leſs, according as your Vine is in age or largeneſs of growth, becauſe the older your Vine is, the farther it doth fetch its nouriſhment, and accordingly to be helped; firſt cutting the ends of ſuch roots you meet with, and laying ſome good mold, or mold mingled with very rotten dung, or having firſt laid the mold to the roots, you may ſpread ſome dung upon the Earth, or pour ſome quantity of Beaſt Blood, the which in ſhort time will ſo renew your Vine that it will become as young again; and thus you may renew and help your Vines with ſoil, either of a hot or colder nature, as you ſee cauſe, and as I have formerly directed before ſpeaking of Wall-trees and their ordering; this foremention'd Husbandry will cure the changing of your Vine-leaves either red or yellow, when it happens in the growing time of the Year, except it proceed from ſome other defect in the root or body, as rottenneſs, or worm-eating, or ſome other accidental chance, the which it may poſſibly cure by breeding new roots, and new ſhoots in place of the other; do but remember that the extreams of either heat or cold, wet or dry is prejudicial to all plants and Fruit-bearing Trees, and then you cannot be wanting in the knowledge how to help in caſe of need; Lime-rubbiſh of old Walls, Pigeons-dung are highly accounted of, to be mingled with any wet and cold natur'd ground

where

where you plant Vines or other moiſt kinds of Fruit that are tender; as to the bleeding of Vines, which happeneth by over-late cutting, or ſome other accident; I for my part did never know any Vine die by that means, and therefore was never occaſioned to make experiment to that purpoſe, only ſome have ſet down means to ſtop the bleeding, which I ſuppoſe hath been only in caſe of cutting or breaking ſome great arm or branch: the means was either by binding ſome Sear-cloth about the place, made of Pitch, Roſin, and Tallow, *&c.* or with ſome hard Wax, or Searing; ſome have boaſted of a charm to that purpoſe: But let this ſuffice for the ordering of Vines, tending only for the pleaſure of the Fruit to be eaten.

Of Roſes, their ordering and increaſing.

AS for the increaſing of Roſes, of which there are thirty or forty varieties, they are not, or at leaſt very rarely, increaſed by the Seeds, although they may even as well as Sweet-bryer, although indeed they are ſomething more tender, neither is ſeed to be had ſo eaſily or plentiful; the truth is, it is with Roſes, as it is with many other Flowering-trees and Shrubs that are hardy enough, and apt to be increaſed by ſuckers, layers, cuttings, or ſlips, yet being raiſed of ſeed, they come forward very ſlow, and very oft apt to be ſpoiled by hard Winter-weather; but if any deſire to ſow their ſeeds, by which means poſſibly ſome varieties may be raiſed from ſome ſorts of them; your beſt way is to ſow them ſo ſoon as they be ripe, yet before they are, as I may ſay, dead ripe; for I ſuppoſe it may be with them as with Sweet-bryer, which being ſown as ſoon as they turn ſomewhat red, they do better than when they are very ripe; from the end of *Auguſt*, to the end of *September*, is a good Seaſon; you are to break the Pod or Hip, and ſow the ſeeds, or you may keep the ſeeds in ſome indifferent tempered mould, until *February* or *March*, but you muſt not keep your mould over dry: the way to ſee the proof of your ſowing more ſpeedily is, that ſo ſoon as you have raiſed ſome plants although they be but little bigger than a good Crows-quill, you may take ſome Buds off about the end of *July*, or in *Auguſt* or *September*, for ſo late, and ſometimes a Month later, you may inoculate Roſes, you may bud them on the White or Damask-roſe Stock, or on other ſorts of Roſes double or ſingle, by which means you may, as I ſaid, ſee what variety your ſowing hath produced in a far ſhorter time than the natural Plants will.

Alſo

Alſo Roſes are, as moſt know, increaſed by ſuckers that ſpring from the roots, the which ſome ſorts of Roſes bring forth in great plenty, after they have ſtood ſome time in a Garden, the which being taken up from the Mother-plant in fit Seaſon, and planted in convenient order, will furniſh you with Flowers according to their kind; they are alſo increaſed by laying down ſome of the ſhoots or branches, covering that part you lay about a Hand bredth deep, or thereabout, not covering the very top of the ſhoot, you may keep them down with a hooked or ſnagged ſtick if they be ſtiff, the young ſhoots of the ſame Years growth are beſt for the purpoſe, but if your Tree doth not yield neither ſuckers nor ſhoots fit to lay, then you may cut your Tree pretty near the ground in caſe it be natural, and then it will be apt to ſend forth ſhoots for your purpoſe, and it may be ſuckers likewiſe; but if you may not or will not cut your Tree down low, then you may only top his branches or head, by which means you may have ſhoots either to lay, or at leaſt to bud; but in regard ſome ſorts of Roſes are not very apt to take root, being laid in an ordinary way (as the Muſk-roſe for one, although it will ſometimes grow of ſlips or cuttings) therefore for ſuch it will be your beſt way to prick or hack that part you are to lay with your Knife, or which is more ſure for ſuch ſorts, to cut your ſhoot with a croſs-cut, and then upward with a ſlit, as you lay Flowers, putting a little earth or any convenient thing to keep the ſlit open; you are to cut it at the bottom of a bud or joint, for there it is apteſt to take root, and then lay it down in the earth as aforeſaid; if you lay them in the Summer, they may be fit to take off and plant out the Winter following, remembring to give your layer convenient moiſture in caſe of drowth; you may lay both in Winter or Spring likewiſe, and by the Winter following they will be fit to cut off and plant as occaſion ſerves; divers ſorts of Roſes are likewiſe increaſed of branches, ſlips or cuttings without root, being ſet in convenient places not too dry, from the fall of the Leaf, to the end of *February*, but are to be kept moiſt in caſe of a dry Spring.

Another way for the increaſing of the ſeveral ſorts of Roſes, is by Inoculating, which may be beſt performed on ſuch ſorts as are moſt luſty and free of ſhoot or growth, as the White or Damask, *&c.* after your Buds are taken and ſhot pretty well, which will be the Spring or Summer following, ſometimes the ſame Year they are budded, which is in caſe of early budding of them, or pruning them much, or heading your ſtock too ſoon; but it is beſt when they

The manner how to inoculate is taught before.

do not ſpring until the Spring following, unleſs you bud of the Monthly Roſe very timely or early, to have it flower in *Auguſt* or *September* following, the which it will do being budded in *April* or *May*, as I have often try'd; but as I ſaid, when your Buds are pretty well ſhot out, you may if you will lay them to make them natural as afore mentioned, by laying them down in the earth, or by laying them in ſome Pot of earth, *&c.* by Inoculating you may have ſeveral varieties of Roſes grow upon one Standard or Tree, and that they may blow together, you are to bud the ſingle ſorts, or ſuch as blow at the ſame Seaſon together, which will be a pretty ornament in a Garden; as for the order or manner of planting Roſes, it is ſomething different, either according to their nature, or at leaſt according to the common practice of Gardeners, as the Musk-roſe is uſually planted by Houſe-ſides, or Walls, it being apt to run high, as alſo by its warm Situation it continues the longer in its flowring, it being naturally a late flowring Roſe; red Roſes are ſometimes planted one, two or three Plants together on borders, among other ſmall ſtandards of Gooſeberries, Currans, *&c.* but moſt commonly by themſelves on borders, either in one, two or three rows on a border; the Frankford, as alſo the White Roſe, becauſe apt to ſpread and run high, is very fit to plant about Arbors, *&c.* the double yellow Roſe which bringeth the feweſt Roſes to perfection of any ſort that I know of, doth beſt againſt a Wall, or Houſe-ſide rather, where it hath the advantage of an Eves over it; for in ſuch a Situation I have obſerved it to bring moſt Roſes to perfection. The Monthly Roſe ſo called, becauſe of its plentiful bearing of Roſes for four or five, ſometimes ſix Months together when it is not over much pincht with drowth; the beſt way is to have of them in divers Situations, eſpecially where they may have warmth and moiſture, and then you may have the pleaſure of them near the matter as I ſaid, but if you find them too luxurious, it will be your beſt way to top ſome of the branches pretty forward if you find they do not knit; for Roſes, where they are in an indifferent or middling temper as to the growing or thriving, there they flower moſt; generally all ſorts of Roſes are and may be planted in ſtandards on borders or otherwiſe, as every one likes beſt; Damask-roſes are planted after ſeveral faſhions, ſometimes in faſhion of a Head, ſometimes in handſom Standards kept ſtaked up, ſometimes by Pales-ſides, ſometimes amongſt other Standards of Gooſe-berries and Currans, on borders, by Walk-ſides, or otherwiſe; but if you have reſpect to the comely and orderly growing of your Roſes, you muſt keep them ty'd up

every

every one to a ſtrait ſtake, nor ſuffering above one or two Standards from a root, and keeping them clean from ſuccours, and cut in handſom order ſo ſoon as they have done bearing, and again before Winter if occaſion ſerve; but where the profit of the Roſes is more deſired than the compleat order or handſomneſs, there you may ſuffer two or three main Standards from a root, only cutting the tops of them once a Year, any time from the time they have done bearing until *February*; alſo you are to take up all ſuch ſuckers as run too extravagantly about, which you may plant in other places as occaſion ſerves, only reſerving here and there one, as a ſupply in caſe any of your Standards grow old, and do not bear ſo well or ſo fair Roſes as formerly, the which you may cut away and maintain the young in its room, and ſo ſave a new planting; but in caſe your Roſes be of any long ſtanding, and decay through the poverty of the ground, then you are to new dig your borders, and ſupply them with ſome very rotten dung or good earth, and new cut ſuch roots as you meet with in your digging, not forgetting to cut out all the dead and decayed branches, maintaining only what is likely and thriving; this thorow digging and renewing ought to be done any time in the Winter, until the end of *February*: take notice that Damask-roſes eſpecially require a free and open Air, the want whereof is the reaſon why they bear no better in and very near *London*, only Province-roſes do very well, neither do Damask-roſes bear very well in cloſe grounds much over-hung with Trees, although in the Country; the ſeaſon for cutting your Roſes is as I ſaid, ſo ſoon as they have done bearing, or any time to the end of *February*, and of ſome only in ſome of the twelve days, and ſome only in *February*, but who ſo cuts in any of the other ſeaſons, ſhall not err in it; they that cut in *February*, do it that their Roſes may not be too forward and apt to be ſpoiled by Froſt, but I believe there is more Roſes ſpoiled by drowth than by Froſt; know alſo, that Roſes will admit to be cut pretty near without any prejudice to their bearing, and they will bear pretty well where they are not cut at all, if any can abide their cumberſom and unhandſom growing.

Now the means whereby Roſes do often flower out of their natural ſeaſon (beſides that Roſe which is call'd the Monthly Roſe, which as I ſaid before, will be budding and bearing from the time that other Roſes blow until the Winter, if drowth or very cold Weather hinder not, to prevent which, ſome have uſed Glaſſes on purpoſe to hang over the flowers when the Weather grows very cold, whereby their Roſes have continued the longer in their flowering) one means

I ſay is by topping or cutting your Roſe-trees a little before they blow, or in the time of their blowing; as alſo ſoon after they have done blowing, and then if too much drowth do not hinder, but rather warm and moiſt Weather, you ſhall hardly fail of having Roſes about *Michaelmas* time, but uſually the white Roſes of two or three ſorts do ſeldom miſs if much ſpringing or warm and moiſt Weather hit in; there is a ſmall white Roſe called *Roſa Pimpinella*, or the Burnet-leav'd-Roſe, which is very frequent, in flowring twice a Year, if as I ſaid the latter Spring prove not too dry; alſo by late planting, if they be bearing Plants, they will flower the ſame Year, but late; but remember as I ſaid, they are furthered by moiſt Weather; alſo when they are hindered in their natural Seaſon, by reaſon of drowth, then they will flower towards the declining of the Year when Spring Weather hits in; alſo you may have Roſes flower late, by inoculating very early, as I ſaid before, concerning the Monthly Roſe, but I have had other Roſes do the like, being budded in *April*; I have ſometimes budded in *March*, but the Bud was of the former Years growth, and did blow pretty timely the ſame Summer, indeed it was upon a Monthly Roſe that ſtood very warm, ſo that the Sap did ſtir pretty well; the Seaſon for planting of Roſes is any time from the fall of the Leaf to the end of *February*; take notice, that it is often very ſeaſonable to remove and Plant ſome ſorts of Roſes, even when ſome others are in their pride of flowering, as the Monthly and Muſk Roſes, and ſome others; therefore for ſuch it will be beſt to ſtay until it be more ſeaſonable to deal with them, but in caſe you cannot, or will not wait for a better Seaſon, then your beſt way is to top them pretty near, and plant them as ſpeedily as you can, not ſuffering either Wind or Sun to come to their roots, for you muſt know, that a Tree taken up whilſt the Sap is ſtirring, will take more hurt in one hour, than one ſeaſonably taken up will in two or three days or more above ground.

Of Gooſe-berries.

GOoſe-berries are increaſed either by ſuckers ſpringing from the roots of the old, or by layers or moulding them up, or by branches or ſhoots cut off and ſet; they will grow likewiſe of the Seeds being ſown; as ſoon as they be full ripe; the Seeds are to be taken out and waſhed, or otherwiſe; but it is needleſs practice, being they are ſo apt to be encreaſed otherwiſe; the order of planting them is as I ſaid of Roſes, in Standards on borders at four or five foot diſtance, either more or leſs as every one liketh, either of themſelves,

or

or mixed with other Standards of like growth; the ſuckers are to be taken from the roots every Winter at leaſt, only reſerving one or two where occaſion requires, as a ſupply in caſe the Mother-plant grows old or decays either in bearing or goodneſs of Fruit; it will be worth the while once a Year to trim them and cut out the dead or old decaying branches, or other under and unprofitable ſhoots, by which means your Fruit will be fair and good; they are ſometimes planted in form of an hedge, but then you cannot expect either ſo much or ſo good Fruit. The Seaſon for planting and increaſing, is from the fall of the Leaf, to the riſing of the Sap again, there is at leaſt ſeven or eight ſorts good.

Of Currans.

WHat is ſaid of Gooſe-berries, may in every reſpect be ſaid and performed of Currans, only take notice that the white Curran doth bear more conſtant and better againſt a Wall or Pale, than in Standards, although they have but little Sun, yet the more the better, both for earlineſs and goodneſs of taſte.

Of Raſpberries.

THey are planted after the manner of red Roſes, either two or three rows on a border, either in the Sun or ſhade; yet as I ſaid before, the Sun gives a more pleaſant reliſh to any Fruit than the ſhade; alſo the better the ground, the fairer and more plentiful will your Fruit be; they are increaſed of ſuckers, which ſpring from the Elder Plants, they uſually bear the ſame Year they are planted, if drowth or too late planting hinder not; the conſtant order is, that what bears this Year, dies after bearing, and what ſprings new this Year bears the next; as for cutting of them, you need cut no more of them, than to make them grow a little handſom, and it may be the Fruit will be the fairer; cutting too low, waſts ſome Fruit you might have had, and your Plants never the worſe; if you love to be neat, you may cut or break out all the dead ſtalks from among the living; the dead of the Winter is beſt to do it in, the Seaſon for planting is the ſame with Gooſe-berries and Currans.

Of Filberds, and Barberries or Pipriges.

I Set them together becauſe their increaſe, order of planting and Hunsbandry is alike, they are encreaſed of ſuckers, which they do bring forth in great plenty, the which ſhould be diligently taken every

every Winter at leaſt, having a care not to periſh the old root, only leaving two or three principal Standards for bearing; the order of planting is in ſtrait ranges about four or five foot aſunder or more, and ſometimes thicker, either on the outſides of Orchards or otherwiſe; they are ſometimes planted of ſhort ſets, ſometimes of a taller ſtature, as every one liketh, or can procure; and as the old Trees decay, you are to nurſe up one or two young ones from a root to ſupply in the place of the old, and ſo ſave a new planting, the red Filberds are accounted the beſt, the Seaſon is from the fall of the Leaf, to the end of *February*, but generally the head of the Seaſon is beſt and ſureſt; ſtill remember that in all planting of Trees or Shrubs, the roots are to be topt or pruned, and the head likewiſe as need requireth, little or much.

They may be encreaſed by ſetting of the Nuts, as we do Walnuts.

Figs.

ARE encreaſed by cuttings or branches, alſo by ſuckers or by layers; they are to be planted againſt a Houſe or Wall, *&c.* where they may have ſome convenient Sun to ripen them; the Seaſon is the ſame with the fore-mentioned ſorts of Fruit; there are three very good ſorts, they are to be tack'd againſt a Wall, as Peaches, *&c.* but prune no more than needs muſt.

Walnuts.

THey are only encreaſed by ſetting of the Nuts, the which are to be ſet any time in the Winter, but the ſureſt and beſt way, is to keep your Nuts in ſome mould in ſome convenient place, not too dry, and then ſome time in *Febraury*, by which time they begin to ſpire for root, you are to ſet them in ſome good ground not too hot and dry; ſet them about half a foot aſunder or thereabouts, and after a Year or two growth, you may take them up and cut the top or down-right root, and plant them in ſome thinner order, where they may grow until they be of ſufficient growth or ſtature to be planted, where they may continue to bear Fruit; ſome in ſetting the Nuts, and alſo in planting of young Trees, uſe to put a Tile or ſome ſuch thing to prevent its top or down-right root; the truth is, that although the top root be cut, yet many of them will gather the like root again; therefore it will be your beſt way only to top the ends of each root a little, and to ſpread them what you can in breadth, and as ſhallow as you may conveniently, for it is the top root, and the want of ſufficient ſhallow ſpreading roots, that is the cauſe why they

they are ſo long before they bear Fruit, there are divers ſorts of Walnuts, but thoſe that are largeſt and thinneſt ſhell'd are beſt; after they are of convenient growth, they may be Inoculated as well as other Fruit, the which will occaſion your Trees to bear Fruit ſomething the ſooner; the Seaſon to plant them, is the ſame with other Fruit-trees.

Cheſnuts.

THeir encreaſe and Husbandry, is the ſame with Walnuts, if any odds be, the Cheſnuts are a little the tenderer; I have ſet of the Nuts in *March*, and they have grown very well, but it kept in earth as I ſaid of Walnuts, it is the beſt way.

There is another ſort more choice or rare, call'd the Horſe Cheſnut, and is encreaſed as the ordinary ſort, both of Nuts and by laying.

Quinces

ARE encreaſed both of ſuckers, layers or branches, and they may be Grafted and Inoculated as other Fruit, although but ſeldom practiſed, but will come to bear the ſooner, for they are generally very bad bearing Fruit in moſt places, but for the moſt part they bear beſt where they have a moiſt Situation, as near a Sink, *&c.* there are divers ſorts.

Mulberries.

ARE chiefly encreaſed by laying or moulding up convenient branches, ſometimes they will grow being ſet of branches or ſlips; alſo they will grow of the Seed, when the berries are ripe; they are to be bruiſed in your Hands and waſh'd, and being dry'd, you are to ſow them either on beds made very good, and covered about an inch thick with fine mould, or you may ſow them in Pots or Boxes, in ſome temperate Situation, and after a Year, or rather two Years growth, you may take them up, prune their roots, and plant them in ſome thinner order; they are to be ſown in *September*, at which time they are full ripe; the Seaſon for planting them, is the ſame with other Trees that ſhed their leaves.

Cornelion Plum or Cherry

IS encreaſed by laying; ſometimes they will grow of ſlips or branches, alſo of the ſtones, but they will ſometimes lie two Years before they ſpring out of the ground.

Med-

Medlar Trees

ARE encreaſed only by Grafting, either on the Pear-ſtock, which is beſt, or on Quince-ſtocks; alſo on the White-buſh or Hawthorn, it is not worth the while to ſow the Seeds or Kernels. Service-trees are plentiful in divers Woods.

The Line or Linden Trees, with which I will conclude,

IS encreaſed chiefly by laying down the branches, and ſometimes by ſetting the ſlips or branches; they will grow of the Seed ſown about the Month of *September*, I have ſeen pretty ſtore under ſome Trees, that came up of Seed falling from the Tree, if you can get ſome Seed, which indeed is not very plentiful, you may ſow it after the manner as Mulberry-ſeed is to be, to which direction I refer.

The Names of ſeveral Trees fit to Plant by Out-Walk ſides, or otherwiſe.

WAlnuts
Cheſnuts
Service-trees
Black or Honey Cherries
Lime-trees
Siccamores
Birch-trees
Elm-trees
Cherry-trees
Mulberries
Aſh-trees
Horn-beam
Beach
Apple and Pear Trees that bear hard laſting Fruit
Oak-trees
The Abeal-tree, if the ground be moiſt
White Poplar and Willow, if near Water

There are ſeveral other ſorts of Trees that are fit for the aforeſaid purpoſe; as Fir-trees, wild Pine-trees, *&c.* but let the mentioning of theſe ſuffice at preſent.

A Catalogue of divers ſorts of Fruits you may be furniſhed with by Mr *Pearſon* Nurſery-man at *Hogsden*, Mr *Tarant*, by *Ask's* Hoſpital, or Mr *Colcheſter*, at the *Ducking-pond Clerkenwell-Green*, Mr *James*, at *Greenwich*, Mr *Walker*, at *Mill-Hill Eſſex*, Mr *Wiſe*, at *Brampton Park*; Or Mr *Parker*, at *Strand in the Green* in *Chiſwick Pariſh*, all near *London*.

The Names of divers ſorts of Cherries.

THE May
Early Flanders
Duke
Flanders
Luke-wards
Black Orleance
Heart-lip
Curan or Bleeding Heart
Great Black-heart
Red

Red-heart
White-heart
Spaniſh-white
Carnation
Great-bearing, or great Murry
Agriote, or Murello
Tradeskants
Spaniſh or Blank Flanders
Flanders Cluſter
Prince Royal or Great Flanders
Double-Bloſſom of two ſorts
Engliſh Ciliegiberry-lin, as big as an indifferent Apple
Portingale
Correlion
Amber
Moroccow, or Moreſcow

The Names of divers ſorts of Plums.

MIrabilons, red and white
Primordians
The Amber
Red
Blew
Moroccow
Violet
Fardigon
Black and White
Matchleſs
Muſſel
Black
White
Red
Turkey
Amber
Pruneola
White and Black
Date red and white
Bona Magna,
Or Spaniſh Plum
Imperial
Verdocha
Hungarian
Green-Oſterly
Orange
Marble Plum
Pear-Plums
Black
White
Peſcod, 2 or 3 ſorts
Bullin
Damaſcens, 2 or 3 ſorts
Queen-Mother
Cofferers
Prune-damſon
Padrigon, or Damaskens
Demie
Kings
Queens
Chriſtian, or Nutmeg
White-bully's
Damſon

The Names of ſeveral ſorts of Apricocks.

THE Alger, or Civet
Maſculine
Orange
Roman
Ordinary
The great Turkey

The Names of divers ſorts of Nectarins.

TAwny
Painted
Murry
Roman-red
Baſtard-red
Scarlet
Ruſſet
Green, two ſorts
Yellow comes clean from the ſtone
Garles Nectorin
White Nectorin

The Names of divers ſorts of Peaches.

PErſian
Murellow
Nutmeg, both white and red
Purple
Modena
Orleance
Savoy
Navarr
Magdalen
Alburge
Newington
Bellows or Bellis
Musk Violet, or Violet
Muſcate
Princes
Superintendent, it parts and is red at the ſtone
Bell-cheveries
Rumbullion
Smirna
Peach peccant excellent

Depo
White-monſier
Bloody-monſier
Black-peach
Grand-Carnation
Portingale
Golding
Roman
Slane
Hollmans
Virona
Coleraine
Arundel
Malecotone
Deroy
Double-bloſſom
Iſland-man
Queens
Grand-Duke
Brignal

Grapes.

ORleance
Allegant
White-muſcadine
Red-muſcadine
Parſly-leav'd
Black Curan-grape without ſtones
White Curan-grape
Blew Frontignate, or Muſcate
White Frontignate, or Muſcate.
Rayſon-grape
Grea-burlate

Figs.

BLew-ſpaniſh
Great-blew
White
Fig of Marcelles
The little yellow
The tawny fig

Apples.

PIppins
Great-golding
Small-golding or bayford
Kentiſh
Kirten
Ruſſet
Green
White Preſerving Bellebone
Holland or Dutch
Musk
Carmel
Roman
Carlile
Italian
French
Winter-laſting
Summer-pippin
Black-pippin
Renets
Golding
Lincolnſhire
Ruſſet
Kentiſh-ren
Ruſſetings
Couldings
Blandring
Pear
Red-ruſſet
Harm-ruſſet
Harvie
Royal-pearmain
Winter
Summer-pearmain
Royal-apple
Queenings
White
Red
Baſtard
Genetings
Marget-apple
Famguſtion
Pome-water
Marygold-ſtoken
Winter-ſtoken
Sage-apple
Roſe-apple
Flower of Kent
Winter braudin
Davy-apple
Davy-gentile
Old-wife
Gaunt-apple
French-bovillion
Kentiſh-codling
Henretta-Marya
Kitchen-apple
Gilly-flower
Powel-apple
Pigs-ſnout
Rich-pomorom
White-Coſtard Gray
Red-Coſtard
Black-apple
Pome-paris
Rybon
Hubard
Violet
Sir *Michael Stamp*'s-apple
Pome-ray
Cotten-apple
Seek no Father
Angels-bit
Mrs. *Clent*'s-apple
Boulton-greening
Dutch

Dutch Cap-apple
John-apple
Orange-apple
Lordin
Cider-apple
Elliot-apple
Genet-moyle
Red-ſtreak
Red-reed-ſtreek

Pears.

PRimatin, or Primitive Pear
Early-chiſel
Brunſwick
Carval
Geneting-pear
Green-chiſel
Marget
Pear-twice
Sand-pear
Okenbury, or Greenwindſor
Windſor
Sliper
Ruſſet-katherine
Yellow-katherine
King-katherine
Winter-katherine
Burgamots
The Oringe
Summer
Winter
Hamdens
Burgamot-debuga
Soveraign-pear
Summer-boncretien
Winter-boncretien
Vellow-boncretien
Winter-windſor

Bura-de-roy
Great-bura
Grey-bura
Double-headed
Dionere
Double-bloſſom
Mater-John
Lewis
Biſhops-cenſer
Pound-pear
Cheſter
Winter-musk
Portingale
Diego
Doves
Malebone
Colvale
Greenfield
Winter-greenfield
Slipper-pear
Norwich
Pigs-tale
Coker
Kings-pear
Queens-pear
Liquor-bit
Grifford
White-robert
Swallow-pear
Roſalent
Ladies-Buttock
Sugar
None-ſuch
Emperors
Painted-pear
French-warden
Spaniſh-warden
Engliſh-warden
Great-red-warden
Parkinſon's-warden

Winter-muſh
Sweet-william
Violet
Lordin
Biſhops-tongues
Ruſſet-poperin
Green-poperin
Great-poperin
Black-pear of Worceſter
Sherbone-pear
Cornie-pear
Mrs *Clint*'s-pear
Colleraſhaw
Amadat
Deadman-pear
Mullibuſh-pear
Digby
Mompelier, a great Winter-pear
Bareland
Burning-pear
Gilly-flower
Lyſumber
Longevel
Garrets
Winter-haſting
Half-ſpaun
Bell
Pettworth
Purſlin
Bell-bone
Quince
Monſieur-John
Roths-pear
Quinces
Apple-portingale
Pear-portingale
Barbury
Engliſh

Of the Ordering of the

KITCHIN GARDEN.

And firſt of the Sowing of Peaſe.

TAke notice, that the earlieſt ſorts are for the moſt part as hardy, if not more hardy, than the moſt ordinary Field-Peaſe; they are ſown after the manner of Field-Peaſe, or which is moſt ſuitable to our purpoſe, having only a deſign of laying down rules or directions proper to Gardening; you are to Dig your ground; or if it be much, and lie convenient, you may Plough it very well and Harrow it, and then you may, as ſome do, with a kind of a Plough call'd a Drill, (as I think) and one Horſe to draw it, make ſeveral trenches or gutters about a foot and a half aſunder, or leſs if the ground be not very rich, and about three inches deep, in the which you may ſow your Peaſe, covering them with a Rake. I ſuppoſe a quart of ordinary white Peaſe may ſow about a Pole of ground, or if you ſow Peaſe in ſome ſmall quantity, as in a private Garden, it will be your beſt and handſomeſt way to range a line or two, and with the corner of a Howe to make your trails or gutters about ſuch a diſtance as aforeſaid; the reaſon of this order is that you may the better go between them to gather your Peaſe without treading on them; alſo you may, obſerving this order, go between and cut up the Weeds, and mould up your Peaſe with a Howe as occaſion ſerves; you are to be careful that you cover your Peaſe very well, and avoid ſcattering of any beſides, leſt it occaſion the Mice to ſearch farther, and meet with your Peaſe; know alſo that you are to ſow your Peaſe ſomething thicker, when they are to undergoe the hazard of a Winter, then you need when you ſow them in the Spring. After the ſame faſhion you are to ſow Rouncefal Peaſe, but a great deal thinner, and the ſpaces wider, be-

cauſe

cauſe they grow a great deal larger, eſpecially the great Maple; alſo they muſt be well ſtuck with ſticks of a good length, eſpecially if the ground be very good, or that they grow under or near high Trees or Hedges, which will cauſe them to run up the higher; two rows of ſticks may ſerve for three rows of Peaſe, incline the heads of your ſticks inward towards one another, that you may the better paſs amongſt them; if they be not ſtuck well they will not bear ſo well, and will be apt to rot, eſpecially if the Weather ſhould prove very moiſt when they are well grown, and indeed other ſorts of Peaſe, if ſown on very rich ground, or in cloſe places amongſt Trees, ought to be ſtuck; take notice that indifferent thin ſowing and good ſticking are very neceſſary means to have good Crops of Peaſe, in ſuch Situations, ſome obſerve in ſmall Garden Ground, to ſet the Rouncefal Peaſe about three or four inches aſunder, making three rows on a yard-wide bed, and ſtick them well, and if you ſet or ſow your Peaſe ſomething too thick, then you may (when the danger of miſcarriage by hard Weather, &c. is paſt) take up what you think will be too many to ſtand in that place, and ſet them in ſome other, and they will do as well as thoſe that remain unremoved, only Water them at their firſt planting; take notice that thoſe Peaſe you ſow very early, require a pretty warm Situation, and rather dry than moiſt; alſo forget not after they are about three or four inches high, to dab up the mould a little to your Peaſe on each ſide of them with a Howe, cutting up the Weeds likewiſe, if any be amongſt them. Know alſo, that it is not convenient to beſtow either dung or ſoil on your Peaſe-ground, except it be very poor, not only in reſpect of your Peaſe, which will ripen ſooneſt on an indifferent midling ground, but in regard of the Crop of Turnips which you may have after your Peaſe are ripe and gone, which are beſt and ſweeteſt when they grow on a ground not very rich or forc't with dung. The Seaſon to ſow your Peaſe, is about *Alhallontide*, either a little before or a little after for the forwardeſt. And likewiſe from *February*, until the end of *April*, ſometimes in *May*, if of a very quick kind, as Hot-ſpurs or the like, the which ſorts being ſown in the Spring on an indifferent ground, I mean not too rich, nor very poor, may bring Peaſcods fit to gather in eight or nine Weeks, if exceſs of wet hinder not, or the ground is not of a cold or wet nature.

Beans are to be ſet about a foot or ſomewhat more aſunder every way, eſpecially if the ground be rich, or much over-ſhadowed with Trees or high Hedges, or they may be ſown or ſet in the form as Peaſe in trails or gutters, allowing about a foot and a half between

each

each row, and ſetting your Beans about half a foot aſunder; be careful to cover them well, leſt the Mice diſappoint you of part of your Crop; be careful to keep your ground clean from Weeds amongſt your Beans with a good ſharp Howe, as oft as occaſion requires. Some top their Beans whilſt they are very young as about half a foot high, the which may occaſion them to branch the better, and ſo yield the more profit; but where this good Husbandry is uſed, your Beans muſt not be ſet too thick or near together. Others do not top their Beans till they be about two foot high, or more, to the end their Beans may ripen the better together, that ſo they may have their Crop off in good time, that they may ſow their ground with Turneps; others ſo ſoon as they have the chiefeſt of their Crop off, do cut their Bean-ſtalks within a little of the ground, which often occaſions a new Crop from the ſame Beans. The Seaſon for ſetting Beans is from *Alhollandtide* to the end of *May*, but moſt commonly in *February* and *March* in private Gardens; there is but few ſets in *December* and *February*, except the Weather be very mild.

Of the Sowing of Parſnips and Carrots, &c.

FIrſt, you are to take care, that your ground be competently rich or hearty for the purpoſe, if not to beſtow ſome dung or ſoil thereon, that ſo you may not dig and ſow to no purpoſe; if your ground be of a ſtiff or cloungy nature, it will be your beſt way to trench it at leaſt a ſpit, a paring and a ſhovelling; ſo likewiſe if it be weedy and ſowre, and in your trenching to lay your ground in ridges, it will mellow and ſweeten the better. The order or manner is, firſt to make a trench (where you are begin to dig) about two foot wide or more, and of what length you think fit, and ſo to obſerve a conſtant order both for breadth and depth, and then where the next trench is to be, firſt pare in the Weeds or upper part of the ground only the breadth your trench is to be, and fling it into the bottom of your firſt trench, and then dig and turn your ſpits, filling up your former trench, and after ſhovel up the crums, and lay them on the top, and ſo continue a conſtant order until you have trench'd what you will; if you ſee cauſe, and your ground will bear it, you may dig your ground two ſpits deep, and then in the ſpring, when you are to ſow your ground, you are to level it, digging it about half a ſpit deep or leſs, rather then turn up any Weeds, *&c.* Some do only dig their ground in the Winter but ſingle ſpit, and then when they ſtir it in the Spring to ſow, they are apt to turn the Weeds or top of their ground up again, which cauſeth the Weeds

to multiply and ſpring up before their Crop; but if your ground be mellow and for ordinary uſes, you may only pare the Weeds clean, and ſo let it reſt until the Spring, and then dig it when you are to ſow it, only if need require you may ſpread your dung on it, and let it lie all the Winter; but they that have much ground to dig and ſow, find a great convenience in trenching and making as much ground ready againſt the ſpring as may be, beſides the benefit of mellowing and ſweetning it. Another thing I would have you take notice of, and that is that you do not ſow one ſort of Crop too often upon one and the ſame piece of ground, but ſow it with changeable Crops, eſpecially Parſnips and Carrots, the which being ſown too often without change, will be apt to canker, rot, or be very apt to be Worm-eaten, although the ground be maintained very rich. I do not ſpeak this of the great-garden grounds in or near *London*, where their grounds are in a manner made new and freſh once in two or three Years, by dung or ſoil and good trenching; ſo that their ground is as it were new and freſh for one and the ſame kind of Crops every Year. Again, if the ground be Green-ſwoard ground your care muſt be to take but thin ſpits, and cut or break it well, eſpecially if you intend it for roots the ſame Year, or you may obſerve a kind of trenching, by paring the ſwoard into the trench, and ſo digging your ground in order with thin ſpits; if it be of a ſtiff nature it will be your beſt way to let it have the benefit of the Winter Froſt to mellow or ſweeten it; and then it will likewiſe work the better when you come to ſow it; you are to conſider of what nature and temper ground is, for there are ſome ſorts that are of a kind of ſtiff or cloungy nature, and will not fall ſmooth and handſome under the Rake, except it hath lain three or four days after the digging, for ſuch ground you muſt defer your ſowing until you find your ground will rake. And ſo on the contrary, ſome grounds will bake and lie ruff, if they be not ſown quickly after it is digged; but in all grounds it is beſt to ſow, rather in a dry time, than in a moiſt, if it be raked or trod in a wet time, they will be apt to bake or bind, ſo as your Seed cannot get out of the ground: the manner of ſowing your Parſnips, Carrots or Onions is, having prepared your ground, you are if it be to be ſown in great quarters, and not trod into beds, firſt with a Howe, or any other convenient thing, to mark or trace it out into ſeveral ſlips or ſpaces, of ſuch a bredth as you think fit for your ſowing, whether brand-caſt or other wiſe; your traces are a rule to you, that you may ſow your ground in order and miſs none, neither ſow any twice, which is apt to be done when one ſows by

gueſs.

gueſs. Sow your Seed as equal as you can; but be careful you do not ſow too thick, but yet better a little too thick than too thin, for you may help too thick when you cannot add where any is wanting: and then you are to rake it only ſo as to cover your Seed, the which twice in a place may be ſufficient, that is, once from you, and lightly back again in the ſame place; but if you do beſtow more raking, you are to do it ſo lightly as not to uncover your Seed again; but if your ground be ſandy, or other very light ground, it will not be your worſt way to tread it all over, leaving a very little diſtance between every footing, and by ſo doing, you may both cover your Seed better, and make your work the handſomer; they that ſow a great deal, may in the ſtead of raking it by hand, harrow in their Seed; but if you love to ſee your work lie very level and ſmooth, be careful to level well before you ſow, leſt by endeavouring to bring that to paſs afterwards, you rake your Seeds in heaps. You are in caſe your ground be of a clungy or ſtiff nature, to break the clods with more labour and diligence, leſt if it lie over ruff, you bury your Seed, or be more troubled to rake your ground when it is ſown; they that have but a little to ſow, and if it be of ſuch a nature as it will not rake, they muſt cover their Seed by ſpitling it in with a Spade; it is likewiſe a ſure and good way to ſpittle in Seed where the ground is very light and apt to fall ſmooth, for by ſpitling you may be ſure to cover your Seed well, and thereby ſave a Week or a Fortnights growth, in caſe a dry Seaſon ſhould happen upon the ſowing of your Seed. You may mix a little Lettice-ſeed with your Parſnip or Carrot Seed; take heed you do not put in too much, leſt you do ſpoil your Roots, for they will hinder very much if over-many; or you may put a few Carrot-ſeed amongſt your Parſnips, and ſo on the contrary. Alſo if your ground be very rich, you may ſprinkle a few Radiſh-ſeed amongſt your Roocs.

The Seaſon for ſowing your Parſnips is either in *February* or *March*, for it is a very hardy Seed, but yet would not be ſown later than *March*, for it doth lie a pretty while in the ground before it ſpring: I have known ſome ſow Parſnips in the beginning of *November*, and ſometimes in *October*, and do very well; but from *February*, to mid-*March* is a very ſure and good Seaſon.

Carrots may be ſown from *February* to the end of *April*, but if you begin in *February*, the ground ought not to be of a cold or wet conſtitution, the middle of *March* is a very ſure and good Seaſon. The next thing to be conſidered is that after your Roots are come up about two or three inches above ground, defer not to weed them, if

ſooner

ſooner the better; for if they ſhould be much over-grown and ſtunted for want of timely weeding or ſizing, they will never amount to that profit or goodneſs which otherwiſe they might have done by timely and good Husbandry; within a ſhort time after they are weeded, before they ſmother another, you are to ſize them, by plucking up, or which is better, by the uſe of a ſharp Howe to cut up, leaving none nearer than a good ſpan aſunder or thereabout, and by performing this Husbandry pretty timely, both your labour will be leſs, and your profit more; if your ground be very rich, you are to give the more diſtance, becauſe the tops or blades will be ſo rank that they will much hinder one another in thriving in the roots.

Onions may be ſown either in *February*, *March*, or *April*, for to dry, to be ſpent all the Winter after, but to uſe green in Sallets, *&c*, you may ſow from *April* to the end of *Auguſt*. Let them be timely weeded, and likewiſe ſized, by pulling them up where they grow too thick, that they may be about three Fingers or near a Hand breadth aſunder, if you deſire to have your Onions great, which they will be, if the ground be good, and timely thinned as aforeſaid. You may ſow a few Leek-ſeeds amongſt them, if you deſire to have them great; and then if you deſire to improve them farther, you may take them up, and lay them pretty deep, and according to rheir depth, they will white and grow larger if the ground be rich; you may lay them when your Onions are ripe or ſomewhat after, you may if you will ſcatter a few Parſnip, Carrot, or Radiſh Seeds amongſt your Onions; they will be great, and a few will do no hurt or hindrance to your Onions. You may obſerve the ſame order for ſowing Onions, as of other Roots, either on beds or large pieces of ground, either ſpitled in, or trod and raked.

Of Turnips and their Ordering.

THey are uſually ſown on the ſame ground where forward Peaſe or Beans grew; they ſpend ſweeteſt being ſown on an indifferent midling ground, for being ſown either too early, or on ground very rich, they ſpend either ſtrong or bitter, and many of them are apt to rot; they prove very good, being ſown on a fallow intended for Barley, *&c*. The beſt Seaſons to ſow them in, is from the beginning or middle of *June*, to the middle of *July*, it is not very ſure to ſow later; they are likewiſe ſown in *March*, *April*, and *May*, for forward ſpending; but as they are oft ſubject to miſcarry, being ſown ſo early, ſo on the other hand they ſeldom ſpend very well, or if they do, they laſt good but a little while; it is a uſual thing to ſow

twice or thrice ſome Years before they take, by reaſon of a ſmall Bug called the Garden-flea, and there is no remedy but patience and ſowing again. The order of ſowing is, if you Plough your ground for them, you are to harrow it once in a place before you ſow, and then harrow it once or twice in a place, as need requires, to make it lie fine and ſmooth; it will be the eaſier and better to howe when the Turneps come up. They are ſown either Brand-caſt or otherwiſe; the quantity of Seed which may ſerve an Acre of ground, is a Pound and an half, but with moſt three Pound is ſown upon an Acre. They are to be ſized as other Roots, rather wider aſunder than leſs, about eight or nine inches is a good convenient ſcantling; it is the Seaſon of the Year or the difference of ground, which makes the difference either in goodneſs or badneſs of Turneps; for as I ſaid, the too early ſowing cauſeth them to ſpend ſtrong or ſticky, ſo likewiſe their being ſown in Ground too rich, will make them ſpend very ſtrong, and many, both too early ſown, and on too rich a ground, will cauſe many of them to run down like Rapes, whereas the ſame ſort of Seed ſown ſeaſonably on an indifferent midling ground, they will both ſpend ſweet, and keep to their kind; as to the ſhape, there are ſeveral ſorts of Turneps, and all good, but the red ſided is generally moſt accounted, for the ſweeteſt and beſt to ſow early; but the yellow Turnep ſpends drieſt and firmeſt; the long is the moſt watry, but a good ſweet Root; there are other good ſorts, but let this be ſufficient for the ordering of Turneps, *&c.*

Of Radiſhes and their Ordering.

WHoſo deſireth to have Radiſhes good and betimes, muſt make his ground very good, otherwiſe they will be Worm-eaten, and run up to Seed, and never be fit to eat. The order of preparing the ground, is as followeth; firſt, if you deſire to begin very timely, as in *January* and beginning of *February*, you are to make choice of a warm Situated place, and then to provide a pretty quantity of green or new Stable dung and litter together, according to the quantity of ground you intend to ſow; for if it be for the uſe of a private Family, a little bed at a time will be ſufficient, for they that deſire to have them all the Spring and Summer, muſt be ſowing every Fortnight according to their ſpending: being provided as aforeſaid, you are to trench in your dung in ſome pretty quantity, and in ſuch order, that the dung in one trench may touch the dung of the next, that your ground may be Husbanded every where alike; as for the depth, you may uſe your diſcretion, and as your ground will bear,

for

for if your dung be covered but half a foot thick with mould, it may be ſufficient for the purpoſe; but if you will not be at the coſt of trenching, good digging may ſerve, laying your ground in good order, and breaking the clods as occaſion requires; and if you cannot get new Stable dung, which is beſt for this purpoſe, than any old Straw, or old caſt Hay, or any other dung you can get, yet the lighteſt is beſt for trenching, and the rotteneſt to dig in an ordinary way, but if your ground be not very good at preſent for your purpoſe, your beſt and ſureſt way is, after you have trench'd or digged it, to ſcatter ſome very rotten dung converted to mould, or the bottom of a Wood-ſtack, or ſome Lime-rubbiſh of old Walls, well cleanſed from Bricks, or the like, whereby your ground will be fit for the aforeſaid purpoſe, or any the like; your ground being made ready as aforeſaid, and the Seaſon come, you are to ſow your Seed pretty thick, either on beds or large quarters; if on beds or borders, your beſt way is to ſpirtle it in, turning your hand in the working, ſo as to cover your Seed, and then to ſmooth it over either with a Rake, or the back of your Spade; but if you ſow greater quantities, then you are, as I formerly ſaid of Carrots, to tread in your Seeds, and then lightly to Rake it over; be careful to ſow and tread your ground in a dry day leſt it bind.

When your Radiſhes are come up, and the danger of miſcarriage by hard Weather and the Birds be paſt, you are to cull or thin them, that they may ſtand about three Fingers breadth aſunder or thereabout, which may be ſufficient for the more forward ſowings; but for the more later ſowings, they muſt have more diſtance, becauſe the tops or leaves will grow more rank and large, and will cauſe them to neck for Seed before they are come to any convenient ſize for uſe; ſo likewiſe if your later ſowings are near Hedges, or the like, they will be apt to run up and neck before they are good for any thing, therefore let them have the more diſtance given them.

Take notice, that the more early ſowings do commonly take better than the midling, I mean, of *March* or *April*; becauſe then the Sun begins to have ſome power, and the ground is apt to be dryer; but the chief reaſon is, then the Garden-fly is very brief, which will deſtroy or ſtunt them without often watering, and ſo more and more, till *May* be paſt, except the Weather prevent; but in caſe of dry Weather, you muſt ply your Radiſhes with Water, and in ſo doing, your Radiſhes will get ſtrength, and be out of the danger of the fly quickly; alſo your care muſt be to keep the Chaffinches from your Radiſhes, chiefly at the firſt ſpringing out of the ground, for they

will pull them up, and eat only the two firſt leaves that peep, whereby you may quickly loſe your Crop of Radiſhes; for prevention you are to ſhoot ſome of thoſe kind of Birds, and pull them, and ſcatter their Heads and Feathers all about where you ſow your Seed, and ſo long as they keep freſh, thoſe Birds will not trouble you, but be ſure to ſtrew new Feathers as you ſee occaſion, until your Crop be well come up, and the leaves ſpread, and then they will not meddle with them; you may if you will, and if your ground be ſufficient, have a Crop of Carrots or Paſnips on the ſame ground amongſt your Radiſhes, but then you muſt be ſure to cull them betimes, and give them the better diſtance; as alſo to draw them off as ſoon as they are ready, leſt you ſpoil your other Crop: Take notice, that although I ſaid, ſpeaking of the preparing of your ground, that half a foot thickneſs of mould might be ſufficient above the dung for Radiſhes, yet if you intend a Crop of Parſnips or Carrots amongſt them, then it is beſt to allow an ordinary ſpit deep of mould above your trench dung if it be very new; the Seaſon for ſowing is, as I ſaid, from *January* until *September*, if any deſire to have them ſo late; but it is only the black Radiſh that is ſown ſo late, and only of ſome few for *Autumn* or Winter ſpending: Take notice, that Radiſhes ſown after the midſt of *June*, do not run up to Seed as the forward ſowings do.

Lettice is very hardy, and may be ſown as early and as late as Radiſhes, either on Heads alone, or thinly ſcattered amongſt other things, as Beans, Carrots; and if you deſire to have ſome Cabbage, they muſt be ſown thin, or quickly to cull them a good diſtance aſunder, and in ſo doing, you may have your deſire if your kind be right for the purpoſe; they that love them, muſt ſow them often, becauſe the firſt ſowings will ſoon run up to Seed.

Spinage is ſown both early and late, and is very hardy: they that deſire to have it all the Summer for their uſe, muſt ſow it very often, for it quickly runs up to Seed in the Spring and Summer Months; if you would have it grow very large, then your beſt way is to ſow it very thin, or ſtray amongſt other convenient Crops, where it may not ſpoil other things, or on beds alone, or trails on the Hedges of other beds: It is is uſually ſown about *James-tide* or *Bartholomew-tide*, to uſe in the Winter or Spring, and uſually doth not run up to Seed ſo ſoon as that which is ſown early in the Spring.

Garden Creſſes and Charvil are ſown very often in the Spring and Summer Months, to uſe together as a very acceptable Sallet to many; alſo Charvil is ſown about *James-tide* or *Bartholomew*, to uſe in the Spring, and of ſome it is ſown oft on hot beds to uſe in the Winter.

Corn

Corn Sallet is ſown about *James-tide* or ſooner, to uſe in the Spring chiefly.

Sweet Chervil, the Seed is beſt ſet or ſown as ſoon as it is ripe, but if ſown in the Spring, it may chance to lie in the ground until the Spring following.

Purſlane is ſown in *April* or *May*, it is ſomething tender; they that would have it betimes, muſt make a hot bed for it, after the manner of a Cowcumber-bed, or ſow it on a Cowcumber-bed after the Cowcumbers are planted out, it loves a pretty deal of Water in dry Weather; if you would have it grow great for to pickle, you muſt draw it up when it is about two or three inches high, and pick it out pretty thin in good ground, keeping it moiſt, eſpecially at firſt planting out, many times it will be as forward to cut for uſe, being ſown about the end of *April*, or beginning of *May*, as that which is ſown in mid-*March* without a hot bed, if it be helpt with often watering, in caſe of dry Weather.

Aliſanders are ſown about *Midſummer* or later, to be ſpent in the Spring; chiefly in Lent, as ſoon as the Seed is ripe, is a ſure and good time, ſow them in any by-place, although it be ſomething ſhady.

Red Beets are ſown in the Spring, either ſtray among your Onions, or other Roots, or the Seed prickt out on Beds pretty thin, that they may be great to uſe for Sallets, or to garniſh Diſhes: And

Skerrets require a rich ground, inclining rather to moiſture than drowth; they are ſown of Seed very thin amongſt other things in *February* or *March*; but the ſureſt way in ordinary grounds, is to ſet them of ſlips, being parted as ſingle as may be, and ſet on the edges of your Onion-beds, or about half a foot or more, which is beſt aſunder on beds by themſelves in ground that is good, for then they will be fit for uſe the Winter and Lent following; if they be ſet too thick, or above one ſlip in a place, they will ſtarve one another; they are apt to Canker, and therefore require freſh and well ſeaſoned ground by Winter Husbandry. Scorzonera, or Vipers-graſs; the roots are uſed by ſome, as Skerrets or Parſnips, they are encreaſed either by ſowing the Seeds, or by parting and ſetting the tops of the roots when the roots are taken up for uſe; alſo the roots being cut or broken into ſeveral pieces and ſet in good ground, not over dry, will in ſhort time yield conſiderable increaſe; about 8 or 9 inches aſunder is a convenient diſtance: They are held to be very cordial and excellent in Fevers, as I have had experience thereof ſeveral times; the Spring is the beſt Seaſon, yet I have ſet of them moſt times in the Year with good ſucceſs.

Horſe-

Horſe radiſh is encreaſed by ſetting the upper part or tops of the root, and by ſprouts ſpreading from the elder roots, alſo by pieces of roots left in the ground accidentally, or purpoſely cut or broken off for that purpoſe; they have a large Seaſon, even from one end of the Year to the other; chiefly the Spring, the better the ground, the ſpeedier will your profit be.

Tarragon is encreaſed by ſetting the tops or ſlips, but beſt and ſooneſt by ſprouts that run from the roots, which it doth yield indifferent plentiful if the ground be good; if the tops or ſtalks be cut down towards the Winter, and a little rotten dung laid on it, it will cauſe it to ſpring the luſtier and better in the Spring, when it is chiefly in uſe either of it ſelf, with Oil, or amongſt other Sallet herbs: The Seaſon is the Spring, if you ſet it of tops or branches, keep it moiſt until it hath taken root.

French or Kidney Beans may be ſet any time, from the beginning of *April*, to the middle of *May*; they are ſomething tender, therefore they that would ſow them to have them with the firſt, are to ſow them on a prettywarm bed, or ſo as you may defend them in caſe of cold, or cold wet Weather; and when the Weather is pretty mild they may plant them out in ranges or rows, about ſeven or eight inches or leſs aſunder, and about fifteen plant-inches between each row, and to Water them at firſt planting; they are very apt to grow if the Weather be warm, and when they are well taken, you may ſtick them with pretty tall ſticks if the Ground be very good, two rows of ſticks to three rows of Beans, or you may ſtick a few ſhorter ſticks in the middle row; if you love ſuch kinds of Fruit as this, then it will be a very good way to provide your ſelf of that ſort of Peaſe called

Sugar Peaſe, which is to be dreſt and eaten after the ſame manner as French Beans, and may be ſown earlier, and be fit to ſpend before the French Beans are ready; you may ſow them in *February* or *March*, and ſtick them as French Beans: Both theſe and French Beans being gathered young, ſpend the ſweeter and better.

The gray kind I take to be the beſt.

White or curled Endive, if it be ſown to Still, and that you may ſave Seed of it, the Spring is the Seaſon; but if to white and uſe in *Autumn* and beginning of Winter for Sallet, as it is moſt commonly, then your Seaſon is from the middle of *June* to the end of *July*, not much later on good ground, and not very thick, that ſo it may grow the larger, and come on the quicker, and then as you have occaſion, or as the Seaſon requires, you may white it any of theſe ways follow-

following; firſt dig or trench a piece of ground, according to the quantity you deſire to white, and then by a line for orderand handſomneſs, with ſuch a ſtick as we uſually ſet Beans, make holes, and having gathered the leaves of each Plant together in your Hand, ſet it up to the very top of the leaves, and by planting it pretty near together you will ſave ground, and the ſetting of one Plant will be the cloſing of the former, and ſave ſome labour, and by this means you may quickly have it for your uſe: Another way is, firſt ſow your Seed on a bed or ſtay amongſt other props, and when it is grown up about a handful high or leſs, you may plant it in order on beds not too thick, but ſo as it may grow large, the ground muſt be very good for the purpoſe, and when the Seaſon draws near to uſe it, on a dry day, when your Plants are dry, you may gather the top of each Plant together, and tie them pretty cloſe with a piece of Baſs, and in a little time the inmoſt part of your Plant will be white and criſp, and fit for uſe; theſe ways are ſure and good, if too much wet do not ſpoil and cauſe it to rot; ſome do white their Endive and other ſorts of Sallet of like uſe by laying them in Sand or Earth, either within or without Doors, ſome by covering their Herbs with dung or litter, which if tied up firſt, will be ſomething better. By theſe means or ſuch like, divers ſorts of Herbs are or may be whited, as Sellony or Smallage, ſweet Parſley, Cardones, Succory, *&c.* whereby it is made more criſp and acceptable to many.

Cabbages and Colwarts are ſown of Seed between *James-tide* and *Bartholomew-tide*, alſo in *February* and *March*, but thoſe ſown about *James-tide* are for the moſt part more ſure, and earlier in Cabbaging; but yet if your Seed be of the early kind, they will come to perfection very quick, although ſown in the Spring. The ordering of them is, after they are come up about an handful high or leſs, (whether they were ſown on beds together, or aſtray amongſt other Crops, as Turneps, or *Michaelmas* Onions as they are called) they are to be drawn up and ſet in ſome thinner order, either ſet or laid up, to the ſetting on of the leaves, in rows, about ſix inches between each row, and about four or five inches aſunder, and ſo to remain until the Spring, and then in *February*, *March*, *April*, or *May*, you may take them up and plant them in ſome thinner order, where they may Cabbage; you muſt dung the ground pretty well where you plant them, either on the edges of your quarters where you ſow your Carrots, or, which is in my judgment better, in a quarter or piece of ground together by themſelves, about three foot aſunder or little leſs, and when they are pretty well grown, and the Weeds are

ſome-

ſomewhat grown up amongſt them, you are with a Howe to cut up the Weeds, and draw them up round about each Plant with your Howe, the which will be ſome advantage to your Cabbages as well as the ground; thoſe which are ſown in the Spring or riſing of the Year, are to be raiſed on a hot bed, or amongſt your earlieſt ſown Sallet, otherwiſe they will not Cabbage to any good purpoſe, except they be of the *Dutch* or earlieſt ſorts; yet this advantage you will have by your Summer Plants, they will continue green and ſound when your Winter Plants are periſhed and gone by the Winters Froſt, and their more forward growing to perfection; you are to ſee to your Seed when it is coming up both the early and the later ſowings, otherwiſe you may loſe your Labour and Seed, by thoſe ſmall Birds called Chaffinches, which will pull up and eat your Plants as ſoon as they peep out of the ground, and all that lieth uncovered of your Seed; the way of prevention is, if you ſow on a bed, to cover it with ſome old Nets, which many uſe, or elſe to ſhoot, or by other means get ſome of the aforeſaid Birds and ſcatter the ground with their Feathers, the which I have found very effectual ſo long as the Feathers keep any thing freſh; thus you are to do until your Plants are pretty gole, and then they will not meddle with them: Alſo you are, when the Butter-flies begin to be buſie, to view and overlo k your Cabbage, and when you find any of their Spawn (which are divers ſmall yellow ſpecks) you are to rub them with your Thumb, and ſo prevent their miſchief: And this is much eaſier and leſs troubleſom, than when they are come to maturity, the which muſt be deſtroy'd, otherwiſe they will deſtroy your labours and your profit together; there is another, and a worſe miſchief incident to Cabbages happening ſome Years that are dry, and in ſome dry grounds; it is a ſmall Fly, which caſts her Spawn on Cabbages, and makes them look as it were mouldy, and where they do prevail much, it doth ſo Venom the Plant, that it even ſtifles them: It is very tedious to deſtroy them, but yet taken in time, and diligently followed, they may be maſtered. Now for the ſaving of their Seed, it is after this manner, about *October* or *November*, or after, when Froſts begin to be frequent and of continuance; you are to take up the Cabbage you deſire to ſave for Seed (which ſhould be hard and well grown, and it will be ſo much forwarder to break out for Seed when Seaſon ſerves; yet ſometimes I have been forc'd to help forward by cutting the Cabbage on the top with a croſs cut) and then if you will, you may wrap an old Cloath, piece of Baſs-mat, or Straw about the root, and lay it in ſome Cellar or by-Room, or hang it up until the end of *February*,

or

or beginning of *March*, and then to plant it in ſome temperate place not too hot and dry. (Some inſtead of houſing, do plant them in ſome convenient place pretty deep, and then cover them with earth until the Spring, and then uncover the tops of them,) you may plant it up to the ſetting on of the leaves, and let it reſt until it brings forth its Seed. The Stems of good Cabbages will bear as good Seed, as of a whole Cabbage, if you preſerve them from rotting until the Spring; you muſt have a care to keep your Cabbage-ſtalks of Seed from breaking with the Wind, by bearing them up with ſtakes or poles faſt tied.

Colliflower-ſeed is likewiſe ſown at the ſame Seaſons as Cabbages, but for the moſt part on hot beds (alſo amongſt early Radiſh, and betimes in the Spring,) the manner is to make a bed of good new dung and litter together, of what length you think fit for the quantiy of Seed you deſire to ſow, about a foot and half thick may be ſufficient, or two foot; if you begin very early, lay it in order, and tread it well, and cover your dung with about a Hand breadth deep of good mould, making proviſion to keep your mould from crumbling or falling off the edges of your bed; then you are to ſow your Seed not over thick, and covering it about an inch deep or leſs with fine mould, then you are to Arch your bed all over, that you may cover it the better from cold or wet Weather; you muſt upon all opportunities when the Air is temperate, uncover them, and harden them by degrees, and when your Plants are about two or three inches high, make another bed of leſs ſubſtance than your firſt, and be of a fit temper, that is, as warm as the bed from whence you are to plant, eſpecially if it be very early, you are to prick them out about three Fingers breadth aſunder or leſs, not forgetting to water them upon all occaſions as need requires; you are to ſhadow your Plants after new planting, in caſe of ſunny Weather, and ſo let them grow until they have got ſome convenient ſtrength, and fit to be planted where they may flower; the ground where you are to plant them, ought to be made rich with dung, and then in ſome handſom order about two foot aſunder or little more, you are to ſet your plants; cut them from off your bed with mould about every Plant, and ſo to plant them that the ground may be low about each Plant, after the faſhion of a Bole or a Baſon, the better to hold Water, being poured to them, which they ought to have pretty plentiful in caſe of dry Weather; ſeldom and ſlight watering will cauſe them to run to flower before they have ſufficient ſtrength to bring forth a good or large flower; if you ſow for Winter Plants as about *James-tide*, or

a little after, you are to make a bed of an indifferent temper, and when your Plants are about three inches high, you are to provide a new bed in ſome convenient warm Situated place of a good ſubſtance, the better to hold warmth a good while, laying a convenient coat of mould thereon; if your bed be made moſt of Straw indifferently mixed with dung, that it may rather be of a fine continued warmth than very hot, it will be the better, and then to prick out your Plants about two or three inches aſunder, according to the largeneſs or ſmalneſs of growth, and then to Arch your Bed with poles or hoops, and poles tied at length, that you may the better cover your Bed or Beds when extream weather comes, as Froſts, Snow, or much Rain: It will not be you beſt way to cover your Plants except at the firſt planting, in caſe of hot Sun ſhine Weather, only for two or three days until they have taken new root, and then only in the heat of the day, until extream Weather come in, and then you are carefully to cover them, but yet to take all the opportunities you may to give them Air; for you muſt know, the more they are covered the tenderer they will be, and ſo the more apt to miſcarry in caſe of neglect in extream Weather: And thus you may be furniſhed with Winter Plants, whereby you may ſave Seed if your kind be good, and be ſure to have good forward Colliflowers, if your ground be not wanting in richneſs and convenient moiſture; if when you Plant them at large, you do not cut them off your bed with mould about the root, they will be apt to ſtant, and then the Garden fly will be apt to take them and very much hinder them, without watering and ſhadowing of them for ſome time from the Sun, help them forward again.

Hartichoaks are raiſed or increaſed chiefly by the ſlips of Plants, either in *March*, *April*, or ſometimes in *May*, according as the Winter or their Husbandry hath favoured them; ſome do plant in *September*, and with diligent covering in Winter may ſucceed; but the ſure Seaſon is the riſing of the Year, the ordering of them is as followeth: The ground whereon you plant your Hartichoaks ought to be very good, or at leaſt made ſo by trenching or digging in good ſtore of dung, and then if you will you may ſow a Crop of Onions, Radiſh, or a ſprinkling of Carrots, and a few of Lettice amongſt them the firſt Year, and having ſown your ground, you may range your line, and by it plant your Hartichoak ſlips about three foot aſunder pretty deep, cloſing the ground to your Plant with your Heel on that ſide contrary to the Sun, that there may be a low place the better to hold the Water within compaſs, that ſo it may ſoak to the root, and not ſpread about; and in caſe the Weather be dry when you Plant,

it

it will be a ſure and good way to lay a little Litter or other Straw thin and lightly upon each Plant, to keep off the heat of the Sun until they be rooted, and in ſo doing, one watering will be better than two or three without it; and be ſure that what Crop you ſow amongſt Hartichoaks, take the firſt opportunity to Husband it, that it may be drawn off as ſoon as poſſible may be, leſt you hinder your Hartichoaks: For you may have good Hartichoaks the firſt Year if your ground be rich, and watering be not wanting in caſe of dry Weather, and remember that ſo ſoon as your Choaks are come to perfection and fit for uſe, to cut them down cloſe to the ground, leaves and all, and by ſo doing, your Hartichoaks will gather ſlips and ſtrength before the Winter, and your Plants the ſtronger and forwarder in the Spring; alſo if you have any Crop amongſt your Hartichoaks, it will have the more Air and liberty to come to perfection.

Alſo about the end of *October*, or in *November*, you are to trench up your ground amongſt your Hartichoaks, laying it up in ridges, ſo as every row of Plants or Hartichoak Stocks may ſtand in the middle of a ridge, for their better preſervation in the Winter-ſeaſon, alſo laying dung ſome in every trench, and withal having a care that you do not diſturb or prejudice the root of your Hartichoaks at that time of the Year, leſt they ſhould not ſufficiently recover to withſtand the injury of the following Winter; but if this ſeem to be too much trouble or coſt, then you may open the ground a little about every Stock or Root, and lay in ſome dung round about, and then rite up the mould about it, and take notice that the more light or ſtrawie your dung is, the better it preſerves your Stocks from the Froſt, although the other affords more virtue and nouriſhment in the growing time of the Year: or you may do thus; firſt dig your Hartichoak-plot all over, and cut off all the flagging leaves both on the tops and ſides, and then lay a coat of dung all over amongſt your Hartichoaks, eſpecially about each Stock, and ſo let it reſt until the Spring, and then in ths Month of *March*, if they are any thing well recovered, or in *April*, you are to dig over your Plot, keeping a good open trench before you; and when you come to a Stock, to open the ground pretty deep about it, even ſo low as you may with your Thumb thruſt or force off all the ſlips from your Stock, excepting two or three of the ſtrongeſt, except you find them to be too forward for Fruit; in ſuch a caſe one more weak or backward is better to be left, and then with the back of your Knife to rub or force off all the young Buds or ſlips, that ſo all the nouriſhment of the root

may be imploy'd on your principal Bearers, and then cut off the flaging Leaves, and put in the Mold, cloſing it well to your Plants or Stock, and ſo continue your digging and ſlipping until you have finiſhed; and in caſe any be dead or not thriving amongſt your Stock, then you may ſet a young Plant in its place, and if it ſo happen, as ſometimes it doth, that by reaſon of a hard or ſharp Winter your Hartichoack ſtocks are ſo weak that there is no medling with them as to ſlipping, then you may begin betimes, and ſow a crop of either Parſnips, Carrots, or of Salleting, and when occaſion requires, give your crop as ſpeedy Husbandry and good diſtance as you may conveniently, and when your Hartichoaks begin to thrive, they may have all the advantage that may be; and then with a thin ſlice or ſomething near to that ſhape, pretty narrow, without digging; force or cut off all the under ſlips, maintaining only two or three of the ſtrongeſt to bear fruit, and when your fruit is ready, take the firſt opportunity to cut it, together with the leaves cloſe to the ground, that ſo your Stock as well as your Crop may get advantage; alſo that your Head-fruit may be the fairer, you are when they begin to fruit, to look diligently between the leaves that grow on the ſtem, and where you find any young buds for fruit, beſides the head or principal Fruit, you are to force it off, except you are minded to ſpare any of the more latter buds as a ſupply after the firſt is gone: And theſe directions are ſufficient for the Ordering of Hartichoaks, although ſomething more might be ſaid of them.

Sparagus, the Husbandry thereof is as followeth; firſt provide your ſelf of ſome good Seeds, what quantity you think fit, and then accordigly prepare a Bed being made very good or Rich, whereon you may ſow your Seed, covering it either by raking or ſpitling it in with your ſpade, you may ſow it about *Michaelmas* time, as ſoon as it is ripe, firſt breaking and waſhing the Seed from the husks, which will ſwim and may be drained from your Seed, then dry it and ſow it, but not too thick that your Plants may be the larger, and of a fit ſize to plant after one years growth, or you may ſow it in *February* or *March*, but the earlier the better, for it will lie a pretty while before it ſpring up; if you ſow it at the riſing of the year, you may ſow it among a Crop of Onions or early Radiſh, but be ſure to give convenient diſtance to your Crop, keeping it likewiſe clean from weeds, that your Plants be not ſtarved or murthered, drawing your Radiſh or Lettice from them as ſoon as they are fit for uſe, and then the next Spring after the ſowing, you may take it up and Plant it where you would have it grow to perfection,

having

having firſt made your ground very good by trenching ſtore of good dung, the which, if it be well husbanded by making a good bottom for it to grow on, it will laſt very good for many years, and will afford you very good Sparagus the third year at fartheſt from the ſowing; or if you are not willing to loſe a year by ſowing Seed, then you may provide your ſelf of Plants of ſome Gardeners, but let them not exceed two years growth, or three at moſt; let the Situation be temperate, neither too dry, nor over moiſt and cold, for then your Sparagus will be late before it ſpring, it ſprings faſteſt or quickeſt in hot Sun-ſhine weather: be careful in the Husbandry of your ground, that you carefully cleanſe it from all offenſive weeds, as Twich, Nettles, Dandelion or any other, eſpecially that like the former are not uſually deſtroyed by ordinary weeding, otherwiſe they will be a perpetual trouble to you, beſides the robbing of your Sparagus of much of their nouriſhment; alſo know, that a Pole of ground is the leaſt quantity you can Plant to have it worth your labour; indeed it is too little, for if you have not ſo much as to afford you an indifferent Meſs at a cutting, thou muſt be at the trouble to keep them in a cool place till more be ready to cut; alſo you muſt be careful to keep it continually clean from weeds; alſo in the cutting of your Sparagus, be careful that you cut not any but what is fit to cut, and avoid cutting within the ground, leſt in cutting one, you ſpoil two or three, which is ſoon done.

Having made ready your ground by good trenching, tread out your Beds about three foot wide, and a foot and a half path between each bed, and then plant three rows of Plants on a bed, every Plant as much in length as in breadth, which will be near a foot aſunder; if you Plant nearer, you cannot expect to have your Sparagus ſo fair, but rather a hindering or ſtarving of each other; if you will draw off a quantity of mold off each Bed, and then lay and ſpread each Plant in order, and then cover your Plants with the mold you take off, or in ſtead of ſo doing, you may bring a quantity of good mold and cover your Plant about two inches thick, or you may with your Hand or a Trowel open the ground, and raiſing the middle of the hole a little, ſpread your plant, which you may eaſily and readily do if your plants be ſmall, but other wiſe the other ways are better and more orderly: Having planted your beds, you may if you will ſow a ſmall ſprinkling of Onions or other Salleting for the firſt Year, or you may give your beds a ſmall coat of Dung as ſoon as you have planted it, or you may forbear dunging until *Michaelmaſs* or thereabout; as for the time of planting, I do moſt approve of the Spring, from the middle

or

or end of *February*, to the end of *April* at fartheſt, although there be ſome will plant at the latter Spring, even till Winter, but I have oft ſeen that their labours have not been anſwered with that ſucceſs that they hoped for, although ſometimes they might ſucceed. And to the end that you may have your Sparragus fair and good, you are every Year towards Winter to cut down the ſtalks cloſe to the ground, and lay a ſmall coat of dung thereon, the which you may take off again in *March* following, if you find the tops of your Plants are ſufficiently covered with mould, otherwiſe it is beſt to rake it ſmooth and ſo let it reſt; Your care muſt be not to cut the ſtalks off too early, leſt if the Weather prove warm, it ſhould ſend forth new ſhoots and weaken our roots, ſo as to be diſappointed in the Spring, when Sparagus is moſt acceptable and uſeful; ſome who have their Sparragus grow on cold grounds, and have ſuch kinds of dung, do beſtow Hen and Pigeon dung on their beds: Take notice, that rotten dung is beſt for the purpoſe, which if your Sparagus were a very tender thing, then your light ſtraw dung were of greateſt reſpect; alſo it would prove worth your labour if your ground be apt to bind, or ſubject to ſuch Weeds as you cannot eaſily weed out in an ordinary way, once in a Year or two to take the advantage when the ground is frozen about an inch or two deep, with a ſtrong three-tin'd Fork or a Mattock, being carefully uſed to break up the ground all over your Sparagus-beds, and ſo let it lie until it be well mellowed; and then when it is thaw'd, you may pick it clean from Weeds, and level it again; and if you think fit, beſtow a coat of dung upon your beds, by which means one dunging may prove worth two; you may ſometimes ſee in *London*, Sparagus much earlier than its natural Seaſon, which hath given occaſion of wonder to many; the means whereby it is brought to paſs is thus, ſome having ſome old beds of Sparagus which they are minded to deſtroy, and having convenience of new or warm dung, poſſibly intended for other uſes afterward, they ſpread it ſome conſiderable compaſs, and ſpread or lay their old Plants in order upon their dung, ſlightly covering them, and ſo the heat doth force forward a farewel Crop, but how good I cannot ſay, but undoubtedly it is welcome to ſuch as love Rarities.

I might ſay much more concerning divers experiments as to the planting of Sparagus, but in regard my neceſſary and ſure Rules ſwell ſo faſt, I ſhall forbear unneceſſary niceties, which tend more to trouble than profit.

Sives are encreaſed by parting the roots, whereby they yield great encreaſe; they are ſet in the Spring or Summer, about two or three

together

together is ſufficient, about a Hand breadth aſunder or more, make your ground good, and they will be large if they do not grow too thick; alſo a little dung or new moulding will make them both earlier and fairer of growth.

Shelot is ſet in a manner as Sives or Garlick, by parting the roots, and is to be taken up when it hath done growing, which you may eaſily know by the falling and withering of the blade, and is kept all the Winter for uſe by thoſe that love it, either to rub their Diſhes wherein they lay their Meat, or ſhred and put into Vinegar; it hath both the ſmell and taſt of Garlick, although in a weaker manner, and is ſaid not to offend by the ſmell; it is ſet in the Spring, if it be not taken up, ſome hard Winters will kill it.

Garlick is encreaſed by parting the root or cloves, and ſet betimes in the Spring, either on the edges of convenient beds, or on beds together; ſome ſet it about the time Men uſe to ſow Wheat, but the Spring Seaſon is ſufficient; ſome uſe to tie it about the time it hath its full growth, about *Midſummer*, or little after, about which time it begins to run to Seed, the tying is only to hinder its ſeeding; ſo ſoon as it hath done growing, it is to be taken up and kept dry for uſe.

Scallions are ſaid to be a different thing from Onions, ſomewhat reſembling Shelot or Sives, but ordinarily amongſt moſt Gardeners, ſmall or ſpired; Onions being ſet in the Winter, or remaining all the Year in the ground, and drawn in the Spring for uſe, are called Scallions; the beſt time to ſet them, is a little before, or in Winter; thoſe ſet in the Spring are ready to run for Seed before they have loſt their old head or root.

Michaelmaſs- Onions, as they are called, are ſown between *Jamestide* and *Bartholomew-tide*; if you will you may ſow a few Cabbage-ſeed or a little Sginage or Corn-ſallet amongſt them; they are chiefly uſed in the Spring for Sallets, or to eat with ſoft Cheeſe. I have ſometimes ſown them after *Bartholomew-tide*, and in caſe the enſuing Winter hath favoured them, I have had as good Onions to dry for next Winter, as any I have ſown in the following Spring, but if ſown a little too early, they have run up for Seed.

Carraway and Corriander, are ſown either in the Spring, or about *James-tide*, or a little ſooner, better ſown a little too thin than too thick; the Plant of the Coriander hath a very loathſom ſmell, they are plentiful in bearing Seed.

Aniſeed are ſown ſometimes with us, and hath ſome Years brought forth good ripe Seed, the Spring is its Seaſon.

Muſtard-

Muſtard ſeed after it is once ſown in a ground, and come to perfection, requires but little care more for future Crops, than new ſtirring of the Ground, ſow it betimes in the Spring.

Liquoriſh is encreaſed by Plants or runners from them, one good runner will ſerve to make divers ſets, allowing two or three Buds to a ſet or Plant; the ground ought to be rather light than heavy, dry and not wet, if you would have very good; the ground ought to be well in heart, and very well trencht, that it may run freely according to its nature; they that plant but a little for private uſe, make beds of three foot wide, ſetting three or four rows on a bed about nine inches aſunder, either more or leſs; the Plants or ſets are ſet two or three inches in the ground above their tops; if you will, and the ground be good, you may have a Crop of Onions amongſt your Liquoriſh the firſt Year, if not too thick; ſome that have but little, do cut down the withered ſtalks, and ſpread a little dung all over their beds in Winter; if ground be good, it will bring good Liquoriſh at two Years growth; let the Sap be well hardened before you take it up, otherwiſe it will ſhrink and not be ſo good to keep.

Strawberries are encreaſed by ſetting of the young roots, which encreaſe from the ſtrings that run from the elder plants; they are to be had in Woods, and ſuch-like places, from whence divers furniſh themſelves as well as in Gardens; they are planted at divers Seaſons, but chiefly at the Spring and Fall; but many refuſe to ſet them in the Spring, becauſe then there is a Summer Husbandry for weeding, and little or no Fruit the firſt Year; and therefore it is that moſt plant about *Bartholomew* or *Michaelmaſs*, and ſometimes later, but ſomething ſooner is better, for then they will have gotten pretty ſtrength, and will bear both more and fairer Fruit: Set them about half a foot aſunder, and that is nigh enough; alſo if you would have fair Fruit, and your bed laſt good the longer without renewing or new planting, you muſt often cut away the ſtrings that run from the roots, otherwiſe they will ſtarve one another; alſo it will be good to new mould them a little every Winter, not Summer; and in caſe of dry Weather it will be worth your labour often to water them, chiefly in blooming and fruiting time, but do it throughly: Where good Husbandry is not uſed, a bed will not laſt good above 2 or 3 Years at moſt: As for the great kinds of Strawberries, their Husbandry differs but little, only to be ſet and kept at a bigger diſtance, and the root kept moulded up, and the ſtalks for Fruit tied up, and to be kept moiſt in dry Weather, not forgetting to cut their ſtrings often.

Of

Of Muskmellons, and their Ordering.

IN the Husbandry or raiſing this Sort of Fruit, there is ſuch diverſity of Judgments and Practiſes that it even wearies me to think of ſetting down all that might be ſaid concerning them: But I ſhall only ſet down ſome ſure and neceſſary Rules, by the diligent Obſervation whereof, any induſtrious Practitioner may attain his End, and by his diligent Obſervation, in his Practice may attain to a more clear and exact Judgment, than I am able to ſet down in Writing.

In the firſt place you are to endeavour to be furniſhed with ſuch ſorts of Seed as are of beſt Account for Earlineſs and good Taſte, either at the Hand of Friend, Gardner, or Seedman.

In the next place to make choice of ſuch a Situation as may have moſt advantage of the Sun, and leaſt prejudice from hurtful or ſharp Winds, but this may be effected by a convenient Fence made either of Reeds, Broom, or Rye-ſtraw, being made ſtrong with good Stakes and Poles, and well tied with Oſiers; let it be made ſix or ſeven Foot high at leaſt, and then begin as followeth: Take of the neweſt Horſe-Dung and Litter together, and make a Bed about two Foot and a half high, and as much in breadth, or thereabout, either more or leſs, treading it hard, and beating it even and handſome both Top and Sides, the better to keep in the Heat; then make proviſion either with Boards of about half a Foot wide, or thereabout, nailed together a little narrower and ſhorter than your Bed, for your Bed will ſhrink ſomething, or inſtead of Boards ſome uſe Thumb-bands of Hay or Straw, the Boards are leſs troubleſome; then lay about the quantity of half a Foot thick of very good ſifted Mould, either more or leſs, according to the Subſtance and Goodneſs of your Bed; ſome lay their Dung two or three Days on a heap before they make their Bed with it; alſo ſome mix their dung with Sea-coal-Aſhes, undoubtedly it doth cauſe it to have the greater Heat, and it may be to hold it longer: Having laid your Mould ſmooth, and ſettled it with your Spade, then take your Glaſſes, and make ſeveral impreſſions according to the quantity of Seed you would prick on your Bed, and within the Circle of each Glaſs prick ſome Seed, as much as is convenient, and then ſet your Glaſſes over the Seed you prick; then with ſome Poles or Hoops arch your Bed over, tying ſome Poles at length, that it

may be the ſtronger to uphold your covering, and then cover your Bed either with old Sail cloath or Baſs-mats, and Straw upon that, the better to keep either Snow or Rain from your Bed, which would ſpoil all, either cauſing your Bed to burn or ſcald your Plants by chilling or deſtroying them; ſome do not prick their Seed, until the ſecond or third Day after their Bed was made, and as occaſion ſerves you may give your Plants breath by raiſing your Glaſſes a little, but if your Bed be ſlow and of ſmall Heat, you may quicken it by laying ſome Straw upon and between your Glaſſes, which you may withdraw as you ſee Cauſe, and then when your Plants are pretty ſtrong and green, take off your Glaſſes, and pull up your plants and new prick them again in the ſame Bed and Earth, not ſtirring the Earth at all; ſet them up to the Leaves about three Inches aſunder or little leſs, then water them as you ſee cauſe with a little Water Blood-warm, then ſet over your Glaſſes cloſe, and cover them with Straw all over, and betwixt them cover your Arch with your Mats or other proviſion for two Days more, as you ſee cauſe; then draw up one of your Plants, and if it have taken new Root, take off the covering and give them the Sun a little in the Morning, and a little after Noon through the Glaſſes only; and then if Weather permit, give them a little more Sun than they had the Day before, and when you find they will endure the Sun through the Glaſſes; if Weather give leave, under-ſet your Glaſſes a little, and give them Air, and it will ſtrengthen them, and keep them from running up; but be ſure to keep them from Wind, put Straw between the Glaſſes, and let the Sun ſhine on the Tops of the Glaſſes, and as they grow in Strength give them more Sun, and then when they have two or three Joynts, provide Banks or Ridges to plant them out; and if need require to water them, do it with Water blood-warm, and every day take up the Glaſſes and wipe off the Dew, for it chilleth them.

Some Mellon-Maſters, when their Plants begin to Joynt, do pinch or nip the top Bud, that they may cauſe their Plants to put out for runners before they plant out; as alſo afterwards as occaſion requires. Now for the making of the Banks or Ridges to plant your Mellon on, do as followeth: Firſt make a Trench of four or five Foot wide, then take ſome mouldy Hay, or the bottom of a Rick, and ſome Barley-ſtraw, mix them together, and lay them a Foot deep in your Trench, and tread it very hard; then throw Water all over it, then tread it hard again; then lay

a ſecond

a ſecond laying as before, and ſerve it ſo likewiſe; then a third laying ſomewhat round on the Top, and tread it hard, and make it riſe with a Ridge and let all your Straw be as wet as Men uſe it for Thatching (ſome uſe all Barley-ſtraw, and others uſe Barley-ſtraw and Dung mixed together, and others only new Stable-dung and Aſhes, *&c*, any of them may do, only remember if your Straw exceed your Dung, you muſt moiſten it,) then take your Line, and make another Trench of the former bigneſs, and throw the Earth thereof upon your Bank of Straw one Spit deep, and ſhovel up the Crumbs on the Ridge where the Plants muſt be ſet, then take your Straw or Dung, and do as you did with the firſt, but ſo as the Straw or Dung of each Trench may joyn together all along, that it may heat alike in every place, then take a ſharp Stick about three foot long, and thruſt it into your Bank, about the middle, and let it abide until ſuch time as you think it begins to heat, then pull up your Watch-ſtick, feel if it be warm in the middle of the Stick; if it be, you may be ſure your Bank works well; then begin and make your Holes where you are to plant, on the Sunny ſide of your Ridge near the top about two Foot and a half aſunder, every Hole within an Inch of the Straw or Dung of your Ridge, then cut out each Hole of Plants from your Bed even with the top of the Dung with nothing but Earth about them, (there are Inſtruments to be ſold in *Crooked-Lane*, and elſewhere, made of ſet purpoſe to remove Mellons, or other choice and tender Plants, which they will do very handſomely without ſhaking the Mould from the Roots; I think they are called Groves; they are made of double Tin, *&c.*) ſet your Plants in the Holes you made, and cloſe the warm Mould of your Bank to them, then put to every Hole of plants about half a pint of blood-warm Water, then clap the Glaſs on cloſe over your Plants, and draw the Earth about the Edges of your Glaſſes, and cover them with your Mats to keep them from the Sun two or three Days, until your plants have drawn new Root, then take away the Earth from about the Edges of your Glaſſes, and lay ſome mouldy Hay or Straw about your Glaſſes, and take off your Mats all the Day, from about nine of the Clock, until Sun-ſet; but you muſt keep a little Hay or Straw upon your Glaſſes for the Sun to glimmer through, for your Plants will be apt to fall their Leaves, if the Sun lie too hot upon them, until they have got ſome Strength, and be entred to it by Degrees, raiſing your Glaſſes on the contrary ſide

to the Wind, ſo as the Wind come not at them until they will endure the Air without Glaſſes; and then when your Plants have put out their Runners on each ſide, ſome halt a Foot, or rather leſs; then take off your crown or running end of your Plant, and cut it off about the ſecond Joynt, or firſt, next to the end, and that will make your Runners grow ſtrong. Note, That ſome Prune before they Plant out, and ſome pinch or nip the main running Bud, when the Plants are but two or three Joynts of growth beginning to run; alſo when their Fruit is ſet and likely to hold, that ſo the Fruit may have all the principal Nouriſhment from the Root, a little diligent Obſervation will inform your Judgment much better than I am able to expreſs by my writing; and when your Runners begin to come out of your Glaſſes, you are to defend them as you ſee cauſe with a little Straw lightly laid upon them, until you have entred them to endure the Weather; and having hardened them, as I ſaid, by little and little, you may take off your Glaſſes, and give them Sun from nine or ten in the Morning, until ſeven at Night, and then Glaſs them again, and cover them with your Mats, and keep in the heat of the Sun; and when you ſee your Fruit begin to knit, Glaſs it, but have a care the Glaſs do not burn it; then put a piece of Tile under your Fruit to keep it from the Earth, not watering, or but very little, as need requires, until your Fruit be as big as a Gooſe-Egg, except the Weather be extream hot, and your Bank very dry, *&c.* For watering your Bank, take Pond or Ditch-Water, and give your Bank ſo much on the ſides and allies as will ſoak quite through to the Straw, but let not much come into your Holes of Plants; remember this Watering ought not to be but in very hot and dry Weather; alſo let your Mats be kept over your Plants every Night, until your Fruit be wrought out, or as you ſee the Night or Weather inclined, wheater friendly or otherwiſe, as to ſuch tender raiſed Fruits; for the truth is, if it be mild or temperate, Air is beſt for them: Take notice, that if your Plants turn up their Ends or Noſes towards the Air in a dry time, then they want Water, the which you are to ſupply them with diſcretion, avoiding exceſs: Be careful at firſt planting to keep your Plants from Rain or Snow-Water, for it will deſtroy them if it come at them: If your Plants turn the Ends or Noſes upward towards the Air, be ſure there is a Fault at the Root; but when they thrive beſt, they will carry their Ends or Noſes cloſe to the Ground, and will be very limber, then do not med-

dle

dle with them at all: Remember every Morning when you heave your Glaſſes to wipe the Dew off them, alſo gently ſhake it off your Plants with your Hand, for it weakens them

Alſo at firſt giving Air to your Plants, raiſe the Edge of your Glaſſes with a little Straw to Stand on; and as they grow more hardy, you may raiſe them with ſomething elſe, by giving them Air with diſcretion, your Plants will dry and gather Strength and grow hardy; if your Bed be too cold, cover it well amongſt your Glaſſes with Hay or Straw, and you may be ſure your Plants will not burn at the Roots; if your Bed be too hot, you may know by the blackneſs of the Leaves of your Plants, pull up one, and you ſhall ſee it burnt; then cover more ſlightly, and in the heat of the Day ſhadow them with your Mats, and take away all the Straw from amongſt your Glaſſes, if there be any, and new mould them up to the firſt Joynt, and they will draw new Root; alſo remember when your Plants have taken new Root after their planting, give them as much Air on the contrary ſide to the Wind, as you may with diſcretion, from nine or ten till three Afternoon; much heat and cloſe covering cauſeth them to run up; water them but once after planting, until they are prettily knit, unleſs great need require.

It is uſual with many to ſteep their Seed before they ſow or prick it on their Beds, which is a good way if you do not ſow it before your Bed is come to its heat; for by ſteeping, your Seed is ſo prepared that it comes up gole and handſome, and not ſo ſmall as that which is forc'd without ſteeping; ſome uſe Milk, and ſome uſe other Liquors, but Water is as effectual as any, and more natural.

Some that raiſe many Plants, do make a little Bed on purpoſe to ſow their Seed on, and then prepare Beds to prick out their Plants upon; alſo divers inſtead of particular Glaſſes for their Bed, do uſe a Frame of Glaſs, as it were divers Panes, ſo handſomely fitted, that they may take up all or ſome, as occaſion requires, without any trouble; alſo a Frame arched over, to ſet on and take off as occaſion ſerves, for the more eaſie and convenient opening, and taking off their Glaſſes, if by any Accident you chance to loſe your firſt Plant, you may prick over the ſame Bed again; and though the Heat be but little in compariſon, you may cauſe it to ſtrike new Heat by covering both Bed and Glaſſes with ſtore of Straw or clean Horſe-litter; you may be ſure to raiſe good ſound Plants on ſuch a Bed; but if you find it too

weak,

weak, you muſt provide another Bed to prick your Plants upon when they are ready: Conſider that a fine moderate warmth is far better and more natural than extream Heat: ſtill remember that as you raiſe your Plants, ſo you muſt look to keep and maintain them uſually two or three Days after your Bed is come to its Heat; the danger of burning your Plants at the Root will be over, except your Bed having good Strength, chance to take a little moiſture by Rain; and ſome in making their Ridges do leave the ſpace of three or four Foot between each Ridge, and then when the Heat is ſomething declin'd, they trench up thoſe ſpaces with good Dung for the purpoſe, thereby adding new Heat to their Ridges, cauſing their Mellons to come away roundly: Some do water their Ridges or Holes of Plants very little, but only the Allies between, which do not lie very deep.

If the Mould do chance to ſhake from your Plants in removing, the matter is not great, if your Ridges be of a good temper for Heat, they will quickly get Strength, and ſometimes outgo ſuch as were not ſhaken at all: If your Ridges heat too ſlowly, you muſt cover them well with Straw and Mats, and that will cauſe them to heat; the like Courſe you muſt uſe to keep off Snow or Rain from your Ridges, at the firſt planting eſpecially: Alſo it is not the leaſt of that skill that belongs to Mellons, to know how or when to gather a Mellon fit either for preſent ſpending, or to ſpend two or three Days after, in caſe of ſending it far off, and ſo as it may not be raw or hard in the eating, or too ripe and wateriſh, but dry and firm; know that much wet or cold Weather about the time that Mellons come to perfection, doth very much leſſen their Goodneſs, cauſing them to ſpend more flat and wateriſh, and therefore if you can uſe convenient Means to defend them from too much Moiſture, your Fruit will ſpend more pleaſant a great deal; diligent Obſervation and good Practice will make all clear in time to an ingenious Practitioner.

Take notice that in wet Ground, or ſuch as is apt to hold Moiſture overmuch, it is a good way to lay a laying of Buſh-Faggots in the bottom of your Trench, the better to cauſe the Moiſture to ſink away from your Dung, and which may be taken away when you trench your Ground again, or as you ſee Cauſe.

Of

Of the Ordering of Cucumbers.

IF you deſire to have them very early, you muſt obſerve the ſame Method that is ſet down for the raiſing of Musk-Mellons, only there is not ſo much neceſſity of pruning to cauſe them to Fruit; but if the top Sprout be nipt when they are ſhot out three or four Joynts, it will undoubtedly cauſe them to knit the ſooner for Fruit; they are as tender to bring up when they are ſown early as Mellons: but if you begin with them any time in *March*, it will be time enough if you have Glaſſes; and then you ſhall not need to make Ridges to plant them out at large, but only to make Holes about the bigneſs of a Buſhel or bigger, the which you are to fill up with warm Stable-Dung, ſetling it cloſe, making a Hole in the midſt, in which you are to plant three or four Cucumber Plants with their Mould about them, and then to Earth them up, ſo as they may ſtand as it were in a Bole or Pan, the better to hold Water, which they ought to have in good plenty when they begin to Fruit eſpecially: Alſo if you raiſe them tenderly and under Glaſſes, you muſt uſe them ſo at firſt planting, otherwiſe a little cold wet will deſtroy them; but if you cannot afford to Glaſs them, you muſt not plant out until the Weather be very warm and dry, and then at firſt to ſhadow them from the Sun, in caſe the Mould were ſhaken from the Roots, until they had recovered new Root, but yet giving them Air as much as may be if temperate; only lightly covering them with Straw, or ſome other convenient things every Night, if like to be cold. Remember at firſt planting to give them a watering, but if you will not be at the trouble of raiſing them on a Bed, then you may any time from the beginning or middle of *April*, to the end of the firſt Week in *May*, make divers Holes which you are to fill up with Dung, or other Soil that is good, and upon that to lay ſome good Earth, ſhaping it in faſhion of a Bole or Pan, as I ſaid before, and then to prick in about half a Dozen Cucumber-Seeds; and then, the Weather being warm, water them now and then as you ſee cauſe; and if your Plants take and thrive, three or four will be ſufficient in a Hole, you may pluck up the reſt and beſtow them in other Places.

Plenty of Water in dry Weather, will cauſe plenty of Fruit in caſe of much wet or cold Weather; when your Plants are young, it will be the ſureſt way to defend them from it by covering,

ring, otherwiſe they may either ſtunt or die; if you deſire to ſave any for Seed, then you are to ſave ſome that are pretty forward; the riper and better grown your Seed is, the longer it will laſt good, three or four Years at leaſt; the riper your Seed is, the leſs labour it will require to waſh from the Pilp; but the ripeſt will require a good many ſeveral ſhiftings of freſh Water to waſh it from the ſlimy ſtuff that cleaves to it.

Pompions may be raiſed and planted as Cucumbers, either early or later, but moſt ordinary People do ſet them on Dung Hills, any time from the beginning of *April* to the beginning of *May*; the more they are watered (in caſe of hot Weather) the more Fruit, and fairer they will have.

Thus I might ſpeak of divers other Plants and their ordering, as Woad, Madder, Saffron-teaſſels, *&c.* but in regard my Book ſwells ſo faſt, I ſhall forbear, and only ſpeak of the ordering of ſome ſorts of ſmall Herbs, and ſo conclude this Part, and ſpeak ſomething of the ordering of the Garden of Pleaſure.

Of the Seaſons, Order and Manner of Sowing and Setting of divers Sweet Herbs.

MOſt ſorts of Sallet, Pot, and Sweet-Herbs, excepting ſome few which I ſhall ſpeak of afterward, are, and may be ſown any time from the beginning or middle of *March*, until *James-tide*, and a little after in moſt ſorts of Ground that are of any indifferent Temper, but your either too early or late ſowing of moſt ſmall Herbs on Grounds that are either wet or cold is apt to miſcarry, either by the chilling of the Seed too early in the Spring or the Winter's Froſt coming too ſuddenly on the latter, before they have taken ſufficient root to withſtand it, being oft heaved or ſpewed out of the Ground by Froſt, and ſometimes by Worms; ſo that your ſure way is, not to be too forward in the Spring, nor too late towards *Autumn* in ſowing on ſuch kinds of Ground: Now for ſuch ſorts of Herbs that are for Phyſick-Uſes, or to Still, which of moſt are thought to have greateſt virtue in *May*, you are either to ſow them between the middle or end of *July* and *Bartholomew-tide* at fartheſt, or betimes in the Spring: But thoſe that are tender are to be ſown upon a hot Bed, and afterwards drawn up and ſet in ſome thinner order in good Ground, and conſtantly ſupply'd with watering, as need requires, by which means aforeſaid, the deſired end may be accompliſhed;

compliſhed: but take notice that thoſe things raiſed on a hot Bed, are to be covered or defended in caſe of cold or froſty Nights or Mornings, until they have got ſome Strength, or are out of Danger by the Temperateneſs of the Seaſon.

Of the Manner of Sowing Small Seeds.

FIrſt you are to beſtow ſome good Dung or Soil on your Ground if need require, and then dig it very well, breaking the Clods, and picking out all offenſive Weeds, if need require, laying your Ground very level before you begin to ſow your Seed, leſt by endeavouring to rake it level after you have ſown, you rake your Seeds on Heaps, and then you may tread out your Beds handſome and ſtraight by a Line, it will be the pleaſanter to look on; and then ſow your Seed as even as you can in every part of your Bed alike, but not over thick, leſt your Herbs ſtarve one another, beſides the waſte of your Seeds; then ſpittle in your Seed with your Spade about an Inch or two deep or leſs, ſo they be covered, and then ſlightly ſmooth over your Bed with your Rake; if your Ground be looſe or dry, you may ſmooth or lightly clap your bed over with your Spade, or if you will, you may ſow your Seed in Rows or Trails, either round about the Edges of your Beds to keep them in Faſhion, and plant either Herbs or Flowers on the Body of your Beds, or you may furniſh your Bed all over, making three, four, or five Rows or Trails, according to the bigneſs of your Bed; the order or manner is to make each Trail of like diſtance, and range your Line, and by it, either with your Finger, or a ſmall Stick, to make your Trail about an Inch thick or thereabout, and therein to ſow your Seed, not over thick; if you put your Seeds in a white Paper, you may (if the Seeds are ſmall) very eaſily and equally ſow them by ſhaking the lower end of your Paper with the Fore-Finger of that Hand you ſow with; the Paper muſt not be much open towards the end; the way is eaſie and handſome to ſow Trails, either for Knots or otherwiſe, and then with your Hand or a Trowel to ſmooth the Earth into each Trail, and by this way you may be ſure to cover your Seeds well, *&c.* Having ſaid thus much as to the Seaſons and manner of ſowing, which is a ſufficient Direction for almoſt any ſort of either Sweet, Pot, or Sallet-Herbs, (eſpecially having ſpoke ſo much in particular before) only take notice that thoſe ſorts of Herbs or Flowers that are early to be

ſown, and the ſame Year ſeed and die; as alſo for thoſe that are very tender, for ſuch ſorts you are to take the advantage of the Spring, namely, *March*, *April*, and *May*, as either the hardineſs or tenderneſs of the thing requires, that ſo you may have the benefit of the Summer's growth and profit ſeaſonably, either before it ſeed or die.

Sweet-Marjoram is ſomething tender, and therefore if you would have it betimes, you muſt ſow it upon a hot Bed, or in a warm ſituated Place; yet I have oft ſown in the beginning of *March* with good ſucceſs, the Ground being good, and not of a wet or cold Nature. Sweet-Baſel is more tender and apt to miſcarry than Sweet-Marjoram; it ought to be ſown both in a warm and dry Seaſon; for if moiſture come at the Seed before it hath lain ſome time in the Earth, it will turn to a Jelly, and never grow; ſo likewiſe if ſown on a cold or moiſt Ground: Some to prevent its miſcarriage, mingle their Seed two or three Days before with ſome fine and well-tempered Mould, and then ſow it; *April* or *May* is time enough: Some that have ſuch Opportunities, do ſow both this and the former alſo, on ſuch Beds whereon they did raiſe the Muskmellons or Cucumbers.

Roſemary-Seed is likewiſe very tender being ſown, and therefore requires to be ſown in a warm Seaſon, *&c.* As for Thyme, Savory, Hyſſop, *&c.* they are pretty hardy, and may be ſown in any of the Seaſons before-mentioned, and therefore I ſhall ſay no more as to their ſowing, but give ſome few Rules concerning the increaſing of ſome few ſorts of Herbs not uſually ſown of Seed, becauſe they are both eaſily and quickly brought to perfection by ſlipping and parting their Roots.

And for this purpoſe uſually the Spring or riſing of the Year is the beſt, as being moſt temperate and ſeaſonable for all ſorts of ſtringy-rooted Plants, yet notwithſtanding, as I ſaid before of the ſowing of moſt ſorts of ſmall Herbs, ſo I ſay concerning moſt ſorts of ſetting Herbs, that they may be removed, ſlipt, or parted, any time from the beginning of *March*, to the end of *Auguſt*, and ſomething after; only you are to take notice, that in extream hot and dry weather, you are to forbear removing and ſetting Herbs, *&c.* unleſs you uſe more than ordinary diligence both for watering and ſhadowing what you plant.

In the ſetting of Herbs, *&c.* either of Slips or parting the Roots to ſet, obſerve theſe few directions: Firſt top them a little for handſomeneſs, and if there be any ſuperfluous Leaves that may unneceſſarily

unneceſſarily draw away any ſap from your Slip before it is rooted, top them or cut them off, yet not ſo as to rob your Slip of all its Leaves, eſpecially the youngeſt; alſo if they have any Roots, top them a little; alſo do not ſet too many in a heap or cluſter together: Alſo thoſe that are long, Wall-Flowers or Roſemary, give them a little twiſt or turn near the lower end to make them tuff, and not to break in the ſetting: Alſo thoſe Herbs or Slips that are ſhort, brittle or ſappy, you are to ſet them with your Finger if the Ground be eaſie or ſoft, or with a Trowel, or Holes made with a Stick, to ſet them in as need requires; alſo whatſoever you ſet after you have cloſed the Earth to them, water them throughly, except in caſe of a ſoaking Rain; alſo in caſe dry Weather happeneth upon your new ſetting, you are to keep a conſtant courſe in watering until the Weather change, or at leaſt till your Herbs are well taken in the Ground. Remember that ſlight and ſeldom watering daily, and but ſlight watering, yea, in a hot and dry time, will do more hurt to young rooted Herbs, than if you did not water at all; therefore I ſay, that what you water in a dry Seaſon, do it throughly, and pretty conſtant; do not water thoſe things that are throughly and well grown, in a dry time, except you do it, as I ſaid before, throughly and conſtantly: Alſo if you are neceſſitated to ſet any Plants that are choice in a dry or hot Seaſon, either ſet them in the ſhadow, and after remove them in more convenient Places, or at leaſt ſhadow them where you would have them to grow, not neglecting watering as need requires: Alſo take notice, that one good watering of any Herbs, *&c.* in a cloſe or gloomy Day, is better and more effectual than two in hot Sun-ſhine Weather, in caſe the Ground be dry; alſo for all ordinary or hardy things, the Evening watering is more effectual than the Morning; alſo be careful to take the firſt opportunity to weed your Herbs, *&c.* although in dry Weather, though ſome do purpoſely forbear, and ſay the Weeds keep their Herbs moiſt, and from the violence of the Sun, but I am ſure of the contrary; for if there be any virtue or moiſture where they grow, they will have the beſt ſhare, the Earth being more natural to Weeds, than to what we ſet or ſow, as plainly appears by their quick growing, and overgrowing of what we ſet or ſow: Now for the kind of Water that is beſt to water your Garden, it is certain that Pond or Ditch-Water is better than Running or River-Water, yet that is far better than Pump or Well-Water, yet it hath always been my

Lot to have no other for my uſe, whether for Cucumbers or other Herbs and Flowers; yet I doubt not but there is a Week odds in a Month's growth at ſome times of the Year, between watering with a warm ſat ſtanding Water, and watering with cold Pump or Spring-Water, but yet the worſt is better than none; but where occaſion is for ſome ſmall quantity, for ſome tender Plants, ſome have got Tubs fill'd, wherein they put Sheeps Dung or other Dung, letting it ſtand in the Sun until it is in better caſe to uſe as aforeſaid, ſtill ſupplying their Tubs as need requires; and as I ſaid before, one watering towards the declining of the Day or Evening, is better then two in the Morning or heat of the Day, for moſt things.

Another thing worth the practiſing, is, that you be careful to cut or top your Herbs often, for it is not only handſome, but cauſeth your Herbs to laſt longer, whereas to ſuffer Herbs to grow rank, or woody, or to ſeed quickly, deſtroys them, or ſo weakens them, that they do not thrive again in a great while: By your often topping your ſweet Herbs, you may, if you will, make uſe of them to dry and make them into Powder to uſe all the Winter, ſo that you need not cut your Herbs in the Winter: Another convenience is, that if you cut your Herbs often, you may cut them at any time without prejudice to them; whereas if you ſuffer them to grow Woody or to Seed, you hazard the killing of them, in caſe you cut them in a very hot and dry time, or in the Winter; another thing worth practiſing, is, that once a Year, or once in two Years you beſtow new moulding of thoſe ſorts of Herbs that continue long without renewing, as Thyme, Savory, Balm, and divers others the like; divers ſorts will upon the new moulding take root, and become as young again, your Mould ought to be ſifted or very fine, that it may the better fall in amongſt the Branches, *&c.* Lavender ought to be cut even and handſome ſo ſoon as you have your crop off, and if it cannot be made ſmooth and handſome, at one cutting, you may cut it a ſecond time before Winter, and then it will be pleaſant, and grow ſtrong and handſome without the help of Poles, which ſome uſe, occaſioned through unhandſome or negligent Husbandry. Sage and Roſemary Beds are likewiſe to be cut ſmooth and handſome, which being often done, a ſmall matter doth it; and beſides they will be uſeful as an Hedge to lay ſmall Cloaths upon to white or dry, beſides a handſome Ornamant in a Garden.

Another convenient Practice tending to handſomeneſs and good order; is, that you ſow or ſet together in one quarter, or Beds by themſelves, all ſuch Herbs as are durable, and not to be renewed every Year; by which means that part of your Ground will be always in handſome order: You may eaſily gueſs what the contrary practice will be.

After this manner you may bring it to paſs, ſow Thyme, Winter Savory, Hyſſop, Pot-Marjoram, and Winter-Sweet-Marjoram, which is encreaſed only by Slips; let ſuch be near together; likewiſe Balm, Coaſtmary, Mints, and the like, in Beds nearer together; alſo Bugloſs, Sorrel, Succory, and the like; and for ſuch as are, as I ſaid, to be renewed every Year, as Sweet-Marjoram, Summer-Savory, and Sweet-Baſel, *&c.* let theſe be near together; alſo all ordinary Pot-Herbs that are yearly renewed, by themſelves; I ſhall need to ſay no more as to this.

A Catalogue of divers Ordinary Herbs and Roots, by the View whereof any Gardner may readily call to mind what Sorts of Herbs he is to provide for the Furniſhing of his Garden; alſo briefly by what Means Increaſed.

The Names of divers Sorts of Herbs, commonly called Sweet Herbs.

BAlm, chiefly increaſed by ſlipping or parting the Root, ſometimes of Seed.

Baſel, only of Seeed.

Burnet, both by ſlipping and parting the Roots, and by Seed.

Coaſtmary, chiefly by ſlipping or parting the Roots, ſometimes by Seed.

Camomile, by ſlipping or parting the Roots.

Callamint, both by Seed and Slips.

Hyſſop, by Seed, Slips or Tops.

Lavender, chiefly by ſlipping.

Musked

Musked Crains-Bill, or Muskomy, chiefly by Seed ſhed, &c.

Mints,
Spear,
Red,
Water,
Baſel,
Pide,
} **By Tops, Slips, or Roots.**

Marjoram,
Sweet,
Winter ſweet,
Yellow,
Pide,
Pot or Wild,
} **Chiefly of Seed, it will grow of Tops, and Slips, only the Summer; the others chiefly by ſlipping, they will alſo grow of Seed.**

Maudlin, or Sweet-Maudlin, both by Slips and Seed, two ſorts.

Penroyal, chiefly by Slips, and there is three or four Sorts.

Roſemary, chiefly by Slips, but likewiſe of Seed, but ſo it is very tender.

Sage, chiefly by Slips.

Savory, the Winter, both of Seed and Slips; the Summer, only of Seed.

Thyme,
Engliſh or hard Thyme,
French,
Pide,
Limon,
Muſk,
Maſtick,
} **Both by Slips and Seeds.**

Herb Maſtick, chiefly by ſlipping.

Tanſie, both by Seeds, Slips, or parting.

The Names of divers ordinary Phyſick Herbs, uſually planted in Gardens.

ANgelica, encreaſed only by Seed, ſow it in Ground not too dry, or as ſoon as it is ripe.

Aſarabacka, only by parting the Roots.

Bears-Foot, only of Seed, I mean, the ordinary Garden kind call'd Setter-wort.

Carduus, only of Seed.

Dragons, chiefly by Off-ſets or young Roots, ſometimes by Seed.

Dittander,

Dittander, by Sprouts from the Root.
Elecampane, of Seed and parting, the upper-part of the Root.
Fetherfew, of Seed or Slips.
Goats-Rue, or Seed, or Slip near the Root.
Germander, chiefly of Tops or Slips.
Garlick, by parting the Root.
Harts-Tongue, by parting the Root; it doth likewiſe make increaſe by Seed, but, *&c.*
Horſe-Radiſh, by either Tops, or Pieces of the Root ſet.
Liverwort, is brought ſometimes from Places where it naturally grows, *&c.* ſet in ſome ſhady place.
Lavender-Cotton, of Slips.
Liquoriſh, of Plants or Runners.
Maſter-wort, of Seed or Runners.
Marſh-mallows, of Seed, or of the top Sprouts from the Root, ſet in moiſt or ſhadow.
Mother-wort, of Seed, or parting the Roots.
Pelletary of the Wall, of Seed, or Slips.
Pionies, ſingle of Seed, or pieces of Roots, chiefly near the tops of them.
Rubarb, three ſorts, both of Seed and tops of the Roots parted.
Rue, chiefly of Slips.
Solomon's-Seal, ſometimes by Seed, but moſt commonly by the Tops or pieces of the Root.
Scordium, of Slips, not in too dry a Situation, it ſhould be moulded over in Winter.
Scorſonera, of Seed, Slips or Root.
Scurvy-graſs, chiefly of Seed, *&c.*
Southern-wood, of Slips.
Smallage, of Seed or Slips.
Sneeſe-wort, of Slips faſt enough.
Tanſie, of Slips or Seed.
Greek Valerian, of Slips or Seed.
Great Valerian or Setwell, chiefly Slips from the Roots.
Winter-Cherries, increaſe faſt enough from the Root by Sprouts and Runners.
Wormwood, both Engliſh and Roman, both by Slips and Seed.

There is a ſort of Sallet commonly gathered in the Spring, conſiſting of divers young buds and ſprouts, both of Trees and Herbs, the

the which being gathered diſcreetly, with nothing but what is very young and tender, and ſo that no one thing do too much exceed another, but that there be a fine agreement in their reliſh; if ſo, it will be very acceptable to many.

Violets with ſome young leaves, Primroſes and ſome young leaves, ſmall ſprouts of Burnet, alſo of Mints.

Sorrel, and divers other of the like, alſo ſmall Buds of Goosberries, Roſes, Barberries, *&c.*

Alſo when they are to be had, the Flowers of Burage, Bugloſs, Cowpagles, Archangel, with divers other.

The Names of divers ordinary Pot-Herbs, call'd alſo Chopping-Herbs.

ARach, red and white, of ſeed.
Blood wort, of ſeed.
Burage, of ſeed.
Bugloſs, of ſeed.
Beets, of ſeed.
Carrots, of ſeed.
Clary, of ſeed.
Endive, of ſeed.
Langdebeff, of ſeed.
Leeks, of ſeed beſt.
Marygolds, of ſeed.
Nep, of ſeed.
Orach, of ſeed.
Parſley, of ſeed.
Sives, parting the Roots.
Strawberries, of young roots from the ſtrings.
Succory, of ſeed.
Violets, of ſlips and ſeed.
Worts, or Brockets, chiefly of ſeed.

The Names of divers Sallet-Herbs and Roots, and other Herbage for the Kitchin Uſes.

ALliſanders, of ſeed,
Beans, French, and ordinary Garden-Beans.
Beets, both red and white, of ſeed.
Cabbages, of ſeed.
Carraway, of ſeed.
Carrots, of ſeed.
Corn-Sallet, of ſeed.
Colworts, of ſeed.
Colliflowers, of ſeed.
Cucumbers, of ſeed.
Creſs of the Garden, of ſeed.
Dill, of ſeed.
Endive white, of ſeed.
Fennel, of ſeed.
Hartichoaks, of ſlips.
Lettice, of ſeed.
Muskmellons, of ſeed.
Muſtard-ſeed, of ſeed,
Onions, of ſeed.
Parſley, of ſeed.

Parſnip,

Parſnip, of ſeed.
Potatoes of *Virginea*, and Canada or *Jeruſalem* Hartichoaks, increaſed by ſmall off-ſets, and quartering their roots.
Purſlain, of ſeed.
Rocket, of ſeed.
Rampions, of ſeed.
Ramſons, by parting their roots.
Radiſh, of ſeed.
Horſe-radiſh, by tops or pieces of root.
Shelot, by parting their roots.
Scorſonera, by ſeed, ſlip, or roots.
Skerrets, by ſlip or ſeed.
Sparagus, of ſeed.
Sorrel, French and Engliſh, the ſorrel moſt by ſlipping, and the other moſt by ſeed.
Spinage, by ſeed.
Tarragon, by tops and ſprouts.
Turnips, by ſeed.

There are divers ſorts of Peaſe, of which I will name ſome few.

HOt-ſpurs-peaſe.
Redding-peaſe.
Sandwich-peaſe.
Sugar-peaſe, white and grey.
Tufted or Roſe-peaſe, two ſorts.
Grey Windſor-peaſe.
Great Maple-peaſe.
Great Bowlins-peaſe.
Great Blew-peaſe.

Theſe things following, are by divers Cooks, and others, pickled for Sallets to be uſed in the Winter.

CUcumbers.
Purſlain.
Tarragon.
Summer-ſavory.
Broom Buds.
Elder-buds.
Onions.
Leeks.
Hartichoaks.
Alſo ſome pickle up Turnips, Beet-roots, and divers other things, which being artificially done, are very acceptable.

Alſo ſome make a very acceptable boil'd Sallet of the young and tender Stalks of both Turnips, and of Cabbages, when they firſt run up in the Spring; they boil them, and peel them, and put Butter, Vinegar, and Pepper to them.

Theſe are put with White-Wine Vinegar and Sugar for Winter Sallets.

CLove-gelly-flowers.
Cowſlip-flowers.
Bugloſs-flowers.
Burage-flowers.
Archangel-flowers.

Of the ordering of the Garden of Pleaſure, with the manner of increaſing and ordering divers ſorts of Flowers, for the furniſhing of Gardens, with divers Forms of Knots and Plots for the purpoſe.

IN the firſt place, you are, if you may conveniently, to erect it in ſuch a place where it may yield moſt Delight, in regard of its Proſpect from your Houſe, or ſome chief Rooms thereof; and withal, if it may be pretty well defended from the injury of the ſharpeſt Winds; and in ſo doing, you may have in a manner a perpetual Spring, ſomething or other continually in its Beauty, either Flowers, or ever Greens, except in extream Froſt and Snow, but even then there are many houſed Greens do ſhew forth their Beauties, but let every one do as their Means, Minds, or conveniences will permit.

The Plot of Ground being reſolv'd upon, you are to fence it in according as you deſire, or can; only remember, that if there need either bringing in, or carrying out of Mould, *&c.* that you do it whilſt you have the opportunity of a Cart-Way, which is uſually cheaper and ſpeedier than Wheel-barrows, and then you may level it, and caſt it into what Form you think fit, or as the bigneſs of your Ground will handſomely bear.

I have for the Eaſe and Delight of thoſe that do affect ſuch things, preſented to view divers Forms or Plots for Gardens, amongſt which it is poſſible you may find ſome that may near the matter fit moſt ordinary Grounds, either great or ſmall; and ſhall leave the ingenious Practitioner to the Conſideration and Uſe of that he moſt affects.

The Names of ſeveral Herbs, &c. fit to ſet Knots with, or to edge Borders to keep them in Faſhion, &c.

DUtch or French Box, it is the handſomeſt, the moſt durable, and cheapeſt to keep.

Hyſop is handſome if cut once in a Fortnight or three Weeks in the growing Seaſon.

There is two or three ſorts of Thyme will be handſome and durable, if oft cut.

Germander was much uſed many Years ago, it muſt have good keeping.

Thrift

Thrift is well lik'd of by ſome, it is apt to gape and be unhandſome.

Some uſe Gilded-Marjoram, or Pot-Marjoram with good keeping will be handſome.

Alſo beſides the fore-named, you may edge Borders with divers things; as Pinks, they will be very handſome by cutting twice a Year.

Violets double or ſingle, they will thicken and be handſome if oft cut.

Graſs cut oft.

Perwinkle cut oft.

Some uſe Lavender-Cotton, and Herba-grace, *&c.* will be handſome if kept well.

Roſemary may be kept low as other Herbs, if oft cut.

Lavender, as it may be kept, will be both low and handſome.

Sage likewiſe.

Primroſes and double Daiſies are ſet for that purpoſe likewiſe, but they ought to be planted ſomething ſhady.

Another thing I thought good to mention: It is common in the Mouths of many, that Box doth take away all the heart of a Ground where it grows: but the naked truth is, that it doth not draw ſo much virtue from a Ground as other Herbs doth; my Reaſon is, Becauſe it doth not grow ſo faſt, and ſo by Conſequence not draw ſo much virtue from the Place where it grows; and in caſe it do begger or barren a Place where it grows, it comes to paſs by its long ſtanding compleat and handſome, which is a part of its excellency; it being the moſt durable of any kind of Herb wherewith Knots are made; but to prevent, or rather amend the Inconveniences that ſeem to follow by the running of its Roots into your Knot, which any other Herb doth more, by how much other Herbs do grow more than Box; the remedy is, with a Knife or piece of an old Sithe once in two Years to cut the Root down cloſe to the Box on the inſide of your Knot, and then, if need be, to new flouriſh your Work with a little freſh Mould; alſo take notice, that often cutting of either Box or any other Herb, is a means to prevent the much running of the Roots into your Knot, the ſame reaſon is for Hedges or Borders.

So having given you as it were a taſte of what I could have multiplied very much, if I had thought it neceſſary, I proceed; and as for the making of any of theſe on the Ground, I ſhall ſay nothing, but only that you would be careful ſo to fit your

Work to your Ground, that it may lie pleaſant and ſuitable, not too thick, but ſo as there may be convenient room to paſs to every part of your Work; alſo convenient room for what you ſhall plant, that it may not ſmother or hide any part of your Work that might yield Delight, neither that you make your Work ſo ſpacious, but that you may have it pleaſantly in your Eye at a View: Let not your Walks be too little, neither too big, like a ſmall City with over large Gates. And now I will proceed to ſome eaſie and plain Directions, very uſeful for a Learner, how to level and bring a Garden into ſome Order and Form. In the firſt place, you are to provide, ſo as to make your Borders good either with Dung or good Earth, or both, that ſo your Trees or Flowers, or both, may thrive the better, and your Fruit be the fairer; but as for that part of your Ground where your Walks are to be, it matters not how Barren, Chalky, Gravelly or Stony they be, ſo that you be careful to pick out all ſorts of Weeds that are not eaſily cleanſed or deſtroyed by ordinary hand Weeding, as Twitch, Nettle, Dandelion, *&c.* otherwiſe they may prove a perpetual Trouble to you, beſides the charge of often weeding; ſo likewiſe if you make Graſs-Plots, it matters not how barren or poor the ground is, ſo it be not either very ſtony or barren Gravel, which uſually ſtarves any thing that grows on it, if the Weather be but a little dry; but uſually Graſs grows faſter in Gardens, than moſt Gardners would have it; but if you intend your Plots for Flowers or Herbs, let your ground be good and well cleanſed; but if for Flowers chiefly, then a ſupply of Earth from your Kitchin-Garden is beſt, and ſupply your Kitchin-Garden with Dung, your Herbage wil be the better.

Now for the manner of going about to put your Garden into Form, it is as followeth. Firſt you are to provide a quantity of handſome ſtreight Stakes, about four or five Foot long, being ſharpened at one end, and then about two Foot and a half from the Wall or Fence where the Border is to be made, range a Line, and then by your Line pitch down a couple of Stakes, of ſuch a length as your Level will well reach to level the tops of them exactly; let them ſtand faſt in the Ground, and then in the ſame ſtraight range drive down another Stake about a Pole or two from your firſt, the which by your Eye you may level with your firſt Stakes, having one, whilſt you eye your Stakes, either to raiſe or drive your Stakes lower as you ſhall appoint, until it be exact, and then you may proceed as before, as occaſion requires,

until you have ſtaked out all your Borders by your Wall, or outſide Fence; and then you are to proceed to the other part of your Ground, firſt meaſuring the breadth you intend for your Walk round your Plot, or outmoſt Walk, and then at ſome ſpecial corner of your intended next Border or Quarter: Having ranged your Line the length of your Ground, and caſt out your Walk, pitch down a Stake exactly at the corner of your quarter, and level it with one of your firſt Stakes, and then a ſecond in the ſame ſtraight Line, of the ſame height or level with the firſt, and ſo proceed the whole length, pitching in a Stake at every ſpecial corner of your Work, which will be a ſtanding Rule to you, not only for the level of your Ground, but alſo for the exact carrying off your Quarters ſquare or equal; and having levelled as many Stakes as you think is ſufficient for every part of your Ground, go to your firſt Stake, and conſider what height you are to carry your Ground at, either as it will maintain of it ſelf, or as the Conveniences you have to that purpoſe will bear, being careful that you do not raiſe your Ground ſo as to obſtruct your Doorways or comings in, *&c.* and having conſidered your height, make a Notch on your Stake quite round at the height you intend to carry your Level, and then with a Stick or Rule meaſure from the top of your Stake, to the Notch or Mark you made; and according to that Meaſure go and notch or mark all your Stakes, or as many as you think fit, from the top downward, and where the Mark falls to be, is the level or height you propounded; ſo that after you have marked your Stakes, if you think upon due Conſideration that you have reſolved either too high or too low, you may accordingly propound another height, and being reſolved, it is but faſtening a Line about the Notch of one Stake, and faſtening it tite about the Notch of another, and by it, if you cannot do without it, you may carry on your Work level; but in caſe you would not have your ground of a plain level, to the end that any fall of Water may not ſettle, or be apt to ſtand, to the annoyance of your Garden, or that the Nature of your Plot be ſuch as you cannot make a flat level with Convenience, then you may on the ſame Stakes ſo pitched and levelled as before, allow what Fall you think fit for your turn, that if you allow a Foot more or leſs, at the utmoſt end or ſide of your Ground, then half ſo much in the middle, *&c.* conſidering, that if your Ground be of any large extent, you muſt allow a greater Fall for the purpoſe aforeſaid; yet conſidering that too

great

great a Fall may be as prejudicial as too little, *&c.* or if this way ſeem too troubleſome, then you may take a couple of Stakes, and according to your former Order by a Line, pitch in one at the hither end, and another at the fartheſt end of your Ground, and let them be both of a ſuitable height above the Ground or level you propound at each particular end; and then between thoſe two firſt Stakes pitch in a third, levelling it with the two former by your Eye, and ſo as many as you ſee convenient in order as aforeſaid, and then meaſuring from the top of your firſt Stake to the height you intend after the manner aforeſaid; by which means you may carry a true Falling or Hanging level more or leſs, as occaſion requires, either raiſing or abating, as need requires; and although you carry the length of your Ground upon a falling level, yet you may carry every particular range of Stakes overthwart or croſs your Ground on a plum or flat level, after your firſt hanging range is pitched; by which particular Stakes you are to level your overthwart Ranges, yet ſo as handſomely to ſuit and anſwer the natural fall or level propounded.

By this way of levelling you may eaſily find how or which way to bring or carry any Water-courſe from place to place.

In the next place you are to proceed to the digging and orderly finiſhing of your Ground, begining firſt with your Borders, exactly breaking the Clods, if occaſion requires; alſo carefully picking out all ſuch Weeds as will not be kill'd in the burying, laying your Ground level and orderly; and having digged your Borders, to rake them exactly according to the level of your Ground, and then range your Line, allowing what breadth you think fit or convenient, withal allowing a matter of two Inches, or thereabout, of Mould on the outſide of your Line to tread or beat in juſt even by your Line, to the end your Borders may lie faſt and handſome, and not be too apt to moulder down; and then to ſet the Edges of your Borders cloſe and handſome on the inſide of your Line, either with Pinks, Violets or any other thing you think fit, that keeps always green; and having ſet your Range quite through, cloſe the Mould to your Herbs firſt on the inſide of your Border, with the edge of a Tile, or the like, making as it were a little Gutter, in which you are to pour your Water when you water your Herbs, which ought always to be as ſoon as you have done ſetting, except in a very wet time, and then, if not before, to clap the ſide of your Border with the back of your Spade; but if you deſire to edge your Borders with Turf, be

ſure

ſure it be not a twichy kind of Turf, for that will be a continual plague to your Walks and Borders; or you may ſow the edges of your Borders with Pink-Seed, firſt making a Trail or Gutter ſtraight and even on the inſide of your Line, and therein ſow your Seed as equal as you can, covering it with the ſame, or other fine Mould.

After you have finiſhed your utmoſt Borders, you are to proceed to the finiſhing of your other Borders and Quarters with the like diligence aforeſaid; as to their levelling, breaking of Clods, and picking out of ſuch Weeds as may prove offenſive; and if you intend your Quarters for Knots or Graſs, you are to rake your Ground as you go, that is, when you have digged a little, to rake it level, and then dig a little farther, and rake again, and ſo continue until you have finiſhed your Quarters; but in caſe your Ground be fine Sand or the like, you may forbear raking until afterwards, as you ſhall hear anon, ſo as you lay it very level in your digging; alſo if your Ground be ſo ſmall that you can reach to the middle with your Rake; then your beſt way and ſpeedieſt is to make an end of digging firſt, and then rake it exactly: And having proceeded thus far, whether you intend your Plot for Graſs or Knots, you are to tread it all over alike, and then rake it again, and by ſo doing your Plot will ſettle in every place alike, which other wiſe will ſcarce do, and then you may proceed to the perfecting of your intended Work; and if you make Graſs-Plots, and do not lay Turf, but ſow them, then your beſt way is after you have levelled the Ground to ſow it pretty thick all over, and then to tread it in every place alike, and then rake it over, and then ſow it a ſecond time, treading it and raking it handſomely over again, and in ſo doing the Graſs will come up ſo thick and handſomely as the Weeds will not eaſily get the maſtery, as ſometimes it doth when it is ſown too thin; yet nevertheleſs if any Docks or other great Weeds come up amongſt your Graſs, you are to weed them clean out, and then by timely and often cutting your Graſs it will grow thick and pleaſant; the truth is, if Graſs be not cut once in a Fortnight at leaſt in the growing time of the Year, it will not be handſome; beſides its aptneſs to ſeed, and thereby ſpoiling the Beauty and Handſomeneſs of your Walks or Border.

After you have finiſhed your Borders, Knots, or Quarters, as occaſion ſerves, then you are to make your Walks, firſt pitching a range of Stakes juſt in the middle, only about a Pole or more

aſunder,

aſunder, after the manner you were taught before, and according to the nature of the Level; but in caſe your Walks are very wide, then you are to have three Ranges of Stakes for the more exact laying of your Walks, but do not make the Fall on each ſide of your Walk too great or ſharp, but rather a fine, almoſt undiſcernable Fall, except your ground be very apt to lie wet, ſo great a fall is both unhandſome and uneaſie, for ſuch as wear high-heel'd Shooes; after you have ſtaked your Walk, or before, you are to dig and level your Walk with its own Earth or Gravel: but in caſe the Earth lie too high, or be too good, it will be your beſt way to carry ſome of it away for a better uſe, than only to walk on, and in the room thereof to bring or lay either Gravel or Chalk, or the like, and when you have rough levelled your Walk, let it be well trodden or beat, that it may not ſettle unequally, after you have finiſhed; and then having rough levelled as aforeſaid, then lay on your fine Gravel, if you have two Sorts, and remember that if you lay your fine Gravel of a good conſiderable Thickneſs, you may once a Yeare, or once in two Years, new break over your Walks, and flouriſh them over with a little or no charge, whereby your Walks will be as new again. The order of laying your Walks is firſt to ſpread and lay your Gravel as it ought to lie, and then to tread it all over alike and then to rake it again, and then with a Bearer made of a piece of Plank, to ſettle it all over, not bringing your Rowl upon your Walk until it be well ſettled, except it be a light wooden Rowl, leaſt you cauſe your Walks to lie in whamps; and after you have rowled your Walks once or twice in a place at length, it will be a good way to rowl them over-thwart with your light Rowl, your Walks will ſhape the better; alſo in caſe the Weather be very dry, it will be a good way after you have ſhaped your Walks, to water them well with a watering Pot, and then when they are ſo dryed, as that you may walk on them, you may beat or rowl them as you ſee cauſe.

Take notice, that if your Gravel be of a very lean nature, and have no earthy Subſtance to cauſe it to bind, you may amend that Fault by mixing a quantity of ſhort Lome or Clay equally amongſt your Gravel, but be careful you do not put too much, leſt you make a worſe Fault, therefore uſe the mean; much more might be ſaid as to the making of Walks, as to the prevention of Worms caſting, for which ſome uſe ſtore of Salt or Soot, and alſo for prevention of Moſs, *&c.* but being ſtraightned for want of time, let this ſuffice.

The

The fitteſt and moſt convenient Seaſon for making of Gardens and Walks, is the Spring, it being uſually the moſt temperate and ſubtilleſt Seaſon both for ſetting of Herbs and Flowers, as likewiſe for the making of Walks, there being oft a fine intermixture of Showers and warm Weather, as well as dry; but in caſe your Grcund where you would erect a Garden be very much out of order, either being very much over-run with bad ſorts of Weeds, as Nettles, Twitch, *&c.* which cannot be deſtroyed with once or twice digging, or if very unequal and out of level, ſo that it requires much raiſing in ſome Places, and abatement in other Places, whereby it will be apt to ſettle unequally, and cannot be ſo ordered on a ſudden, as to continue handſome and level any conſiderable time: I ſay, in ſuch caſes, it will be your beſt way to cleanſe and level in the Winter before, at leaſt before you intend to make a Garden; but it would be much the better to give it one Years Husbandry, and then you may crop it with ſome ſort of Herbage, either Peaſe or Beans, and a crop of Turnips after them, taking the firſt Opportunity, that ſo they may be got off in good time, and ſo by twice or thrice ſtirring of your Ground in one Year, being careful to cleanſe and level it at each ſtirring, as occaſion requires, it will be the fitter and readier, and in better caſe to plant any Trees, and much eaſier to make your Garden ſo as to continue handſome the longer; and beſides you have the Seaſon of planting before you, whereby you may finiſh that Work beforehand, and not deface or ſlubber your Garden after it is finiſhed.

The next thing conſiderable, is the Seaſons for the increaſing and planting of the divers varieties of Herbs and Flowers, for the furniſhing of the Garden of Pleaſure: And firſt I will begin with thoſe ſort commonly call'd Bulbo's or Onions rooted Flowers, ſomething as to the Shape of Onions, ſuch as Tulips, Crocus, Daffodils, *&c.* and although all or the moſt of them are ordinary, and may be taken up in the Spring and planted, both before and in their flowering, and do pretty well if done carefully and ſpeedily; yet it is not the ſureſt and moſt proper Seaſon for any of them that have ſuch kinds of Roots, and therefore I would adviſe every one, if they may, to take another Seaſon for the removing of them, eſpecially if they be of ſuch ſorts as they make any ſpecial account of; for many times a Year or two is loſt by removing in the Spring, and ſometimes the Root is very tender, except they be taken up with Mould cleaving to the Root; and

therefore take this general Rule for all ſuch kinds of Flowers ſo rooted, as I ſaid before, that when the Flower is faded, and the Leaves of the Plant withered, you may take them up without any Prejudice to them, and ſo much the ſooner if you prevent its ſeeding, by gathering it or cutting off the Stalk when the Beauty of the Flower is paſt; the ſure Seaſons are *June*, *July*, and *Auguſt*, but if you ſtay until *Semptember*, they then begin to take new root againſt another Year, and then your Seaſon is not good for the purpoſe, but rather a hindrance. By what hath been ſaid, you may eaſily obſerve, that ſome ſorts may be removed a Month or more before others of like Nature, according to the early or late flowring of them; as likewiſe according to the Temper of the Weather or Seaſon; for in a hot and dry time Flowers blow quick, and ſhed accordingly, whereas a more cool and moiſt Seaſon cauſeth Flowers not only to continue longer in Flower, but alſo to be fairer in moſt ſorts, except they be of a very tender Nature; having taken up any of theſe ſorts of Flowers we are ſpeaking of, if you have any Intention of keeping them any time out of the Ground, which you may do to many of them for five or ſix Months, and ſometimes more, without hurt to them, if occaſion require; you are firſt to lay them in the Sun, or in ſome Window where they may dry, leſt being wet or damp, they ſhould mould, or root, or occaſion their Springing before you are willing, which by taking wet, or lying in a damp Place, comes to paſs ſometimes, and are ſometimes ſpoiled: But if your Roots are of a more hollow or ſpungy Nature, as Frittilaria's, and ſome ſorts of Hiacynths, *&c.* which will wilk, or be limber, or ſhrivel if kept a little too long out of the Ground; for ſuch ſorts, as alſo the Roots of Ranunculo's, if you be neceſſitated to keep them out of the Ground over-long, to mix with them ſome fine dry Sand, which will keep them very well a conſiderable time, but you muſt not keep them in a Place that is damp, or ſubject to moiſture, leaſt they either ſpring or do worſe.

What I have ſaid concerning the aforeſaid ſorts, you may obſerve in ſome meaſure in the Roots of Lilies and Martagons, ſuch Roots as are ſcail, but if neceſſary occaſion cauſe you not to keep your Flower Roots out of the Ground, then it will be your beſt and ſureſt Courſe to ſet them again as ſoon as you may conveniently; whereby the occaſioning of ſpoiling their ſeaſonable and handſome flowring, as alſo there the hindering of their encreaſe is prevented, which ſometimes happeneth by the too long keeping them

them out of the Ground, beſides other Caſualties ; you ſhall oft find that divers ſorts being kept long out of the Ground, will begin to put out new Roots or Fibres; if you perceive it, get ſuch into the Ground as ſoon as you can, for then they are more apt to ſpoil than before. In the planting or ſetting of your Tulips, let the Earth be at leaſt an Inch above the top of the Root.

The next thing to be conſidered, is the way of encreaſing theſe ſorts of Flowers, and that is either by the ſowing of their Seed, or by off-ſets that encreaſe from the Roots of bearing Plants, which being taken off in due Seaſon as aforeſaid, and planted in a Ground made hollow and good, will in two or three Years become bearing Roots, but be careful you ſet not your Roots in Dung, leſt they rot; as for the off-ſets of the Crown Imperial, and Perſian Lily, their off-ſets are a great while before they come to bear Flowers.

Lilies and Martagons are encreaſed by the Scales taken off from the lower part of the Root, beſides what encreaſe it makes of it ſelf by off-ſets, which in time will come to bear Flowers like the Mother-plant; let your Ground be good, and pretty free from Stones, your Flowers will thrive the better, and make the more encreaſe, and in caſe you uſe Dung about your Flowers, be ſure it be very well rotted and converted to Mould, and then being well mixed with your Earth, will do better than uſed alone, for Dung is more apt to dry and ſhrink in hot and dry Weather, and apt to ſtarve a Plant, if not ſupplied with moiſture.

As for the ſowing of theſe ſorts of Bulbous rooted Flowers, it is generally ſo ſoon as your Seed is full ripe, or at leaſt about *September*; but there is a great deal of odds in the time of their coming to Perfection, for Frittillaria's, and Hiacynths, and Crocus, comes to the flowering before Tulips, Crown Imperial, and Martagons; the moſt frugal way of ſowing of them, is in Pots or Boxes made for the purpoſe, being fill'd with very good ſifted Mould; do not ſow your Seed too thick, cover it about an Inch deep, or thereabout, let their Situation be pretty temperate, and after they are two Years growth or more, you may take them up and plant them in ſome thinner order, take them up when they have done growing as aforeſaid: Take notice that Tulips are more apt to run down deep into the Ground than any other ſort, and therefore to be more often taken up than other ſort of Bulbous-Plants; your care muſt be to keep them clean from Weeds, upon all Occaſions, as need requires.

The next ſort to be ſpoke to is, Eminies or Anemonies, which is of that ſort of Plant called Tuberous-rooted.

Theſe ſorts of Flowers likewiſe are, and may be taken up in the Spring or Flowring time, and may be with leſs Prejudice than many other. Bulbous Plants, as being apt to draw new Root quickly, whereas Tulips are not ſo apt, but yet the beſt Seaſon is (as I ſaid of the foregoing Sorts) when the Leaves are withered, and their ſpringing Seaſon is over, which is uſually from the beginning of *June* to the end of *July*, and ſomtimes later in caſe the Weather continue dry; but when the Weather grows cool and moiſt, they begin to take new root again, and then it is not ſo ſeaſonable to ſtir them, eſpecially to keep dry out of the Ground; whereas thoſe taken up, as aforeſaid, and dried a time in the Sun, may be kept ſound and well near a Year, eſpecially if the Roots have any conſiderable Subſtance; but if, as I ſaid of the foregoing ſort, they lie damp, or take wet, they are liable to Spoil or Loſs; they are encreaſed by parting their Roots, either in their growing Seaſon, or when they are taken up afterwards; every little Crum being apt to grow, if they be not too much wither'd or dry'd: Alſo they are encreaſed by the ſowing of their Seed, which the ſingle ſort afford pretty well (but not the double that I know of) whereby many Varieties are raiſed; if you deſire to make encreaſe by ſowing, you are to take notice of your Seed when it groweth near ripe, which you may know by its parting a little near the Stalk, ſo that in a little time after it will be fit to gather, otherwiſe the Wind will quickly blow it away with the Down in which it is wrapt; and being ripe, and pretty well dried, you are to part it, and gently rub it between your Hands with a little dry Sand, the better to ſeperate it, and then to ſow it in ſome Pots or Boxes for the purpoſe, in ſome very fine ſifted Mould, if you add a little fine willow Mould with your Earth, I think it will be the better; do not ſow your Seed over thick, and then cover it about an Inch deep with the like fine Mould; the moſt gainful Seaſon to ſow it in, is as ſoon as it is ripe; let the Situation be rather Shade than Sun, let them be kept moderate moiſt; you may likewiſe ſow your Seed in the Spring; if your Seed be ſown pretty forward, and the Earth and Situation very ſuitable; they may be forward enough to prick out in ſome thinner order, time enough to get ſtrength before the Winter following; but if you are not forward enough, then you muſt take the Spring, you muſt take ſome care of them in caſe of hard Weather; for I have known

known many miſcarry in a hard or ſharp Winter: The Seaſon to plant your bearing Roots that were taken up in their fit Seaſon is in *Auguſt* or *September*, ſome of them may Flower before, or in the Winter, if the Weather be any thing temperate, but chiefly forward in the Spring; but if you keep ſome of your Roots, and plant ſome in *February*, if Weather permit, and ſome in *March* or *April*, you ſhall have them Flower in ſeveral Seaſons, according as you planted them, only remember that thoſe you plant to Flower in the more hot Seaſon, let their Situation be ſuch as not to be too much in the Sun; for the truth is, their natural Seaſon is the Spring, which is commonly pretty temperate, and therefore the more temperate, the more agreeable to their Nature, and in ſo doing you may enjoy the Pleaſure of their Beauties the longer: Again,

Set not your Eminy Roots too deep, neither in wet nor ſtrong cool Ground, leſt they ſhould rot, eſpecially the more tender or delicate ſorts, being ſet about an Inch or Two at the moſt is ſufficient in the moſt temperate Ground; do not water your more choice Kinds until they begin to ſpring, except in hot and dry Weather, yet ſome in caſe of late planting, in caſe their Roots are very dry, do put them into Water to plump, which in ſuch a caſe cannot hurt them.

Again, if your Eminies be of choice Sorts, truſt not the Winter with them, but rather keep them until the beginning of *March*, except you plant them in Pots, *&c.* then you may begin with them ſooner, by houſing your Pots until they have taken new Root.

Of thoſe Flowers call'd Fibres, or ſtringy rooted Plants.

THeſe ſorts of Plants do much differ in their Uſage or Husbandry from the former, eſpecially Tulips, *&c.* and are moſt ſeaſonably to be taken up to be parted, ſlipt, laid, and planted in the Spring, and moſt of them in their flowring with very little Prejudice as to their well-being, and indeed the moſt of them may with a little Care and Diligence be removed and ſlipt from *March* until *Bartholomew-tide*, eſpecially if you take notice of thoſe Directions concerning the ordering of ſmall Herbs, in that part that treateth of the ordering of the Kitchin-Garden; only take Notice, that thoſe ſorts that run up very much and forward into Spindles for Flowers, would be dealt withal ſomething the earlier, or

after

after their chief flowering is over, and be ſure that what Seaſon ſoever you take, be careful to keep your Slips or Plants pretty moiſt, until they have taken root at leaſt; alſo take Notice, that for ſuch things as ordinarily endure Winter, and are hardy, as Pinks, Violets, and many others; for ſuch you may begin in *February* to ſet them, as I have often, whereby they have gained ſo good rooting, that the trouble of watering of them hath been ſaved.

Of Carnations and Gillyflowers, and their ordering.

AND firſt of the ſowing of their Seed, from whence ariſeth very many Varieties, according to the Goodneſs of the Seed ſown, and nature of the Air in which they are ſown; and indeed few will believe the different Inclination of one and the ſame ſort of Seed, being ſown in the ſame Ground where it was ſaved, and of the ſame ſort in a contrary Air and Ground; the Obſervation I will leave to each Practitioner; and to the end you may have good Varieties, your Care muſt be to get or ſave ſuch as come from good double Flowers, or elſe it will hardly be worth your Labour to ſow and plant them: Having procured ſome Seed, you are to prepare a Bed, which ought to be both rich and well prepared, and in a temperate Situation; do not ſow your Seed very thick, and then cover it about an Inch deep or leſs with fine Mould, or you may ſpittle it in with your Spade; or you may ſow it in Trails, but not very thick; or, which is a more ſaving way, you may ſow it in ſome old half Tubs, or Boxes for the purpoſe, and be careful to keep them clean weeded and watered if occaſion require, and when your Plants are about Two or Three Inches high, you may take them up and plant them in ſome thinner order, giving them ſome Water at the planting, and afterwards, until they have taken new root, and in caſe they have been ſown very thick, you muſt begin the ſooner to plant them out, but if they are too ſmall to plant out on Beds, then it were good to prick them out in ſuch like things as I named, that is, Tubs, *&c.* If you remove whilſt they are very ſmall, you may ſet them the nearer together, and take up every other Plant afterwards when they are better grown, they may ſtand about half a Foot aſunder or thereabout, where they may grow until you ſee what Varieties you ſhall have, and then you may take them up with ſome Earth with them, and plant them where you would have them Flower, not forgetting to water them at their firſt planting;

ting; the Seaſon to ſow them, is any time from the latter end of *February* to *Midſummer*, or a little later; they are pretty hardy, but being ſown pretty timely in the Spring, they will be large rooted againſt the time of flowring, and accordingly will yield more Flowers, or more Branches, or Slips to encreaſe by laying, which is the only ſure way to encreaſe from ſeeding, eſpecially ſometimes they will flower the ſame Summer or *Autumn*, if ſown very timely.

Theſe ſorts of Flowers are likewiſe encreaſed both by ſlipping, and by laying, but laying is abundantly the ſureſt way. But firſt, I will ſpeak of the ſetting of their ſlips. And firſt you are to prepare a Bed, which ought to be of very fine and rich Mould, and ſo ſituated, or at leaſt ſuch Proviſion made, that the Sun come not at them until they are rooted, otherwiſe one half Day's Sun may ſpoil your Labours, and fruſtrate your Expectation, eſpecially if ſet any thing forward whilſt the Sun hath any conſiderable Strength; the manner of ſlipping is as followeth: Make choice of ſuch Slips as are pretty ſtrong, not ſuch as are ſmall, weak, under Slips, if you may have better; neither ſuch as have divers ſmall Slips on them, but yet even ſuch being ſet very timely in the Spring, do often thrive well enough, as I ſaid; let your Slips be one entire Branch, and not ſpindled, the which you are to cut off cloſe to the Body or Arm of the old Root, if ſhort, otherwiſe you may leave Two or Three Joints, the which may ſpring out again; then take your Slip and trim off ſome of the lower Leaves, not leaving your Slip with too great or buſled top, and then top the other Leaves even, and then cut your Slip even at the bottom of a Joint; and if it be pretty ſtrong, you may ſlit it up to the next Joint or higher, if the Joints be thick or near together; and then if you will throw them into a pail of Water for an Hour or Two, and then you may ſet them, having firſt put a little Earth or Clay to keep the Slip open; but if your Slip be weak, you may forbear ſlitting it, and then ſet them pretty near together, but not very deep, to ſmother the ſprout Blade, and then water them well, keeping them moiſt, not ſuffering the Sun to come at them until they be rooted; and then, but by little and little, yet giving them Air as much as may be without Sun, and when they are pretty well rooted, you may gently raiſe them or cut them out with a little Mould, abiding to each root, and then plant them where you would have them grow, not forgetting to water them at their firſt planting at leaſt:

Take

Take notice, that but few of thoſe Flowers commonly raiſed of Seed, are apt to grow of Slips, in compariſon of thoſe ſorts of old Flowers call'd Cloves, Carnations, Dovers, and ſome others; and therefore it will be your beſt way to propagate them, and all other ſorts of choice Gillyflowers, by laying; the order and manner whereof followeth, only take notice, that the Seaſon for ſetting Slips, is any time from *March* until *Bartholomew-tide*, if your Roots will afford ſuch Slips I ſpeak of; but the chief Seaſon is *June*, *July*, and *Auguſt*. Now the end of laying, is that your ſlips may take root before you cut them off from their Mother-Plant, the manner is thus: Take the Branch or Slip you deſire to encreaſe or lay, and with a ſharp Pen-knife cut off ſome of the under Leaves, at leaſt ſo many as are any way troubleſome as to the performance of your Work, then make choice of that Joint that is moſt convenient either to lay down into the Ground, or in a lay-Pot, *&c.* and then with your Knife, beginning a little below the Joint or the under-ſide of it, cut it upward with a ſlit to the next Joint above, or more if the Joints be very near together; alſo if your Layer be ſtiff and not pliable, it will be beſt to ſlit it the more; ſlit it in the middle, yet ſo as your Layer may have convenient Subſtance; as likewiſe that part that is to feed it; then cut that end of your Layer where you begin to ſlit it, juſt at the bottom of the Joint where it is to take its root, and then with a piece of its Leaf, or a little Earth, *&c.* you may cauſe the Slit to keep open. And laſtly, if it lie near the Ground, which ought to be made looſe or hollow, you may bend down your Layer, and with a hooked Stick thruſt into the Ground, keep your Layer in its place, laying about an Inch thickneſs of fine Mould upon it, about the place where it was laid, and then ſprinkle a little Water on it at firſt laying, and afterward in caſe it grow dry; and in caſe your Layer grow ſo high you cannot bring it to the Ground, then you may make proviſion either with lay-Pots, of which there are divers made on purpoſe, with a Slit or Notch on the ſide, the better to let your Layer into the middle of your Pot or other convenience to like purpoſe; being filled half full of Mould at firſt, and then with a piece of Leather or Hat paring, to keep your Layer down, you may fill your Pot up with Mould, and water it as occaſion requires; ſome cut the top of their Layer at firſt, and ſome do not, the matter is not much, and by this means you may quickly make a conſiderable encreaſe of your Gillyflowers; the time of their taking root,

ſufficient

ſufficient to plant out is ſomething different, for ſome ſorts will be forwarder in rooting in three Weeks or a Month, than others will in twice the time. I may ſay the like of the Seaſon or Weather, therefore if you ſee your Layer thriving and luſty, you may open the Earth a little gently near where it was laid, and you may eaſily be ſatisfied whether it be ſufficient to cut off, and tranſplant; your Layers being rooted, you may with the back of your Knife do away a little of the Earth, a little above the Place where it was laid, and cut it off, raiſing it up with its Mould with care, leaſt the weight thereof ſhould tear off the Root from your Layer, then with your Knife cut off that little remnant Piece that remains near the Root of your Layer, either cloſe by the Root, or elſe cut it off at a Joint, that it may likewiſe take root, otherwiſe it may rot and prove prejudicial to your Plant, and then you may plant your Layer either on convenient Beds or Pots, as you think fit, remembring, as I oft admoniſh, to water and ſhadow at firſt planting, if occaſion require; the Seaſon to lay Flowers is, and may be, from the beginning of *March* until *Michaelmas* if your Roots have ſufficient Branches for the purpoſe; it is beſt laying hold on the firſt and moſt ſeaſonable Opportunity, by ſo doing you occaſion your old Root to make a farther Improvement, beſides the Advantage you have in the forwardneſs of your young Roots.

Very much more might be ſaid concerning theſe kinds of Flowers, as to their Advancement and preſervation; as alſo concerning the Artificial repairing and mixture of Earths, tending to the aforeſaid end. But I ſhall ſay but little more than this, that a good midling tempered Mould or Earth that is freſh, and hath not been uſed in and about Plants of a like Nature or Temper is naturally beſt; for it is an unqueſtionable Truth, that ſeveral kinds of Plants draw ſeveral ſorts of Juice or Nouriſhment from the Earth, even that which is moſt natural to them, as is commonly to be obſerved amongſt Huſbandmen in changing their Crops upon one and the ſame Ground, being freſh and good for one ſort of Grain, and not for another ſort that grew on the ſame Ground the Year before, except in caſe the Ground be new, and in very good heart, and thereupon may bring one ſort of crop Two Years together; but if you think your Earth be not quick enough, or otherwiſe defective, there are ſeveral ſorts of Earth or mixture eaſily to be had to amend the defect; as in caſe it be too heavy or cloggy, fine Sand, with a little willow Mould,

or Lime Rubbiſh of old Walls, *&c.* and ſo on the contrary, as need requires; many good Flowriſts make uſe of a little willow Mould to ſtrew in the Hole where they ſet their Flowers, to draw Root the quicker; overmuch may do harm, in cauſing your Flowers to be ſomewhat the more apt to Canker, *&c.* another thing to be taken notice of concerning theſe Flowers, is their Situation, which tendeth much to their Advancement, as to the continuing them longer in their Beauty, and more large and ſtately in their Flower; and this is only by ſetting them where the Sun hath not much power, as in ſome places where Trees keep off the violence of the Sun, or by planting them where they may not have above a quarter Sun, and that in the moſt temperate time of the Day; and this is one of the chiefeſt ends of ſetting Flowers in Pots, becauſe they may ſo eaſily be removed from one place to another, as the Weather or time of the Year requires, for the Sun haſtens Flowers to Perfection, cauſing them quickly to flower, and quickly to fade, and ſo to perfect their Seed; alſo in caſe of much Rain, it is good either to remove your Pots of Flowers under ſome ſhade, or to lay them ſide-ways on the Ground; and although much wet be an Enemy to choice Flowers, yet convenient moiſture is ſo neceſſary, as without it the Earth cannot give Life and Vigour to your Plants.

Again, for my part, when I have principal reſpect to the encreaſe and improvement of my Plants; I do not love to confine them within the bounds of a Pot, but rather plant them in ſome indifferent temperate Situation, where they may not be ſubject to any Extreams.

Another thing practiced amongſt thoſe that delight in the fairneſs and trim growing of their Flowers, is pretty timely to crop off divers of the Spindles from their Plants, in caſe many do ſhoot forth, as in ſome ſorts there do; as alſo divers of their Buds for Flowers whilſt very young, leaving but a few, to the end they may be the larger.

Alſo for thoſe that are apt to break the Pod too much up one ſide; you are for the more handſome and graceful blowing of your Flowers, before they are too much crackt, to open the Pods a little equally on each ſide, yet ſo as not to bruiſe or deface the Flower in the Bud; alſo beſides the opening of the Pod, ſome uſe to wrap about them a thing called Ox-gut, which being a little wet, will ſtick and keep the Flower from breaking; others uſe other things, though not ſo handſome, as the Bark of Aſhen

Stick

Stick wrung off, being green and ſappy, and cut into ſeveral Rings as it were, which ſerve to keep their Flower Pods in handſome order; ſome only tie them, either with Baſs, Thread or Yarn; others in time convenient ſave the Weſand-Pipe of great Fowls, as Geeſe, *&c.* and being cut into ſeveral Rings, ſerve to put over the Pods of the Flowers, thereby cauſing them to blow round and handſome.

Alſo amongſt the ſeveral Inconveniences that *July* Flowers are ſubject to in their flowring, Earwigs are not the leaſt; for in little time, if not prevented, they will deface and put an end to the Beauty of your Flowers, by eating the ſweet ends of the Leaves of the Bloſſom; and are likewiſe deſtructive to their Seed, if not deſtroyed in time; for prevention whereof, you are to ſtick up divers Sticks near your Flower Roots, and upon them to hang or faſten either ſome hollow Canes or Kicks, or the Hoofs of Cattle, into which things they will creep for ſhelter, and then every Morning at leaſt, to take them off, and knock them on the Ground, and deſtroy them with your Foot ſomany as you ſee; and then put thoſe things in their places again, not neglecting to do ſo every Day, once at leaſt; ſome have uſed other means for prevention of theſe kinds of Creatures, as the ſetting their Pots in ſome ſhallow things that would hold Water, whereby theſe Vermin could not come to their Flowers, but through the Water; other Inconveniences do happen to ſome, whereof I have ſpoken already; but let this ſuffice for the preſent.

Of the ordering and encreaſing of Auricula's, Bears-Ear (or as ſome call them) French-Cowſlips.

BEcauſe of the great reſpect that this pretty ſort of Flower hath, by reaſon of the abundant Varieties of Colours it is apt to run into by ſowing of the Seed, I ſhall ſet down a little concerning its encreaſe; and firſt of the ſowing of the Seed, the which is not altogether ſo hard to get; I mean ſuch as is apteſt to bring good Varieties, as heretofore; for now, not only Dutch and Walloon Flowrifts, which were the moſt diligent Savers and Sowers whereof, but divers of our Engliſh Flowriſts and Gardners, do ſave and ſow, and raiſe great encreaſe thereof, and therefore the eaſier to procure; and being furniſhed therewith, you are according to your quantity to provide either ſome Brand-Pan like a Milk-Pan, or Flower-Pots, or any the like convenient thing (for you are not to ſow it on Beds as other ſorts of Seed are, or may)

may) then you are to fill your Pan, or like Proviſion, with ſuch rotten Earth or Mould, as is to be found in old decayed Willows; let it be ſifted, eſpecially the uppermoſt of it, and thereon ſow your Seed not over thick, for that will prove ſome loſs if your Seed be good; then cover it with ſome of the like ſifted Mould about half an Inch; let your Situation be temperate, rather Shade than Sun, eſpecially in the Spring. The Seaſons are from the midſt of *September*, to the middle of *November*, at which Seaſons I have had it come very well; you are to take ſome care of them in the Spring, being apt to be ſpewed or raiſed out of the Ground, eſpecially by ſmall Froſts hollowing the Earth: Indeed it is a plant of ſhallow rooting, that it is very apt, though pretty well grown, to be turned out of the Ground; and therefore we find that they do beſt hold and encreaſe, being planted in a pretty ſoft kind of Ground, otherwiſe a Place that hath but little Sun, for they are ordinarily hardy enough as to cold; ſometimes by ſowing too late or too dry, or over deep covered the Seed, will lie until the ſecond Seaſon before it appears; but being ſown in fit Seaſon and Order, accordingly it will come up about Seven Months after; you may very much preſerve your youg plants in the Spring, by covering them conveniently with Baſs Mats, both from the Sun, and Froſty Mornings, let them have ſeaſonable Moiſture, as occaſion requires; and when your Plants are about the breadth of a Penny, you may prick them out in Pots, or other the like convenient things, until they have got more Strength to be planted on convenient Beds, the which you are to trench with either new Cow-dung or other new Dung, whereby the Worms will not be ſo apt to turn them out, until they have got ſome convenient hold in the Ground; in ſome ſorts of Ground, they will not thrive unleſs they be ſet in Pots, and have convenient Air, but little Sun, and that temperate; your old Roots muſt be new earthed or moulded once a Year at leaſt, they are ſo apt to work out of Ground; if you do plant in Pots, as moſt do their choiceſt, you are to fill your Pot half full of good rotten Cow-Dung, whereby your Flowers will be fair, and not ſtarve in ſuch narrow Bounds; let them not want convenient watering; they are ſometimes apt to root, eſpecially being planted in a wet Seaſon at the declining of the Year; they are very apt to grow of Slips, but the Spring is the beſt Seaſon; for towards the declining of the Year, the Worms are more apt to turn them out of the Ground: More might have been ſaid as to the ordering of this ſort of

Flowers,

Flowers, and for the choice of Colours to bring the moſt and beſt Varieties; but being ſtraitned, let this ſuffice.

Of Primroſes and Polianters, &c.

THE Seeds of any of thoſe ſorts that bear Seed, which are chiefly the ſingle, of ſeveral Forms and Colours, being ſown either in the Spring or *Autumn*; for I have ſown in both Seaſons, and have very pretty Varieties come, and ſome contrary to their Mother-plant; their Situation ought rather to be Shade than Sun; if you ſow in *Autumn*, defer not, that ſo your Plants may get Strength before the Winter, which will be apt to heave them out of the Ground, and make you ſome work to prick them in again: I have ſown ſomething late at that time of the Year, and have had them come up very well in the Spring following. I have likewiſe ſown in the Spring, and the next Spring after I have had fine Varieties of Flowers. The ſavingeſt way to ſow, is in Pots, or the like, and a ſhady Situation is beſt; they grow and encreaſe well of the Slip, and parting of them, and new planting of them once in a Year or Two, cauſeth them to flower more frequent, both early and late, in caſe of temperate Weather.

Hepatica's are likewiſe encreaſed by ſowing, as well as by parting the Roots; alſo the ſeveral Varieties of *London* Tufts, or Pride of *London*, is encreaſed the ſame way.

Now by what I have written, you may eaſily gueſs what Improvements may be made by ſowing of the Seeds of divers Flowers and Herbs, which if I thought were neceſſary, I could have enlarged upon.

This already being ſufficient for any ingenious young Practitioner, I ſhall conclude as to this.

To the end any young Practitioners may readily know what to ſeek or enquire after for the furniſhing of their Garden, I have here under ſet down a Catologue of Flowers, as I have of the Herbs at the end of the Kitchin-Garden; both ſuch as are early to be raiſed of Seed, call'd Annuals; as alſo others of divers Kinds; and becauſe many are very much taken and affected with furniſhing of their Flower-pots, for the adorning of ſome Rooms in their Houſes, *&c.* I have ſet down the Names of divers Sorts and Kinds that are fit for the aforeſaid Purpoſes, in regard of the length of their Stalks or Branches; as alſo of ſuch as are only for Ornament in their places where they grow, or for Noſegays: And firſt of thoſe call'd Annuals, yearly to be ſown.

Adonis.

Adonis-Flower.
African Marygolds.
Scarlet-Beans.
Coventry Bell-flowers.
Great blew Bind-weed, or Connuvolu's major.
Small Bind-weed, or Connuvolu's minor.
Catch fly, two ſorts.
Candy-tufts, two or three Varieties.
Fennel-flower or Nigella, two or three Varieties.
Fox gloves, white and red.
Small white Flax.
French Honey-Suckles.
Honeſty, or white Sattin.
Hollihocks, double and ſingle.
Larks-heel, or Spurs, divers Varieties.
Lupins.
Melancholy Gentleman.
Moth-mullins, four or five Varieties.
Marygolds, double.
French Marygolds, two or three Varieties.
Princes Feather, two ſorts ordinary.
Princes Feather, or Amorantus, divers Varieties.
——tender.
Pearl-graſs.
Tree Primroſe.
Double Poppies, divers Varieties.
Indian or Musk Scabious, divers Varieties.
Sianus, or Bottles, divers Varieties.
Spaniſh Saffron.
Snap-dragons, divers Varieties.
Stock Gilly-flowers.
Venus's Looking-glaſs.

Theſe are likewiſe raiſed of Seed, and are likewiſe encreaſed by ſlipping, parting their Roots, and laying, fit to furniſh a Flower-Pot.

CHampions.
Canterbury Bells.
Columbines, of divers Varieties.
Cranes-Bill, of divers ſorts.
Carnations, or Gillyflower.
Everlaſting Peaſe.
Fraxanella.
Goats-rue.
Whitſon-Gillyflowers, ſingle.
Wall Gillyflowers, ſingle.
Stock-Gillyflowers, double and ſingle.
Hollihocks, double and ſingle.
Sweet John.
A double white Flower, call'd white Marygold,
I ſuppoſe of the kindred of the Maths.
None-ſuch, or flower of Briſtol, ſingle.
Pinks double and ſingle.
Snap-Dragons.
Spaniſh-tufts.

Throat-

Throat-wort, a ſort of Bell-flower.

Vallerion, red and the greek, both white and blew.

Theſe are generally encreaſed by ſlipping and parting, and fit for a Flower-Pot.

AUſter-aticus, or Italian ſtar-wort, apt to run in a Garden.
Batchellor Buttons, or double Champions, four or five Varieties.
Peach-leaved Bell-flowers, both blew and white.
Double Crowfoot, divers ſorts, beſides the more choice ſorts, known beſt by the Latin Name *Ranunculo's*.
Crimſon Cardinals-flower.
Double Featherfew.
Hungarian Dead Nettle.
Spaniſh Knap-weed.
Lichines, or double None-ſuch.
Ladies Smocks double.
Live-ever, or Life everlaſting.
Blew Marygolds.
Periwinkle, three or four Varieties, beſides the great ſort.
Double Rockets, or Whitſon-July-flowers, three Varieties.
Double Sope-wort, a buſie runner in a Garden, both white and purple.
Double Sweet-Williams.
Double Wall-flowers, three or four ſorts.
Willow-flower, a troubleſome Gueſt in a Garden, though pretty for a Flower-Pot.

The Names of other ſorts of Flowers, both Bulbous and Tuberous rooted, fit to furniſh a Garden, and adorn a Flower-Pot.

ANemonies, or Eminies, many Varieties.
Crown-imperial a double, and two ſorts of ſingle.
Corn-flags, two ſorts.
Frittilaria's, ſeveral Varieties.
Flowerdeluces, Bulbous, and Tuberous, very many Varieties.
Hyacinths or Jacynths, divers Varieties.
Indian Juca.
Kings-ſpear, yellow and white.
Lilies, four or five Varieties.
Molies, ſeveral Varieties.
Martagons, ſix Varieties at leaſt.
Munks-hoods.
Pionyes, ſix or ſeven Varieties.

Perſian

Perſian Lily.
Star-flowers, divers Varieties.
Tulips, abundant in Varieties.
Bulbous Violets, of a large ſort.

The Names of divers other pretty Flowers, fit to furniſh a Garden, and ſome of them may ſerve for the Flower-Pot, eſpecially if they grow in rich Ground, or ſtand until they are fully and compleatly blown, moſt Bulbous Roots.

BUlbous Violet, two or three ſorts.
Crocus and Saffron-flowers, many Varieties.
Colchecoms, double and ſingle, five or ſix Varieties.
Grape-flowers, Varieties.
Hollow-root Flower, of ſome call'd Dwarf, or Ground-hony-ſuckle; of others, a Fumetary, two ſorts.
Marracok, or Paſſion flower.
Ranulculo's, beſides thoſe I have mentioned before.
Sow-bread, Varieties.
Spider-wort, Varieties.
Winter-wolfs-bane.

Other ſorts fit to furniſh a Garden, &c.

BArren-wort.
Bears-ear, or French Cowſlips, and Bears-ear-ſanicle.
Cowſlips, and Pagles, divers.
Hepatica's, four Varieties.
Jeruſalem-cowſlip, two ſorts.
Chriſtmas-flower.
Daſies, divers, double.
Indian-Creſſes, or Naſterſian Indicum.
Lily of the Valley.
Marvel of the World.
Mandrake, Golden Mouſe-ear.
Novel-worts, three or four Varieties.
Pances, or Hearts-eaſe, ſeveral.
Primroſes and Polianters, divers.
Sultans-flower, or Turkey-Corn-flower.
Violets.

I forgot to mention it before; it will be your beſt way every Year to raiſe your choiſeſt and tendereſt Annual Plants on a hot Bed, I mean, the fineſt ſort of Amarantu's, Perpurio, African Marygolds, yellow Larks-ſpur, with divers others, and by ſo doing, you may ſave Seed of them moſt Years, otherwiſe you may miſs.

The manner of making a hot Bed, is ſet down towards the end of the Kitchin Garden, to which I refer you; as for others, you

you may ſow them in ſeveral places in Trails, or otherwiſe a few in a place.

Thus I have ſet down the ordinary Names of many Varieties of Flowers; and although I have not obſerved ſo handſome a Method as might have been wiſh'd, yet it may ſufficiently anſwer my end, namely, that young Practitioners may know what to ſeek or enquire for, for the aforeſaid purpoſes.

Here followeth the Names of divers Flowering-Trees, which are pretty Ornaments to help to furniſh a Garden, &c.

Apple,
Peach,
Pear
Cherry, } with double Bloſſoms,

Melerion, encreaſed chiefly by ſowing, ſometimes by laying.
Jeſſamines, ſeveral, by Suckers or Layers.
Shrub-mallows, by laying.
Honey-ſuckles or Wood-bines, ſeveral by cutting and laying.
Gilder-roſes, by Suckers and laying.
Lelacks, two or three ſorts, as the former.
Siringa, by Suckers, &c.
Laburnum, by Seed.
Senas, two or three ſorts, by Seed, &c.
Clematis, double and ſingle, by laying.
Prime or Prinet, being brought into a Tree, is pretty for Flowers in its Seaſon, though common.
Bladder-nut-Suckers.
Laurus Tinus, by laying, ſometimes by cutting.
Pomegranate, double and ſingle, of ſome is houſed, encreaſed by laying, alſo of Seed.

The Names of ſome ſorts of Ever-greens that are hardy, the moſt of them are encreaſed by cutting, and laying, ſome of Seed.

ALlaturnus, or ever-green Prinet.
Arbutus, of ſome houſed, but doth well in a warm ſituation.
Arbor-vitæ.
Box, three ſorts.
Bays ordinary.
Cherry-bay, or great Laurel.
Laurus Tinus.
Cypres.
Firr-Tree.

Holly, both red and yellow-berried.
Piracantha.
Periwinkle, great and small.
Pine-trees, two sorts.
Yew-tree.
Ever-green Oak:

The Names of a few, of tender or housed Greens, more easie to encrease than preserve.

Orange.
Limon.
Citron.
Olianders.
Mirtles, four or five sorts.

With many other sorts, which at present I cannot call to mind.

Amongst those sorts of Plants mentioned in this Book, these are fit to plant about Arbours, which being often and seasonably clipt after they are spread and tied in every bare or naked place, as occasion serves, will thicken, and be handsome, and your Arbour will endure and uphold it self with little Repair, but by the neglect of the former Directions your Arbour will quickly run to ruin.

Sweet-bryer.
Honey-suckles.
Clematis.
Jessamine.
Scorpion-Sena.
Prime or Prinet.
Tamarisk.
Roses, white-Frankford, *&c.*
Also if any desire it, white Bush will make a very durable Arbour.
Also Plumb-trees, with divers other the like.
But if you would have it always green, then
Cypris, very good.
Piracanthas.
Filaree, none better.
Allaturnus.
Holly, or
Laurels, *&c.*

As for Hedges in Gardens, they are and may be made of several sorts of Shrubs, as every one fancies, but it is best to make them of one entire sort of Stuff, because of their suitable or handsome growing together; for being mixed, one sort differs in growth from another, some requiring to be cut twice to others once: By the often clipping of your Hedges, they will grow thick, strong, handsome, by the neglect the contrary.

Hawthorn, or white Bush is best.
Prime.

Gooſberries, or Currans, expect to be little and mean Fruit, if you keep your Hedge handſome.

Sweetbryer, it muſt be cut as oft as Graſs, elſe not handſome. Suckers of Plumbs, and of ſome young Horn-bean, *&c.*

If you would have them always green, you may ſet

Box, the Engliſh is the ſpeedieſt.

Filaree.

Holly.

Laurus Tinus.

Piracantha.

Alſo Periwinkle, for low Hedges, being oft cut will be handſome.

Alſo Melerions, being planted in a ſtrait Line, as an Hedge, will in their flowering ſeaſon be very ſweet and pleaſant, and ſo much the more acceptable, being early in flowring.

Perhaps it might be expected by ſome, that I ſhould ſay ſomething as to the obſervation of the Moon, in Sowing, Planting, Grafting, and Pruning; but the truth is, I have been always ſo incumbred through the multiplicity of Buſineſs, neceſſity being likewiſe preſent always with me: So that I could not either take the opportunity, to make obſervation of any ſtate of the Moon, and the ſucceſs thereof, in any of my Labours; but aſſuredly, notwithſtanding the beſt of my diligence, I have not had always like Succeſs, where ever the Fault was: But I ſhall ſet down a little what ſome others have writ concerning the obſervation of the Moon. And firſt, one ſaith, That to have Plants or Seed grow ſpeedily in height, you are to ſow them in the encreaſe of the Moon, both in Light and Motion, and poſited in an airy Sign.

But to have your Plants to take beſt hold downwards in the Root, then to let the Moon be in any earthly Sign.

The ſame Author ſaith likewiſe, That no Herb or Fruit, either ſet or ſown in the Wane of the Moon, hath that goodneſs of reliſh, that is naturally proper to that Herb or Fruit, only he doth except Peaſe, which he ſaith being ſown in the encreaſe of the Moon, will ſtill be blowing with bloſſoming.

Alſo that Vines or other Trees ſhall not ſpring or ſhoot too faſt, you muſt prune them in the Wane of the Moon.

Alſo that things may keep ſound, and laſt long, *&c.* from worm-eating, you are to gather or cut them in the Wane of the Moon. Thus far Mr *Ramſey.*

Another writeth, That it is beſt grafting at the full Moon, as cauſing Grafts to come away with moſt Vigour, but the Wane cauſeth them to bear over-ſoon.

Others appoint two or three Days before, and as much after the Change to Graft in; ſome alſo affirm the Wane of the Moon beſt to inoculate; but if the former Rules be true, this muſt be otherwiſe: So that you ſee here is difference in Judgment, but let every one endeavour ſeaſonably for the time of the Year, and ſutably for the kind of Stock and Fruit, and exact as to the right Form and Manner, and then there is hope of Succeſs, be the Moon in what ſtate it will. I will ſet down one thing more, which I read in Mr. *Wing*'s Almanack, 1661. the which I alſo, as I remember, did read, at another time in one of Mr. *Brooker*'s Almanacks. His words are theſe: *It is a common Obſervation in Aſtrology, and confirmed by Experience, that what Corn or Tree ſoever are ſet or ſown, when the Sun or Moon are eclipſed, and the Infortunate Planets predominant, ſeldom or never come to good.* And again he ſaith thus, *It is a common and certain Obſervation alſo, that if any Corn, Seed or Plant, be either ſet or ſown, within ſix hours either before or after the full Moon in Summer, or before or after the new Moon in Winter, having joined with the coſmical riſing of* Arcturus *and* Orion, *the* Hædi *and the* Siculi, *is ſubject to blaſting and canker.* And thus much I thought good to ſet down concerning the Obſervation of the Moon, out of other Mens Writings; but as for the many Rules concerning the Three Parts of Gardening which I have written, I have only made uſe of my own Practice and Obſervation, (except the Catalogue of Fruits which I have mentioned) although in ſome Places I have written as if I had ſet down other Mens Judgments; but aſſuredly the method is my own, which I commend to every one that deſires to practice the neareſt way to the Art of Gardening.

Books Sold at the *Ring* in *Little-Britan.*

A Thouſand Notable Things. 1*s.* 6*d.*
The *way* to ſave *Wealth.* 1*s.* 6*d.*
The *way* to get *Wealth.* 1*s.* 6*d.*
The Floriſts *Vademecum.* 1*s.*
Lambert of curing *Cattle.* 1*s.*
Markams Maſter-piece. 3*s.* 6*d.*
Nourſes Husbandry. 5*s.*
Art of Dying. 4*s.*
Arts Treaſury. 1*s.*
Arts Maſter-piece. 1*s.*
Anglers Sure Guide. 3*s.*
Compleat Fiſher. 6*d.*
Butler of Bees. 1*s.*
Book Knowledge. 1*s.*
Cookery refined. 6*d.*
Experienced Fowler. 6*d.*
Compleat *Vermin Killer.* 6*d.*
YoungSports-man Inſtructor. 6*d.*
White Legerdemain. 6*d.*
Sport and Paſtime. 6*d.*
Hill's Hocus-Pocus. 6*d.*

A SUPPLEMENT TO THE English Gardner.

CHAP. I.

Approved Directions to know what sorts of Earth is proper for every kind of Fruit-Trees, and to know whether it be proper to Dung Trees or not.

THESE very neceſſary Rules ought to be ſeriouſly weighed by all Gardners and Planters of Fruit-Trees, or elſe their Labour often proves in vain; and in this caſe obſerve,

The Wilding, the Pear, the Apple-Tree, alſo thoſe we call Paradice; likewiſe the Plumb-Tree, and Fig-Tree, well agree with all manner of Earth, hot or dry, cold or moiſt, provided it be deep enough, that is, at leaſt Two good Foot and a half, or three Foot deep; Fig-Trees do not require ſo much.

Quince-Trees do not thrive well in light dry Ground, growing yellow too eaſily. Almonds and Stone-Peach-Trees flouriſh better in this than in ſtrong Earth, in which they are too ſubject to Gum; and thoſe ſtrong Earths are fitter for Plumbs, Meriſiers, ſmall bitter Cherries, Gooſeberries, Raſpberries, and the like. The Vine requires moderate dry Ground, and in it produces the better Grapes, if commodiouſly expoſed to the Sun; for if the Earth you plant them in be ſtrong and cold, the Vine affects it not, but in producing brings ſmall dry Grapes. Cherries will thrive in light dry Ground, but take much better in a clear Mould; and ſo of others.

In theſe Caſes it will not be amiſs to conſider, that the Ground has Effects likewiſe upon ſuch Grafts as are planted on Stocks already fixed in it, of the Kinds I have mentioned; for a Pear grafted upon a free Stock or Quince; for Peaches on Almond-Trees or Plumb-Trees, *&c.* it holds very well, but yet the Earth has not the ſame Effects as to the good Taſte, as it has to the Vigour of Fruit-Trees. Winter Boon, Chreſtien Pears, Pellition, Lauſace, and Thorn Pears, *&c.* will ever remain inſipid, or

or moſt of them mealy or ſtony in cold moiſt Ground, whether grafted on Quince-Stocks or Wildings, eſpecially for Dwarf Standards; and the like is to be obſerved in Panies, Peaches, *&c.* For theſe kind of Fruits require a pretty dry Ground; and particularly ſuch as is well drained with Gutters, or ſtudied Decleveties, the Ground naturally being moiſt; for although it is to be noted, Fruit-Trees are commonly vigorous in ſtrong Earth, yet the Fruit rarely acquires the Delicacy of Taſte that in other more proper Grounds it might have, and which it meets withal in drier and lighter Grounds.

The Gardner muſt not conclude it ſufficient to have a Garden or Orchard well cultivated for Tillage, but over and above have regard yearly to improve the Earth, which will loſe of its Vigour; and be ſure to remove the Stones and Weeds out of the Alleys, as from the Graſs plats and Borders, and the Trees always free from Catterpillers, Snails, Moſs, and other Incumbrances which infect and ſicken them.

CHAP. II.

Evils in Fruit-Trees remedied by Manuring, Pruning, &c.

AS for dunging Fruit-Trees, it may be as well too much as too little; and in this alſo is to be conſidered what Soil of this Nature is moſt proper. Some little matter of it has been hinted in general already, but now I come to Particulars very uſeful and neceſſary to be known.

Trees that have large Roots draw much Strength from the Earth, which being weakened thereby, ſtands in need of a Supply; but too much Kindneſs to them this way, as ſome call it, ſuffocates the Root, and cauſes Cankers and ſuch like defects, that much annoy Fruit-Trees; therefore it is to be enquired into how they ought to be ordered in this caſe.

If the Roots lie not too near the Surface of the Earth, but tend downward, reaching to a ſufficient Moiſture, then open about the Bole a Foot and a half deep, and put in Dung, mixed with good freſh Mold; let it be either rotten Horſe-Dung or Cow-Dung, and cover it up in the Spring, laying the Sods you pared from the Surface even, and treading them down hard, and to ſettle the Earth, pour ſome muddy Water about it; but this needs not, unleſs you ſee ſome defect, as the yellowneſs of ſome Leaves and Branches, the Tree bloſſoming much, but bearing little Fruit, and that ſmall, which denotes that the bottom of the Earth lies deep in wet and cold Earth, not affording a ſufficient Heat in Nouriſhment, but where the Roots lie ſhallow, near the Surface, ſo that the Sun has Power to dry up the Sap. Dung is not required, for the Heat of it would help the Sun to wither them the more, and waſt their Vigour; but in this caſe take Mud out of ſome ſlimy Lake or Pond, mix it with good Mould, and paring off the Sods of Graſs about the Tree, cover the bare Ground with the prepared Earth, hill it up high, half a Foot at leaſt, that it may ſhelter the Roots that lie near the Surface; then lay on the Graſs Turfs, and preſs it down hard, ſettle it with Water, and the nearneſs of the Roots to the Surface is known by the withering of ſome Leaves, or their turning yellow or whitiſh ſooner than ordinary; the Bark, if young Trees, wrinkling, if old, cracking or chopping; and here take care to cut away all the Suckers from the Roots, and prune ſuperfluous Branches, that the bearing ones may have the greater Nouriſhment to enable them to bring forth Plenty; and where there is none of theſe Defects appearing, good and careful pruning will be a ſufficient Advancement; however in ſharp Win-

ters

ters lay long Dung, or Litter taken out of a Stable where Horſes are kept, about their Roots, which in the Spring you may take away, and cleanſe the Ground, leaſt Inſects breed there, and aſcending the Tree, deſtroy the tender Buds when they ſhoot forth. In hard ſtony Ground the Roots of Trees often meet with obſtructions in their running under the Earth. The like in chalky Ground, and therefore theſe Earths are not fit for an Orchard. Where the Ground is nothing but clear Sand, it is a Folly to plant Fruit-Trees there; for they cannot thrive in it, nor will dunging do any great Kindneſs; nothing can better it but a binding fat Mould, that muſt be brought in great Quantities, and trenched in, much of the ſandy Ground being removed, that it may lie the better; but this is ſo chargeable that it is hardly worth while, nor will it be laſting, unleſs renewed. If the Ground be too light and dry, water it well in dry Seaſons, or float it with Water, if you have a Conveniency; but if too wet or ſobbiſh, make Dreins as low as you can, that the cold hurtful Water may by degrees be taken off from afflicting the Roots.

CHAP. III.

Further Means to Preſerve and cauſe to Flouriſh Standards and Wall-Fruit. To know the Diſeaſes and Defects in Trees, and their Remedies, in many rare Secrets, for want of which many choice Plants die.

I Shall ſay yet ſomething more to prevent the Evils that fall upon Fruit-Trees.

Gum is hurtful to Trees, in hindering the Sap from riſing to the Branches, eſpecially if it gets into the Joynt of the Graft, and if this be common to a Peach grafted on an Almond Stock, and the Growth be hindered thereby, Graft others on Plumb Stocks, and the Nature of the Ground will hinder the Defect.

If Pears be grafted on Quince Stocks, and grow yellow, the Remedy is to remove them.

If Rats gnaw the Barks of Figg-Trees, or other choice Wall-Trees, which in Winter they are apt to do, upon the firſt Marks of their Teeth you ſee, ſet baited Traps to take them, or lay Rats-bane in their way.

There is an Inſect called a Ton, that breeds at the Foot or Roots of Trees, eſpecially Wall-Fruit, very fatal to them, eating and poiſoning the Bark, and ſo much of the Root as is can come at. To remedy this, open the Root as deep as you ſee convenient, take away all the old Earth, and place new, ſprinkled a little with the Dregs of Olive-Oil, and ſo cover the Root up cloſe again; and by this means they will be removed.

There is yet another dangerous Infeſter of Wall-Fruit, and eſpecially Wall-Pears, called the Tygers, ſticking cloſe to the back of the Leaves, and ſucking out all the green Moiſture, ſo that they wither away. This by ſome Gardners is held incurable, but by ſprinkling the Leaves and Branches with Tar Water, the Remedy is wrought.

If a diſtemper and languiſhing proceeds from a Tree by being ill condition'd before it was planted, the beſt way to remedy it, is to pull it up, ſlit the Bark of the Roots, and replant it in freſh mould; but if it be infeſted with the Canker, and has a poor Foot, then make Fewel of it, for it is not worth its incumbrance, as not hopeful to thrive, place one more likely in the room of it.

As for Pear-Trees or Plumb-Trees, about Forty Years bearing is ſufficient; for then they have ſpent their bearing Strength, and ought to be removed, that young ones may be planted in their Places, unleſs you have ſuch a large ſpace of Ground as

to

to ſpare a Continuance for the Service they have done, or in Expectation of the little Fruit they are capable of producing.

CHAP. IV.

A Supplement *to the Kitchen-Garden, as to Herbs and Plants, how long they Flouriſh and when Decay, and ought to be removed; with other Matters.*

THough in the Body of this Book there are many things mentioned that might be ſufficient to furniſhout a Kitchen-Garden to great Advantage; yet ſeeing of late, Plants and Herbs have been brought from Foreign Parts, and improved here, that nothing may be wanting to render this uſeful Labour Compleat, I ſhall not be ſparing in any thing that may give the Reader or Practitioner that Satisfaction he may expect.

To prepare a Garden for this uſe, that may at all times furniſh you with Herbs, Roots, and the like, over and above what has been ſaid already. Many have deſired to know the continuance of Kitchen-Garden Herbs and Plants in their full Virtue, and when in the proper Seaſon, or critical Time to be gathered and uſed, which from long Obſervation having found out, I ſhall in the firſt place ſpeak ſomewhat of this Particular, ſo neceſſary to be known; with other Matters.

As for Aſparagus, reckoning from the time it is firſt ſowed or tranſplanted, it ought not properly to be gathered till the Shoots be of a competent Thickneſs, which happens not till the third or fourth Year after; and provided they be placed in good Ground, well cultivated, they may be ſuffered to ſtand Ten or Twelve Years; but if by Accident there be any decay in them ſooner, take them up, and loſe not the Benefit of ſo much Ground as their ſpreading Roots encumber.

Rasberry, Goosberry, and Currant Shrubs, will laſt bearing well, Eight or Ten Years.

Artichoaks muſt be renewed, that is, replanted in freſh Ground the third Year.

The Borders of Hyſop, Wormwood, Lavender, Marjoram, Rue, Roſemary, Sage, Thyme and Violets, if not hurt by extream Froſts or blaſting Winds, will ſubſiſt well in their places Four Years, if Care be taken to clip, prune, and cleanſe them from Incumbrances every Summer.

Aleluja, or Wood-Sorrel, muſked Charnel, Mint, Engliſh Chines, Taragon, Sorrel, Patience, or Sharp Dock, Samphire, Macedonian Parſley, or Aliſanders, Trip-Madam, *&c.* continue in their Places, and retain their Virtues Four Years. Strawberry Plants continue good without removing, Three Years.

Succory, or wild Endive, ordinary Parſley, Annis, Fennel, Burnet, Scorzonere, and common Salſify, laſt Two Years. Leeks both to cut, and for Chards, and Cibouls, laſt only a Year, holding from one Spring to another.

Bourage, Bougloſs, red Beet-Roots, Skerrets, Spaniſh Carduus, Carrots, *Milain* Cabbages, Collyflowers, Citruls or Pumpions, Hearts-horn-Sallad, Potirons, or flat Pumpions, Parſnips, Leeks, *&c.* keep their places well Nine Months, reckoning from the time they are ſowed in the Spring, to the end of Autumn.

Garlick, Baſil, Naſturces, or Capuchin Capers, Cucumbers, Muskmelons, Onions, Shalots; and the firſt, or Summer Turnips, muſt be taken up in the Spring and Summer, to give place to a new Supply.

Arach, or Orage, white Endive, ordinary Charvil, Succory, Garden Creſſes, and all ſorts of Lettice, whether Cabbage, or to tie, take up the Ground near two Months.

Radiſhes, Purſlain, and ordinary Charvil, flouriſh five or ſix Weeks, and then their

their beſt being paſt, the Ground may be better employed for the reſt of the Seaſon.

Haſting-Peas and Beans continue on the Ground ſeven Months, reckoning from *November*, when they are to be ſown; but common Beans, Peaſe, and Arico's, or French-Beans, may be diſincumbred in four or five Months.

Spinage and Miches keep their place all Autumn and Winter, and therefore convenient to be planted in ſuch Places as things are to be planted in, that only laſt the Summer. There are ſome things that we may properly place in the Kitchen-Garden, that will not bear the Fury of the Winter; and therefore, ſeeing the Ignorant, not knowing they require to be houſed, or covered, may deſtroy them, in letting them ſtand unſeaſonably abroad, I thought it very neceſſary to mention them. And theſe are

Carduus, Cellery, Artichoak-heads, the white and the wild Endive; all that are known by the Denomination of Roots, as Red Beet Roots, Carrots, *&c.* Likewiſe Pumpions, Citruls, or common Pumpion, Shalot, and Garlick, are to be taken care of, in covering or houſing, or the bleak Winds or Froſts will much impair their goodneſs, if not deſtroy them. As for others, they will much better endure the Cold, and require not ſuch care to be taken of them, *viz.*

Parſly, Fennel, Cabbage, Trip-madam, Balm, Aſparagus, *Sorrel*, Cibouls, *Samphire*, Mint, Tarragon: However, they are at a ſtand till the *Spring*, and neither ſprout nor ſhoot, unleſs forced by hot Beds, (to make which you are directed before in this Book) for indeed by forcing, even in cold Weather, in the depth of Winter, a forced *Spring* may be made, as I have elſewhere ſhewed, to make *Seeds* and Plants ſpring, out of their proper or natural *Seaſon*; though Garlick, Onions, and Cabbages, are not proper for hot Beds; yet moſt ſallading and tender Herbs may be produced thereby, as Lettice, Creſſes, Charvil, Mint, *&c.* So that with Induſtry, *Seaſons* ſeem in this Caſe as it were at all times to be preſent.

CHAP. V.

Directions for the Seaſons that properly produce Herbs and Plants; what may be removed, and what continued in the place where ſowed, with the manner of ordering them, &c.

TO know the Seaſons of your Herbs, Plants, *&c.* and how they bring forth in the Circle of the Year, is very proper and neceſſary to be known, that ſo the Ground may be proportioned, and no hindrance or waſte be found in a well cultivated Garden; and of theſe in their order.

Note, Among Kitchen-Plants, Herbs, *&c.* there are ſome ſown to remain in the place they are firſt in, others to be tranſplanted elſewhere, and ſome again both ways prove very well; ſome multiplied without *Seed*, and others tranſplanted whole; ſome cut to be tranſplanted, others not; ſome bear ſeveral times in a Year, and laſt no longer than a Year; others are more durable; ſome periſh after their firſt Produce.

The firſt of theſe are almoſt all Red Beet Roots, Radiſhes, Carrots, Parſnips, *Skerrets*, Turnips, Maches, Repouſes, *Scorzonera's*, *Salſifies*, Harts-horn *Sallad*, Garden Creſſes, *Shelots*, *Spinage*, Beans, Charvil, Garlick, Lettice to cut, *Sorrel* Patience, or ſharp Dock Leaves, Peaſe, Purſlain, Onions, Cibouls, wild Endive, or *Succory*.

The ſecond that proſper not without being tranſplanted, are Cellery, Chard, Beets, the greateſt part of white Endive, long and tied Cabbages, unleſs ſown very thin, or thinned when come up moſt Musk-melons, Cucumbers, Citruls, or Pumpions, Petirons, or Flat Rumpions, and Leeks.

The third are indifferently, either continued in places of their being first sown in, or else transplanted, are Asparagus, Fennel, Basil, Annis, Bouglos, Bourage, Carduus, Capuchin Capers, or Nasturces, Cibouls, Thyme, Savoury, Musk Charvil.

The fourth multiplied without being sown, are Aleluja's, or Wood-Sorrel, English Cues Violets; for the Roots being naturally in thick Tufts, may commodiously be separated into many parts. Artichoaks are propagated by their off-sets, eyes, or slips. Round Sorrel, Mint, Trip-madam, Balm, Tarragon, *&c.* come within the like compass by their branches or layers, that take root where they touch the Earth; the two last over and above have the advantage to multiply by Seed, as at some time Artichoaks are prone to. Strawberries propagate by their runners, Goosberries and Currant Trees by their slips, succors, or cuttings, which also take root. Marjoram, Lavender, Wormwood, Sage, and Thyme, propagate by their branches taking root at their joints, and have also the Advantage to be multiplied by their Seed.

In the fifth place are placed those Plants or Herbs which we cut off some part either of the Leaves or Roots, or both, as occasion requires, in order to transplant them, as Artichoaks, Cellery, Chard, Beets, Leeks, *&c.* as also others, whose leaves must not be cut at all, though it be proper to trim their roots a little, so to refresh them, and these are Succory, Endive, Savory, *S*orrel, all Lettice to be transplanted, Aleluja's, or Wood-*S*orrel, Arach, or Orage, Bouglos, Basil, Borage, Capuchin Capers, or Nasturces, Cabbages, Strawberries, *S*amphire, Marjoram, Musk-melons, Citruls, or Pumpions, Cucumbers, Purslain, and Radishes, to be transplanted for *S*eed.

The Plants or Herbs bringing forth several times in a Year, yet last for several Years, are Patience, or Sharp Dock Sorrel, Wood-sorrel, Burnet, Charvil, wild Endive, or *S*uccory, Macedonian Parsley, or Alisanders, Mint, Tarragon, *S*amphire, Parsley, Fennel, all Edgings, or *S*weet Herbs.

Those that produce but once a Year, yet last bearing several Years, are Artichoaks and Asparagus.

Those that cease to be after their first Production, are Endive, Melons, Pease, Beans, Carduus, Citruls, or Pumpions, Cucumbers, Onions, Leeks, Cellery, Arach, or Orage, and all Plants, whose Roots are only in use, as Red Beets, Carrots, *&c.*

Now in the Culture to produce and preserve them in good state for use, consists in one main point, in placing them at their distances, that they may flourish the better; also in trimming such of them as require it; and in the third place, in planting them in that *S*ituation and Disposition which is proper, and they require, the better to flourish and enlarge, and for the Continuance of those that are to hold long.

And fourthly, in giving some of them the Assistance they have need of, whether in lightning the Mould about the Roots, seasonable watering, tying, or wrapping up, earthing, or other ways covering, that in their *S*eason they may bring Profit and Delight, and so compensate your Cost and Labour to your own Content and Satisfaction.

CHAP. VI.

A Supplement *to the Flower-Garden, in many rare Curiosities, omitted in the foregoing Part, relating to curious Flowers, and their well ordering.*

How Flowers alter for the best.

THough the Garden of Pleasure, or Flower Garden has been spoken of as well as others, in the precedent Part of this useful Work; yet since this Addition is properly but a *Supplement* of what is wanting, I shall proceed, in my Method, to somewhat

ſomewhat that is yet Uſeful and Curious, that has hitherto been omitted, or not ſufficiently touched on, for the Satisfaction of the Reader, or ſuch as intend to practice in the Art of Gardning, either for Profit or Pleaſure.

To improve Flowers in Beauty and Eſteem, requires Knowledge, and therefore, if you would chuſe from ſingle Flowers ſuch as you would have double, that is, of ſuch Flowers as are proper to be ſo by Nature, or the help of Art, then ſeek ſuch ſingle Flowers, as differ from thoſe of its Kind in number of Leaves, and in Shape and Colour; preſerve the Seed of them, and it will anſwer your Expectation. Theſe Seeds will produce Flowers much differing from the ordinary Flowers, though all were produced of one Seed but a few Years before.

Nay, a particular among many others of one Plant, will bring more double ones, that are not qualified as it is; and this ought eſpecially to be known to all ſuch as undertake to raiſe Flowers; as for Example: if you find a Stockgilleflower that hath Five, Six, or more Leaves, the Seed of that will produce more double ones than thoſe that bring forth but Four Leaves, Quantity for Quantity of Seed, Twenty for One.

This Flower, I muſt confeſs, ſhews it more than any other, for having no Thrum in the middle, as many others have, Nature has given this a Token to inform us, that thoſe that have a Leaf or Leaves added to it more than its uſual Kind, will produce thoſe with many Leaves, and produce a fine double Flower, which when it hath attained to, it is then come to the Bounds of Nature; it never after beareth Seed, but by endeavouring, blows till it dies.

This Rule may be obſerved by other Flowers that are deſtitute of a Thrum in the middle of them, as Auricula's, Wall-Flowers, Campions, Primroſes, *&c.* and in theſe finding a Leaf or Two more than your ordinary Number, you may conclude Nature is conſenting to their own Improvement, if Art, her Handmaid, be aſſiſting to perfect her work begun.

The Flowers alſo that bear Seed when double, as the Gilleflowers, African, *&c.* ſo the Seed of ſuch double Flowers, they will bring you more and better Flowers, a Hundred to One, than the ſingle ones, and you will find ſeveral Varieties in ſowing the Seed of them, but moſt tinctured with the proper Colour of the Mother-Plant; and ſome of theſe run as it were beyond the Limits of Nature, and then they will either have Pods in the middle, or break, and ſo never more bear Seed. *July* Flowers have likewiſe their Sign, diſtinguiſhing which will bear Seed, and which will not. Thoſe that will do the firſt of theſe, if the Weather hinder not, or break them, have their Horns in the middle of the Flower; and it is further to be noted, in marking of the Flowers; that the ſeed of thoſe that are ſtriped, ſhall bring the more ſtrip'd ones, and ſome of different Colours and Stripes, their Seed all alike.

More curious, though but brief Obſervations, in ſowing and ſetting Flowers, that they may beſt improve.

In ſowing curious Flower Seed there is great Care to be taken, leaſt Inſects, under, or on the Surface, deſtroy it, and bereave you of your expectation; and therefore I adviſe to ſow a little Flower of Brimſtone with ſuch Seeds as are ſmall and choice Seeds, mixing them together with fine ſifted rich Mould, before you ſow it, that it may have an equal Diſtribution, and not be blown away, or crouded to one Place more than another by the Wind, e'er you can cover it With a Rake, which muſt be done gently, you may if the Ground be moiſt, mix with the Flower ſome fine Wood-Aſhes, and theſe will keep off the Inſects and Birds, and impregnate the Earth with a warmth to produce more kindly what it is intruſted withal; and when you have raiſed them fit to tranſplant, conſider the Agreeableneſs of the Nature of the Ground, whether you carry them to that wherein they were produced. Let it

be rather richer, to make them take root, and nouriſh them; but let it, however, be as near as you can of a true Proportion to their other Soil; and above all things avoid to place ſuch things as delight in high dry ground, in that which is wet and low Ground, for that is inconſiſtent with the Nature of it; and ſo on the contrary, ſuch things as naturally delight in marſhy, fenny, or boggy Ground, muſt not be placed in firm Ground. Now ſome may demand how they ſhould have Bogs in Gardens to place them in. To this I anſwer, they may be artificially made to ſerve the turn, as well as natural ones, in ſome Corner, or the beſt place to ſpare of your Garden, for the Improvement of the Aromatick Reed, and Flags bearing Flowers, which are the only Flowers valuable in a Garden that require them; and in this manner you may make it, and it will continue long with a little Supply.

Dig a ſquare Trench, about Four Foot deep, and as long and broad as you think convenient; and if the Ground be not Clay, or ſtiff, you muſt have Clay brought and well trodden, with Water to make it pliable. Lay it a Foot thick in the bottom of the Trench, and likewiſe lay it on the Sides and End, with a Spade, as in caſting up Banks in ditching: This done, fill up the Place with a mooriſh black Mould, though ſomewhat fat, mixed with ſlime out of Ponds or Lakes; then with Water make it into a kind of a Bog, or Quagmire, and when it is well ſettled, and begins to dry on the top, you may plant ſuch things as are proper to grow in ſuch wet Places, and may be Ornamental to a Garden; for if you have nothing but ſuperfluous things to place in it, it is not worth making.

A more curious Way than hitherto generally practiced, for laying Layers.

In this Undertaking obſerve the Properneſs of the Seaſon you are to make your Laying in, and to cut and ſlit what you ſo intend.

If your Layers are liginous or woody, juſt where you bend to lay it, run the Layer through with an Awl, but of no great bigneſs, as it is done by Circumpoſition, that is, the Mould is boren up to the Boughs, which is to be taken off; and this muſt be done in Spring, before the Sap riſes, in *February*, or the beginning of *March*; and you muſt Water them but ſlenderly till the Drought comes, but then you muſt do it every Day, or they will not encreaſe their Roots if they have already taken them, that is, every Morning and Evening, for, for want of this exact watering in the hot Seaſon, they will make no exact Roots, if any, but rather a Knob or Button full of freſh Sap, upon the Tongue of the cut in the Branch laid down; yet theſe cut off, and well minded in watering, will often grow, but not near ſo kind as they would, had they taken regular Roots in the laying, whilſt they were fed by the Sap of the Plant.

All ſorts of Flowers of tender Stalks, proper to be laid, do not lay the Earth too much on them, but ſo much as may give Nouriſhment and Juice to extract a Root in due time, when the Layer ſhall be taken off; and water theſe as the former, and conſider, they take Root according to their *Subſtance* or Quality, and ſo in growing they will not pine, but flouriſh very much in a little time; and if your *Stock* prove thin, by this means you may encreaſe it; ſo that *Flora* will ſmile in every Corner of your Garden.

A Deſcription of choice Flowers, and the Months they blow in.

There are ſeveral ſcarce Flowers, not long introduced, and ſo new and rare to moſt Gardners, that I preſume ſome know them not; therefore for their Advantage, and that of private Gardens, I ſhall call them from among the numerous ſorts of Flowers, giving a Diſcription of 'em as briefly as I can, ſo that they may be known to all.

Agot-Hamer is a curious beautiful Flower, it is of three fine ſetting-off Colours, pale greline, rich ſcarlet, and pure white, moſt times well parted, ſtriped, and agoted, never running the bottom, and Tamis blue; it blows in *April*, or the beginning of *May*.

Diarea.

Dianea, of a pure white whipt about the middle, feathered with a deep brown purple, the Tamis dark blew, it blows in *May*.

Gladiolius Bizantius, it flowers of deep red, with two white *S*pots within the mouth of every Flower, round, flat rooted, and netted over, blows in *June*.

Lichnis Caledonica, is a double Flower, of a rich ſcarlet colour; this flowers in *June*.

Ficus Indica: This Flower, called the Indian Fig, conſiſts of Leaves ſpringing out one on another from one Leaf put half into the Earth, which taking root, puts out others; theſe Leaves are flat, and round pointed, a finger thick, of a pale green colour; and out of theſe in *June* comes a Flower ſet with two rows of pale yellow Leaves, a yellow thrum in the middle tipt with red; and when the Flowers fade, the heads they ſtood on grow in the form of a Fig, but in this Country they ripen not.

Periploca Virginiana: This Flower riſes from one or more ſtalks about a foot high, and at ſeveral joints is ſet with two long broad veins, round pointed green leaves, and when grown up, out of the top of the ſtalk, from a skinny hole, a great tuft of Flowers come forth 30 or 40, hanging down on long foot ſtalks, each conſiſting of five hollow leaves of a purpliſh colour, which ſhedding, produce long crooked Cods, which when ripe produce a kind of Silk. This flowers in *July*.

Cyclamen appears in *Auguſt* with ſmall naked ſtalks, the flowers coming up folded in the leaves, hanging down their heads, and turning up their leaves again, which are five in number, ſome of a bright ſhining reddiſh purple, others of different, and of theſe there are divers ſorts and colours, ſome flowring in the Spring, moſtly white.

Mirabila Peruviana: This Flower hath a big ſtalk, bunched at the joints, ſpreading into many branches, ſet at the joints with fair green leaves, between which and the ſtalks come forth the Flowers on ſhort foot-ſtalks, in *Auguſt*, narrow at the bottoms, and wide open at the brims, red and white, and of other colours; for there are divers ſorts of them.

Ormithogalum Æthiopium: This ſtar-flower of *Æthiopia* has green leaves a foot long and an inch broad, woody when broken, and the ſtalk an inch high, bearing from the middle to the top, many large white Star-like Flowers, in *Auguſt*, with marks of yellow at the bottom. There are are ſeveral ſorts of them differing in colour, but not in ſhape.

And thus much as a taſte of choice Flowers, not before deſcribed in this Book.

Many curious Secrets in laying Flowers, not before made ſo Plain or Eaſie.

In this caſe, the chief thing to produce fair and gallant Flowers, and many Layers, is the Soil wherein they muſt be planted, which muſt be neither too ſtiff nor over-light; the beſt courſe is to provide a quantity of good freſh Earth, ſuch as the Mole caſts out of good Ground, not too ſtiff nor over-ſandy, to make it too looſe, ſuch as has lain long untilled, take it four or five inches deep under the Sword, or good Mole-hills, but beware of Ant-hills; mix this with a third part of Ox, Cow, or Sheeps Dung, that hath been long digeſted, intermixing a little Lime: Lay the heap high and round, that it take not too much wet; often turn and ſtir it, that it may well digeſt, and put it in Pots or Beds for planting Layers in, and your Suckers in Flowers will be the more proſperous; taking off your Layers, either in *September* or *March*, cut off all dead leaves, and the top of all that are too long; then take them up, and Earth about the roots, and ſo ſet them in your Pots filled with the before-mentioned prepared Earth; ſet them in the Shade, and with gentle watering they will grow; ſo by degrees remove them into the Sun, in the morning, but let them not ſtand whilſt it grows too hot; never water them too much, for that will make them grow faint and ſickiſh; moiſten them with Pond or River Water, or if

you

you cannot, but have it from a Pump, or cold Spring, let it ſtand three or four days in a Veſſel, to take off the chill, leſt it hinder their growth: In Winter, till *April*, water in the morning, leſt the moiſture freezing about the roots of the tender Flowers, kill them; but when the Sun grows vigorous, water in the evening, when the Sun is off them, leſt it exhale the moiſture too ſoon, and they get little benefit by them, or heat the water to ſcald the roots. This is an excellent way for *July* Flowers; yet take another kind of way of earthing, which I have found as a rare Experiment, known but to a very few.

Take rotten Tan, that is, the Reliques or Rubbiſh of Tan-pits, that by long lying is converted into Earth; lay this on a heap three months to ſweeten, for in its nature elſe it is too ſowre; to one barrowful of it put four barrowfuls of good rotten wood-pile Earth, and the Rubbiſh of old loamy Walls, finely ſifted: Mix them well together, and let them lie a Fortnight e'er you put them into your Pots for your *July* Flower-Layers and other Layers to be tranſplanted in.

When your Flowers begin to ſpindle; nip off all but one or two at the moſt of the biggeſt, at each root, leaving them only to bear Flowers; and when they come to bud for flowering, nip off all thoſe too, but three or four that are beſt placed; and by this means the Flowers will be much the fairer, and more Layers gained, by which your kinds are continued and encreaſed. Forget not often to tie up the ſpindles, as they grow in height to ſmall Rods, and ſet them by on purpoſe for their ſupporting, leſt by their bending down they break off.

From the middle of *June* to the middle of *July*, is the prime time for laying *July* Flowers; which is thus performed, the neweſt way and ſafeſt:

Make choice of thoſe ſlips that are ableſt, being ſupplied with ſufficient joints for laying, prune off the end and ſide of the top leaves, cut the undermoſt part of the middlemoſt joint half through, from thence ſlit the ſtalk through the middlemoſt joint upwards to the next joint, open the Earth to receive it, ſo gently bend it therein, keeping up the head of the ſlip to let the ſlit better open; then preſs down the earth on it, and immediately water it, and in the dry Seaſon often repeat it, and the roots will take the better and ſooner; ſo that in the beginning of *September* they may be cut or removed into Pots or Beds made of the aforeſaid prepared Earth; but ſhelter them from great Rains, leſt the roots rot with too much moiſture.

Some choice *July* Flowers ſhoot up but with one ſtem or ſtalk, without any Layer, which is a bad ſign; for if it flowers in ſuch a caſe the Root dies; therefore, before it blows, cut off the Spindle, that it may ſprout anew, and ſo you will preſerve the Root.

If your Roots produce too many Layers, cover not above Three or Four Layers, if they be good blowing Flowers, leſt too much Nouriſhment drawn from the Root, waſte it, and the Flowers dwindle leſs and leſs, till they degenerate to little worth.

As theſe Flowers blow, if you perceive any to break the Pod, open it with a fine Pen-knife at each Diviſion thereof, and bind it about with a Gold-beater's Flim, or Gut, which being wetted, will ſtick on ſo neatly, that it will hardly be diſcerned. If any come all of one colour, the Layers, from the Stem, will ſo continue, and be a new Kind.

If you would preſerve good Seed for the recruit of your Stock, keep the Seed in the Pods as long as may be for the Danger of Froſts; keep them dry, and cut the Stems off with the Pods on them; dry them ſo as not to looſe the Seed; the drineſs and blackneſs of the Pods, denote the ripeneſs of the Seed. Chuſe for the largeſt and beſt Flowers, the Seed at the bottom of the Pod. The Seeds producing moſt Varieties, are ſtriped Tawneys; and moſt Variety of double Flowers are raiſed from the Seed of double Flowers, though, for want of them, double Flowers may be procured from the Seeds of ſingle ones.

To prevent Graſs plats in Gardens free from Weeds, and harbouring Inſects to deſtroy the Flowers, &c.

Graſs-plats are ornamental in Flower-Gardens, and therefore, beſide mowing and keeping them even, there is another Care to be taken of them. Get Soap-boiler's Aſhes; after the Lye is drained from them, lay them in the Sun a drying, and then beat them ſmall; ſift them in the beginning of *March*, on your Graſs-plats, and they will nouriſh the Graſs with kindly heat, and make it ſpring apace; but as for Weeds, it is ſo bitter an Enemy to them, that not any will grow where the Rain has ſoaked it into the Earth; and for Inſects, they fly the Scent of it; for ſuch as remain are ſure to die. You may ſprinkle it likewiſe in your Alleys, and the Sides of the Borders, to prevent Worms or Snails from biting the tender Flowers, or Plants ſpringing up, or hindering their growth, by poyſoning the Stem, lurking under the lower Leaves, or any ſuch like occaſion, pruning the under ſuperfluous Leaves, that fruitleſsly draw away the Nouriſhment from the Root, and ſobbing in the wet, many times rot, to the Annoyance of the Plant.

CHAP. VII.

Rare Curioſities in Gardning, being Secrets known but to a very few.

To make a Sallad grow from the Seed in Three or Four Hours, fit to to be cut, and brought to the Table.

BUrn the Moſs of Fruit-Trees, and ſave the Aſhes; work it well with rotten Dung; then ſprinkle it with the moiſture that ſprings out of the Dunghil ſeveral times; then lay it to dry ſeveral times in the Sun, till it appears like a fat clammy Earth; then ſprinkle it again; and if you are to produce a Sallad in Winter, have a long Tin, or Iron Plate, half as broad as long, place it ſo far from the Ground that you can ſet Fire under it; ſpread the beforeſaid Earth about an Inch and a half thick upon it; ſprinkle it with warm Rain-Water, and the moiſture that iſſues from a fat Dunghill; rake it fine, and having ſteeped Purſlain or Lettice-Seed Six Hours in warm Water, mixed with the dregs of Oyl, and ſome of the moiſture iſſuing out of a Dunghill, ſow them, by ſprinkling them on the Surface of the Earth prepared; and ſtrew, lightly, Earth of the ſame moulding, mixed with other fine Mould, over them, ſo that it may but juſt hide them; and let the heat underneath, applied to the Tin Plate, produce that heat to the Earth as a *July* Sun would do, and the Seed will immediately ſprout up, and bear Leaves in the time mentioned, or leſs, fit to be gathered, and preſented at the Table. If this be required in the heat of Summer, a Bed made of this Earth, and the Seed ſo ordered, will produce the ſame effect. And thus you may make Flowers blow out of Seaſon.

To produce Roſes in any Seaſon.

To produce this effect in Winter, uncover the Root of the Roſe-Tree, and ſift very fine rotten Horſe Dung, mixed with Power of Sulphur, upon it, and ſo cover it over with good light Earth, and the Tree will blow at ſeveral Seaſons, to Admiration; and by this means the Tree ſet in a Pot or Caſe in your Green Houſe, will produce Roſes in the depth of Winter.

To make Tulips, and other Flowers, of the Colour you are pleaſed to have them.

This is done by ſteeping the Seeds in ſuch a Colour as you deſire the Flowers to be of, changed from its proper Nature, *viz.* for Black, Ink; Green, Verdigreaſe; Blue, Azure, or a fine Violet Colour; Red, raſped Braſil ſteeped in Water; Yellow, Turmerick;

Turmerick; Purple, Indico; and ſo of others; and when the Seeds have ſufficiently taken the Tincture, the Liquids you ſteep them in being a little Warm, to make the better Infuſion, ſow them in proper Grounds, ſeaſonably, and tranſplanting them as other Flowers, you will find blowing in due time a wonderful change.

To change the Colour of ſeveral Flowers blown.

If you would have red Roſes, tipt with white, whilſt on the Tree, burn Brimſtone under them, at a diſtance, that the Flame ſindge or wither them not, and the Leaves at the ends will be white. If the Fumes of Tobacco be ſmoaked on them, it changes the Tips of the Leaves to a Purple Colour.

If any Flower be of a Purple Colour, as Tulips, Hyacinths, Crocus Iris; and if you would ſtreak them with Scarlet, dip a fine Hair Pencil in the Spirit of Vitriol; and ſtreaking the Leaves, they will, where ſo touched, turn to a delicate Scarlet, to the Admiration of the ignorant in this Secret, who will wonder to ſee them, almoſt in the turning of a Hand, ſo changed from the Colour they juſt before preſented.

How to produce double Gilleflowers of any Seed ſoever.

Take a Bean and hollow it; put into it the Seed of a ſingle Gilleflower, and ſtopping the Hole with a little ſoft Wax, ſet it in proper Ground, and a Gilleflower will ſpring out of it, and be double and large.

To make Gilleflowers of an extraordinary bigneſs.

To do this effectually, make a laying of Dung and fine ſifted Mould, ſprinkle it over with Bean-flower, then make another laying of Dung and fine Earth, and let it be but thin, then ſprinkle that over with Bean-flower; rake it gently when you have ſowed your Seed upon it, and the Produce will be wonderful; the Flowers will be exceeding large, and hold within the circle of their husks or pods, without burſting or cracking; and moſt large Flowers of this kind do.

To make a Vine produce Grapes of divers Colours.

Make a hole in the Vine, that it may pierce to the pith, fill it with the Colour you deſire, and plug it up, covering the Plug over with ſoft Wax to prevent the Vine's bleeding in that place when the ſap ariſes; and for that year, at leaſt, the Grapes will take wholly or partly the tincture of the Colour you ſo put in.

To make a Peach-Tree bear with Writing on the Fruit.

Take the ſtone of a good bearing Peach, bury it in ſuitable Ground till the ſtone be half open, ſo take out the Kernel gently, without breaking it, and write on it with Vermillion made liquid in the beaten white of an Egg, and with a Pen write what you pleaſe on the kernel; then put the kernel the right way into the ſhell, and cloſe it with a little ſoft Wax, as may juſt ſtick it together, and ſet it; and when it produces a Tree bearing Fruit, the Words in a leſſer or greater meaſure will appear on the Peaches.

To make Sets by Art, a rare Secret.

Tho' Nature produces Sets without the Help or Induſtry of Man, yet a good Gardner ought not to be wanting in finding out ſuch ways as may further or better Nature's Work to his own Praiſe and Advantage; and this may be done by bearing the roots of Plants that are of woody ſubſtance, and then make a cut in the ſame faſhion with that which is made in Layings, not towards but fromwards the Plant, and into this cleft put a ſmall ſtone, or ſomething that will make the root gape, ſo that the part cut ſtands upwards; ſo cover over the root with light Mould three inches, and the lip that was ſo lifted up, will in its time ſprout into branches, being nouriſhed by the root of the old Tree; and when grown, cut off this Plant with its root to live for its ſelf, and if it ſo happen that you can have an eye on the lip of your root, which you after inciſion lift up, then the branches will more certainly and ſpeedily iſſue out of the root ſo cut. This is termed, in the Gardner's Language, Starting a Root.

If a bulbous root be wanting of Off-ſets, it is a held Opinion, That raiſing it lightly with your nail, cut it upon the bottom in the crown of the root, whence the fibres ſpring, and ſprinkle ſome dry Duſt upon it as a healer to the Wound, and as many Wounds (though not too many, leaſt you weaken the main root) as you make, into ſo many Off-ſets ſhall the genital Virtue diſpoſe it ſelf: And by this means may you ſupply your ſelf, and in a few years ſtock your Garden with choice Rarities, without being at extraordinary Charge or Labour in ſeeking them; when others who are ignorant of this Art, ſhall only wonder and ſtand amazed how you came ſo well furniſhed or ſtored, unleſs you diſcover the Secret to them, and ſo conſequently make them as wiſe as your ſelf.

To prevent Box from Smelling after it is clipped.

This ſort of Green, as it makes pretty figures in a Garden, being drawn into knots, ſo it is offenſive to choice Flowers and Plants that are near it, eſpecially when it is clipped, and a time after; nay, upon clipping, it offends with the ſtrong Scent it caſts, thoſe that walk near it. To remedy it, take this as a Secret: Put ſome hard Limeſtones in fair Water, ſuch as will not diſſolve, yet give the Water a taſte and tincture, and after they have ſtood in it three or four hours, water it with this Water, and the ſcent and offenſiveneſs will be taken away from it.

To preſerve Gravel or Shell'd Walks from being turned up or made unſightly by Worms, Snails and other Inſects.

When you have levelled the Ground, lay a laying of Gravel four inches thick, raiſing it in the middle, that the ſides ſloaping may ſhoot off the Rain, and your Graſs or Flower-Borders may riſe decently on either ſide; and when it is well gone over with the Rowler five or ſix times, leave it to a Shower of Rain to ſoak and ſettle; and when the Sun has again dryed it, take dirty or waſte Salt, either Bay or White, as you can get it, and ſow it pretty thick, about a quarter of an inch deep, on the ſurface of the Gravel; then rowl it over, that it be preſſed in, and evened in every place; then ſift fine Gravel over it, about two inches thick, rowl it as before, and when it is evened, you may cover it with fine Shells, if you have them, and rowl them as the other; and the ſalt remaining or diſſolving, will ſo tincture the Earth, that no offenſive Inſect can live in it. If Salt be dear, or ſcarce to be had, get Slack'd-lime, and ſift it very fine, taking all the ſtones out of it, and order it as the Salt, which will effect the ſame, but not ſo well nor laſting.

CHAP. VIII.

How to place and order your Conſervatory *or* Green-Houſe, *and the choice Plants and Flowers that are to be kept therein, to preſerve them from nipping Winds and Froſts, till the proper Seaſon of bringing them abroad again.*

THE Art and Diligence of the Gardner is, as I may properly call it, but the Handmaid to Nature, the Miſtreſs of Production; yet good Skill here much aſſiſts and improves her Work, preſerves tender Plants, Shrubs, and Flowers from the Hurts of inclement Airs, eſpecially ſuch as are brought out of hot Countries into the Northern Region, and are not naturally produced here; for which Reaſon, having already given a large account of many uſeful Things and Matters, conducing to inſtruct the Gardner in his curious Art, I now come in the Cloſe to give other Inſtructions deſired to be known by many, but yet rarely found to the purpoſe, and that is the framing and ordering the Green-Houſe to preſerve choice Plants in, againſt the extremity of the Seaſon, that will otherwiſe infallibly kill them on a ſudden, or make them pine away by degrees; for ſuch tender Greens as laſt all the Year, are not to be kept without much Care, ſometimes they muſt be aired abroad, and at others kept cloſe

in the Green-Houſe or Conſervatory; and therefore every choice Garden ought to have ſuch a Houſe in the manner following.

This Houſe muſt be of a Timber frame, plaſtered within and without, three times as long as broad, that the Pots and Boxes wherein your choice Flowers and Plants are, may be placed in rows, a little diſtance from each other, leſt they incumber and prejudice one another; ſtrew the Floor with dry Ruſhes let the length be from Eaſt to Weſt, and have South Windows of Saſhes, with cloſe Shutters, that when the South Sun is warm, even in Winter, you may open them a little to let in the comfortable Beams and freſh Air, which greatly cheriſh all Vegetives; but in the bitter Seaſon keep them cloſe, ſtopping the leaſt crack with dry Moſs. Let the Houſe be low, under the Wind, that it ſhake not when Storms blow to looſen the Roots of the Plants which in the cold Seaſon are feeble, and the Fibres looſened much, endanger their growth. As for the Door, let it be double, that is, a porch Door and an inward Door, that one may be ſhut whilſt the other is opened.

Many keep Stoves within their Green-Houſes, and Subterranean ſtifling Fires, that with their ſulterineſs, and the groſs Vapours occaſioned thereby, cauſe a ſenſible languiſhing in tender Plants, which, if not remedied by the ſudden letting in the free Air, will kill or blaſt them; and then if it be in the extremity of Winter, in cold nipping Froſts, or bleak Winds, it is not proper to be done, for ſuch extream cold Air coming to them on a ſudden, chills them too much, and endangers them on the other ſide, ſo that as before they expreſſed a languor or drooping, now you will perceive the Leaves ſhrivel up, and ſometimes the whole Leaf dry away, but conſequently the edges will grow whitiſh, and pallid Spots appear on the reſt, and this fails not, in ſuch caſes, to Orange and Limon-Trees. Therefore ſince all Green-Houſes do require artificial Heat to preſerve the Plants in Extremity of Weather, take my ſafe Advice herein: To adminiſter to it kindly, to nouriſh and keep lively what you intruſt your Houſe withal, lay aſide all Pans of Charcoal, Stoves in the Houſe, and ſuch like ſtifling ſuffocating things, and build a Stove at the Weſt-end of the Houſe, without doors, with a Chimney, or Funnel, a Hearth and Aſh-hole, convenient, and cloſe ſheltered from the Wind by Boards or other ſhelter, impaling it both from that and the Rain, and Snow, that falls cold in the Winter Seaſon; then have ſmall earthen Pipes, made hard to endure the Fire, place the larger end of three of theſe in the Hearth, or Fire-place, and let the ſmaller ends paſs through the Wall into the Green Houſe, ſo that when the Fire is well lighted, and glows hot, being ſhut up cloſe, the Heat or pureſt part of it, without Smoak, may be carried through theſe Pipes into the Green Houſe, which will gently diffuſe it ſelf all over the Place, and expell Miſts and Damps; and when you think it ſufficiently warmed, then by a ſmall pipe paſſing through the Wall at the Eaſt end, let in the Air, but not too much; then plug up the out-holds of the Pipes, with Stopples of the ſame Materials; and this mixture will let you ſee your Plants wonderfully flouriſh, when others that have not this means applied to them will be under a ſenſible Decay; and this us'd twice or thrice a Week, or oftner, if the Weather be very extream, will coſt leſs Fuel than Stoves within, and be abundantly more ſervicable; for that the Smoak and Sulphur of the Fire, in this caſe, which is hurtful, flies away, and has no effect on the Plant to leave a Scurf or Duſt on the Leaves, which ſicken them, and render them ſubject to a Decay, making them alſo unſightly by a ſooty cloudy colour, when they are brought abroad in due time to be aired and flouriſh, or give a ſightly Proſpect in the Garden.

If the Houſe ſtands in a cold Place, mat it within ſide; and this much avails to keep off the Vapours that would otherwiſe ariſe from the giving or ſweating of the plaſter'd Walls; and if fine ſifted Sawduſt, or Seacoal-Aſhes, were ſtrewed on the

Floor

Floor, three inches thick, and covered with the dry Ruſhes I mentioned, it would be ſo much the better, to prevent the moiſt Damps ariſing out of the Earth, which the Heat will otherwiſe exhale, and this many times commixing with the Cold, mildews the Leaves; and as you find occaſion for greater or leſſer Heat, ſo you may open one, two, or three of the Heat-pipes at a time, and keep the Air-pipe ſtopped, when the Wind is at Eaſt or North-Eaſt, very violent Cold.

When you enter, move the Leaves and Branches a little with your hand, and fan off the Duſt, but ſhake not, nor looſen the Roots, and never forget to ſhut one Door after you, e'er you have opened the other, unleſs in the Spring, or the Day be very warm, leſt the cold Air, too much mingling with the Warmth, extinguiſh it, or cauſe the Air to putrifie.

As for the opening the Window-Shutters in a Sun-ſhiny Day, when the Wind is ſtill, let it be no longer than from Eleven to Two, from the end of *October* to the beginning of *March*, for no longer has the Sun a ſenſible Warmth in this Climate, between thoſe Months; and unleſs you find the Weather open, only draw up the Shutters, but do not draw up the Glaſs Saſhes; and when in the Spring you begin to draw up the Saſhes, do it by degrees, a little one Day and more another, which uſe the Plants to Degrees of Air; ſo that coming abroad, after their long Confinement, they may be the better able to brook it, ſurrounding them on every ſide, for too ſudden Alterations are prejudicial.

You may, if you will be at the Charge of it, hang your Green-Houſe with Bays, or ſome coarſe Woolen, and it will render it the warmer; and obſerve never to let the Cieling be too high, for then it will not reflect the Heat kindly, but in aſcending, it will loſe the Vigour it ſhould beſtow on the Plants; and I approve it rather to be thatched with a thick Coat of Wheat-Straw, or fine Reeds, that will keep out all wet, than to be Tyled or Slated; for though in a Nobleman or Gentleman's Garden it is not ſo ſightly, yet it abundantly more keeps out the cold Air that beats down upon it; but be ſure take particular Care that no noiſom Inſects lurk in this Houſe, to infeſt the Plants with their Bites, or venomous Spume, and if you perceive any ſuch marks, ſmoak it with Frankincenſe and Storax, or other perfuming and ſtrong-ſcented Drugs, and it will kill or drive them away; but do it not too much nor too often.

CHAP. IX.

Of ordering your choice Plants and Flowers in the Conſervatory, *to make them flouriſh, as Oranges, Limons, Aloes,* &c. *And the Seaſon to remove them; with more particular Obſervations in the Stove or Fire-place.*

HAving thus far traced this matter, I come now to give ſome other Directions that a skillful Gardner ought to know and put in practice.

In the Seaſon of Houſing, trouble not any of your Plants with much Water; water them as little as poſſible, and ſome not at all, as Aloes, which require no more moiſt Nouriſhment than the Air gives them, and the Earth they are ſet in; neither within nor without doors, for Water makes them ſickly and die away; and this is the Reaſon the unskilful cannot propagate them, but that they fail under their hands; for when they perceive the Duſt in their Pots or Caſes Dry, they conclude they want Water, when indeed they would be well without, and the watering the deſtruction of them, unleſs a little, when the Seaſon is very hot, and the Sun too much dries up the moiſture of the Air; and even then it is better to ſet them in a refreſhing Shade near ſome pleaſant Water, than to pour Water to the Roots.

When you water others, as Oranges, Limons, Myrtle, &c the want of which is ſhewn by the much curling of their Leaves at the edges or points; if it be in the cold Seaſon, make the Water-Blood warm, and ſteep a little Hens-dung and Pigeons-dung in it; ſo ſtrain it out by Inclination, and pour it ſoftly on, a little at a time, about two inches from the Stem or Bole, that it may ſoak in leiſurely, and ſpread through all the Earth to the Root. If they have too much Water, it will be known by their Leaves turning pale, then open the holes at the bottom, that the moiſture may effuſe, and ſift a little fine Mould on the top, raiſing it higher about the Bole, and be careful to take off ſuch Leaves as are withered or corrupted, leſt they infect the reſt that are near them with the like Diſaſter; and if you conceive this proceeds from the Root's not well ſpreading, you may move the Bole or Stalk; which looſening the Earth a little, will give it better way, and feel with a ſmall ſtick, or your Finger, whether any ſtones or Sticks be caſually put into the Mould, to hinder the fibrous or bulbous Roots from taking effect; if ſo, remove them, and fill up the ſpace with freſh black Mould; and by this means the Roots will prevail to an encreaſe, and draw in Nouriſhment ſo as to ſupply the Stem, and conſequently the Branches; and every Week, at fartheſt, with a fine Iron Comb, or hand Rake go over the Surface of the Mould in the Pots and Caſes, but not deep, and be ſure to free them from Graſs or Weeds, if any ſuch thing infeſt them.

I would adviſe you not to ſet your Pots, Boxes, or Caſes, in which your choice Plants are, as ſome do, too cloſe, leſt the Miſts and Damps ariſing, ſeize and ſicken them, but ſet Forms or Stools regular, and place them in decent order, that they may not only give a comely Proſpect, but the Heat and Air freely paſs between them, placing the tendereſt neareſt to the Pipes that admit the Heat, and the moſt hardy towards the Pipe at the other end which conveys in the Air. Above all things, keep them from interfering with one another, by running in or intangling; for many of them thus nouriſhed with kindly Heat and pleaſant Air, will grow even in the Winter, little or much; nay, you will perceive ſome to bloſſom, others produce Fruits; And by thus ordering, many choice Flowers will blow in the depth of the cold Seaſon. So that here by Art a Natural Spring is imitated, or rather effectually produced; and by this means curious Flowers are produced at *Chriſtmas*, in a hard Winter, to the Admiration of the Ignorant, who cannot dive into the ways by which they are raiſed, and cauſed to blow ſo unſeaſonable, to what Nature in her common courſe produces; which Art makes a Gardner much in eſteem, whether it be for his own proper Advantage, or he does it to ſatisfie the Curioſity of others whom he ſerves.

Now ſome may object, I have ſpoken of a Fire-ſtove, that is the Life of the Green-Houſe, for nouriſhing the Plants with kindly Heat in the rigid Seaſon, and have not told the Materials proper to make it of; therefore to ſatifie them more fully, a word or two of this, though ſomewhat by way of Digreſſion, as not falling in due order.

This Stove I would have made of Stone; two foot and a half high, four-ſquare, a foot and a half each ſquare, much like that uſed by the Chymiſts of our Age in their Laboratories; the Stone muſt be ſuch as will endure a Heat very fierce, without ſcaling, cracking, ſlawing, &c. and if Stone cannot be well gotten, fine cloſe-moulded Bricks may indifferently ſerve, layed with well-tempered Mortar, of ſuch a thickneſs that the Heat may not penetrate through them, topped like a Baker's Oven, and the Hearth with a Grate for the Aſhes to fall through into, the Aſh-hole ſmooth and even, the Door the Fuel is put in at but very narrow, the Fuel Old Coal or Charcoal, which muſt be tended, during the giving the Heat, with freſh Supplies, and the Door of Iron, kept as cloſe as may be, and a Plate of Iron or a fixed Door of the ſame Metal on the Aſh-hole, the Funnel that evaporates ſmall as a Leaden

Pipe;

Pipe; it may be made of an Earthen Pipe that will endure the Fire, or the top of it Tin, ſo that as little Heat may go out as may poſſibly be hindred, and no more Air come in than will keep the Fire in its vigour. But to cut ſhort here, this is a Workman's buſineſs, and cannot ſo well be deſcribed in Words, as to be taken by Pattern, or the Experience of a Maſon or Bricklayer; to do which however, theſe Directions will give a true Inſight to the Matter.

CHAP. X.

Of Degrees of Cold, and what Greens or Choice Flowers beſt endure them, and what are too tender for ſome of them, and muſt be timely houſed.

The leaſt enduring Plants.

THoſe that endure the leaſt degree of Cold, are ſuch as are the Produce naturally of hot Countries, and are brought hither as Rarities, as Ægyptica Lavendula, Pomum-Ethiop, the Great Indian-Fig, Capſum-Indicum, Spinuſum, Phaſcol, Chemela-Tricoccos, Arabian Ornithagalon, the Syrian Marums, Styrax, Coultea-Ordonata, Balſamum, Helichriſo, Amaranthus, Aſphaltus, and ſome others; and theſe muſt be early taken care of when abroad, and not brought out too ſoon. About *Bartholomew*-tide; when the Morning-Froſts or Cold Dews fall, cover them with Baſs Mats, or warm Straw, Morning and Evening, uncovering them in the heat of the Day for 8 or 9 Hours, or from 9 in the Morning till an Hour before Sun-ſet: and let them not remain longer out of the Conſervatory or Green-Houſe than the beginning of *September*.

Plants and Flowers bearing the next Degree of Cold.

Cijtiſus, Vernal, Cyclamen, Alexandrian, Lawrl, Laventine, Myrtle, Aloes, Lentiſcus, Canna-Indica, Orange-Tree, Citron-Tree, Oleanders, Jacobæa Marina, Digitalis-Hyſpan, Geranium-Triſte, Chema, Leo, Alpheſtris, Virginian-Jeſſamine, the choiceſt Carnations, Abrotanum, the Japan Reed, Hediſarium, Clypeatum, and ſome few others. Theſe muſt be covered up the beginning of *September*, and houſed about the middle of the Month, if cold Rains fall, or Froſt happen more than uſual, if open Weather at the end of it.

Of Plants and Flowers that beſt endure extream Cold.

Mountain-Fretillaria, Agnus-Caſtus, Cherry-Lawrels, Arbo-reſceris, Althæ, Frutax, Tijthimal, Aconitæ-verum, Matricaria, Spaniſh-Geniſta, Jacca, Syſinelchium Bulbous-Iris, Pomgranates, Eaſtern-Jacynths, Arabian-Feſeli, Æthiopian-Veronica, double-white Lychnis, Perſian-Jeſſamine, Ceneraria, and ſome others, of which theſe are the choiceſt, and moſt worthy to be preſerved. They endure cold to a great degree; but if they ſtand abroad, and are not well covered, in the extream Froſts, they will die; therefore 'tis not prudence to truſt them out of your Green-Houſe or Conſervatory no longer than when you perceive the Froſt harden the Ground a little, and Ice remains beyond the Sun's Power to melt in the Day-time.

CHAP. XI.

Prognoſticks, or Obſervations by the Moon, and other Cœleſtial Bodies, when the proper Times are to Sow, Set, Plant, Prune, &c.

THe Ancients obſerved, in all Undertakings of this nature, the Moon's Motion, and Poſition of the other Planets; and though it is not at preſent much regarded by ſuch as uſe the Art of Gardning, yet I am of Opinion that it will not be amiſs to ſet down brief Directions of this kind, for ſuch as will experience them, and no doubt it may be with Succeſs. In

In the first place then, Prune your Vines, the Moon being in the Full, posted to Sagittary, Scorpio, Leo, or Taurus; it is held that neither Bird nor Insect will infest your Grapes, nor will they be subject to wither or decline.

Secondly, Graft not in the Moon's Waning, or when she is not visible.

Thirdly, Sow or plant when the Moon is in Taurus, Scorpio, or Virgo, in good Aspect of Saturn.

Fourthly, When the Moon is in Libra or Scorpio, dress your Garden, and prune small Trees and Shrubs, and they will prosper much the better.

Fifthly, When the Moon is above the Earth, in the first Quarter, and if it may be joyned to Venus or Jupiter, cut such Trees as you would have quickly grow again.

Sixthly, when the Moon is in Cancer, set and sow all sorts of Pulse.

Seventhly, Neither sow, plant, nor graft, or meddle with any thing relating to Gardening, when the Sun or Moon is eclipsed, or on that Day, or when the Moon is afflicted by either of the unfortunate Planets, *viz.* Mars or Saturn.

Eighthly, When the Moon is in the encrease, sow, set, or do such things as you would have of a speedy growth, and flourish well.

Ninthly, Sowing Seed in expectation of double Flowers, observe to time the sowing in the Full of the Moon; and when it is come up, and fit to remove, do this also in the Full of the Moon, and continue so to do as oft as you transplant.

Tenthly, If you are desirous to have low, shrub, dwarf Trees or Plants, then it is held proper to cut, set, or plant in the Wain of the Moon.

And these Rules are held as universal by Astrologers and such expert Gardners as affirm their own Experience in the Observation and Practice of them.

Choice Observations in watering young Trees, Herbs, Flowers, Seed, &c. to Preserve and Encrease them.

Some make great ado with often watering and sprinkling, when indeed once well done would save them a great deal of Labour, and make the Plants thrive the better: When you find watering necessary, which you may perceive by putting your Finger inso the Ground, and there be a driness; then pour Water gently, but at a distance from the Root, unless small things, that it may leisurely soak, and spreading in the Earth, approach the Roots by degrees: And this done well in the Evening, unless in a very hot Season, will be sufficient for 24 Hours, and in cool Airs 44 Hours. Water not in the Morning, unless the Drought of the Day be extream, making the Trees or Plants languish by the Sun's exhaling too much moisture; for if the Ground be heated when wet, it scalds the Roots of tender Plants, and makes them languish by degrees, if not die presently.

To order Vineyards.

IN page 37 I have spoken of Vines but now more largely: The Vines that I chiefly recommend for advantage, and worthy to recompence Labour are,

1. The White Muscadine, 2. The small Black Grape, call'd by some the Cluster Grape. 3. The Parsly Grape. 4. The Muscadella a White Grape, not altogether so large as the Muscadine, but as soon ripe; and indeed all these Sorts are early ripe. 5. The Frontiniach, both Red and White. 6. A new White Grape that ripens before the Muscadine, either in Standard or against a Wall. These the great Mr *Evelyn* prefers before any other for storing a Vineyard; tho' there are divers other Sorts worthy the Observation of those that love Variety, that will require the artificial Reflexions and Help of Walls to bring them to Perfection.

Of the Soil and Situation of a Vineyard.

Chooſe a light Sandy Ground, and if it be a little ſtrong on the Surface, it is not to be deſpiſed. The ſituation ought to be on the Side or declivity of an Hill lying to the *South*, or *South-Weſt*, which is favour'd with other Hills a little higher, or with Woods on the *Eaſt* and *North*, would be the better to preſerve it from the ſeverity of the cold Weather that proceeds from thoſe Quarters. This light Soil, having a bottom of Gravel or Chalk, under a Surface two Foot in Depth, and free from ſprings, cannot be too dry or hot, in caſe it be not addicted to Heath, for ſeldom any thing grows where that over ſpreads; but if it bears Brambles, it's a good Sign, and infinitely preferable to the other. And indeed I know by Experience that there is no Plant equal or agreeable to the Vine as this humble Shrub, which grows moſtly and bears the largeſt Berries in dry Banks, ſtony, hilly, and hot places, ſo where the Vine delights to grow. I do not by this adviſe you to plant Vines among Brambles; but thoſe places well grubb'd and trench'd, are very proper, becauſe the Vine frequently thrives in ſuch Ground, ſo I count it a proper Spot to plant a Vineyard in it. This I have inſiſted on, and alſo a Chalkly or Gravelly Bottom from often Experience, having always found, that in ſuch hard, ſtony or Chalky Ground (in caſe it was not loomy) Vines mightily flouriſh, eſpecially if the Ground has lain dormant or fallow a good while, and not impoveriſhed by the Plow, where the Green-ſwarth covers thoſe ſmall Riſings amongſt the Downs, not too much laid open to the boiſterouſneſs of the Weather. Therefore let not Gentlemen be diſcouraged, from attempting planting Vineyards, by reaſon it has been neglected; for the Diſcouragement has been occaſioned from miſinformation of a proper Soil and Situation, crediting Foreigners, who moſt commonly chooſe our beſt and richeſt Land, without regard to our Climate, and other Circumſtances; not conſidering that the deepneſs and fatneſs of the Earth contributes more to exceſſive largeneſs of the Branches and broadneſs of the Leaves, and deepneſs of the Root than to the juſt and natural Stature of the Stem, excellency and plenty of the Fruit, that are expected from theſe Plantations. In Loamy or Sandy Land, Vines grow more plentifully than where Gravel, Sand or Chalk are Ingredients, whoſe ſurface of Mold is not ſo deep, a foot and a half being ſufficient. But this Rock of Chalk and Gravel, does in the mean while hinder the Root from going too deep, forcing it to ſpread the more towards the top, by which means the tender and fibrous Roots receive the Natural, ſweet, and bountiful Showers, Dews, and Influences which impart both Life and Pregnancy to theſe noble Plantations: By this they receive the nouriſhing Warmth of the Sun, impregnated with a Volatile Salt, which produced near the ſurface of the Earth only, is drunk in by the delicate Pores and Apertures of the hidden Roots, whilſt the deeper buried, deprived of theſe fruitull Advantages, grow only barren, by producing watery and inſipid Leaves or Branches without Fruit; the Mould in which they lie, being altogether ſluggiſh and unactive, for want of heat and prolifick Imbraces of the Sun. This occaſions ſo many Vines, tho' plentiful of Branches, thin of Joints; and thoſe even of the ſame Kind, planted in better Ground, as thick of Knots as a Man's Finger is of Joints, from whence thoſe Shoots are produced which our Vine-planter ſhould preſerve at pruning time to ſet his Fruit and expect his Vintage from.

And now, let me tell you, though Land ſhould as to the Soil be qualified as I have deſcribed, yet if it has not alſo the Declivity and Aſpect already mentioned, it will not be ſo fit for your purpoſe, becauſe Hills are clearer from morning Fogs and Miſts than low Grounds are; beſides, plain Lands do not ſo ſoon injoy the benefit of the morning Sun, nor does it continue ſo long on them in the Evening by ſome Hours. For as this Plant does above all things affect to be dry,

eſpecially

especially after the Fruit be a little grown and till it come to be ripe, there is nothing worse for it than in that season to be affected with the cold and heavy Damps of those Fogs and Mists; and it is in that, as in divers other things, that the other more Southern Plantations have the Advantage of us, that these Fogs, Mists and Damps are scattered sooner than with us, which therefore we must endeavour to surmount by our diligence, and in making choice of a Situation more lofty.

How to prepare the Vineyard for Planting.

A Turfy Surface which has not been broken up or sowed of a long while, I prefer as best, and have given my Reasons for it. But in *July*, when the Earth is very dry and fit to burn, plow up the Swarth, and when very crusty, place the Turfs in small Heaps and burn them, and spread the Ashes over your Grounds to be trenched in *December* or *January* following; be sure lay your dryed materials in little Heaps. The Ground thus prepared, in trenching continue your Ranges so, as they may run thwart your Hill; I mean, let your Ridges pass from *East* to *West*, that the Rising and Setting Sun may by this means pass through the Intervals, which it will not do in the common posture of *North* and *South*. Several reasons I could give for this Advice, and answer all Objections, but that I study Brevity.

To Plant your Sets.

When your Ground is thus prepared, measure a Yard by a Line strained, dig the Earth a foot deep, or the single Spit, cleansing your Trench, and shoveling up the Crumbs, that your Bottom may be clean, and the Edges sharp, which by your Measure you must guide, that so the Trenches may be of an equal size. Then fit your Plants, Layers or Roots, so pruned, both Roots and Branches, that you leave not above two or three Eyes of the young Wood upon them; plant them then in the Bottom of your Trenches, so that the Roots may lye cross them, and somewhat sloaping on a strait Line, as near as you can imagine. In this posture, cover them with the Mold three or four Inches, and so order it that the upper part of your Plant be lower than the Ground two or three Inches, that when you come to level the Ridges, the top of your Sets may be even with the Area; then proceed to plant them two Foot one from the other, that so the Ridges may have a Yard interval between. When you have done this, take long Dung or Litter, and strow in your Trenches a reasonable thickness to cover the Earth and preserve the Roots from dry and peircing Winds, which will otherwise mightily prejudice them; this will also keep them cold and fresh in Summer, till they are fixed in their Stations; after this they will only need to be diligently how'd and cleansed from Weeds, before they come to Seed; and in howing, work a little of the side of your Ridges with your Instrument towards the Roots of the new planted Vines, to comfort and settle them. This Diagram refers to the order and distance of planting the Sets.

Directions to dress, prune, and govern your Plantation.

Begin not to prune your new-Set Vineyard, before the *January* after, and then cut off all the Shoots as near as you can, sparing only the strongest and most vigorous to each Root, which you must leave with two Eyes of young Wood; and then let them rest till *May*, the second Year after Planing; and then be sure, to clear the Roots of all Colateral suckers which only rob or exhaust your Sets; and leave none but what break out of these two or three Eyes of the young Wood before mentioned, continuing careful to Suppress, the Weeds, and in your howing to cherish the Roots of your Plants with some of the Ridge Earth, as I taught you before. And thus you should govern your Vineyard the third Year, cutting off very close, all the shoots in the same Month, and only sparing the stoutest which is next the Ground, yet so that you leave him not above three or four Eyes. When you have

thus

thus done, dig all your Vineyard, and lay it very level, but with great Care, that you croud not nor cut any of the Roots with your main Spade; as for the younger it's not ſo material, for they will but grow the thicker.

In this third Year perhaps you may enjoy ſome Fruit of your Labour; which if agreeable to your hopes, will require Props, which are uſually made of Hazel, Aſh, Oak, and in length about four Foot, and as thick as a Broom-ſtick; which being rightly placed on the North-Side of your Plant, in *May* you muſt (the Thieves which ſpring from the Root of the Plant, muſt be rubb'd off, and only leave ſuch as come from the Stem, or ſuch as may bear Fruit:) bind up the Shoots of thoſe three Eyes, which were order'd to be left, as being moſt likely to be Bearers that Year; which in *June* you may diſcover when the Fruit is about the Size of ſmall Shot, break off the Branches at the ſecond Joint above the Fruit, and the reſt tye to the Prop: You muſt mind to break, and not cut your Vines, for wounds being made at this time with a Knife, or any other Inſtrument that is ſharp, will not be ſo ſoon healed; therefore the beſt time for this Work, is in the heat of the Day, when they are apt for Conſolidation, without Injury to the Fruit; but till the fourth Year it is not regularly that you can expect ſtore of Fruit; when ordering your Vineyard as before you are directed; beſure to provide a good ſtock of Props, which may ſerve the whole Plantation.

How to Improve and order your Vineyard after the firſt four Years, till it needs renewing.

The firſt Year after your Vines have bore Fruit, you will have to every Plant three or four ſhoots, therefore in *January* or *December*, beſure prune all away but the ſtrongeſt; which you muſt leave for Standards, which muſt be about four or five Foot in height, cutting the reſt away very cloſe to the Body of the Mother-Plant (that is, ſuch as appear uſeleſs Shoots) but mind you ſecure ſuch as are about the bigneſs of a large Reed, to which leave two or three Eyes next the Ground; then ſet a Prop to every one of your Vines, and to them tye the Maſter-Shoots, which you were ordered to leave four Foot high, with ſome tender Oziers about one Foot from the Ground, bending the top of theſe ſhoots to the next Prop from the Ground about two Foot, ſo that your Ranks may ſtand in the likeneſs of Arches, whilſt the Eyes that you ſpared now in dreſſing, ſhall be bound to the Props the *May* following, for the next Years bearing, to the great increaſe of your Grapes. Then in *May* or the beginning of *June*, (when the ſmall Raiſins are of the bigneſs before mentioned) ſtop the ſecond Joint above the Fruit as you were before taught; but be mindful to leave the ſtrongeſt ſhoot to be the ſtandard Plant of the Year following. In *Auguſt* the Fruit will begin to turn ripe, break off ſuch ſhoots as you may find to thick, upon thoſe you prune in *May*; but do this with diſcretion, and only ſo as to let in the Sun to ripen the Cluſters overſhadowed, which leave ſcreened with ſome of the Leaves to preſerve them both from the ſcorching of the Sun by Day, as the Dews by Night, both which are hurtful. Obſerve now that the ſtandards you laſt tyed to the Props at a Foot high, and whoſe tops were bent to be next, will be grown old Wood the Year enſuing: Therefore in the firſt pruning ſeaſon, or *January* after, remember you cut them cloſe to the Ground, ſupplying their Places with the ſtrongeſt ſhoot of your young Wood, which for the purpoſe you left four Foot high, and which you muſt order as you have been inſtructed the Year before, prnning the reſt at the very Earth, and leaving to each of the ſtrongeſt ſhoots, two Eyes as is before mentioned. And now give your Plantation an ordinary digging, with the ſame care of the Maſter Roots, and let your Props ſtand till the proper ſeaſon. I inſiſt the more upon an early pruning; to prevent their bleeding; yet ſome are of opinion, that this ſuperfluity of Vines, preſerving the young

and forwarder ſhoots the backwarder in *April*; by this prevents the blaſt of *May*. For this reaſon many do not cut their Plants before *March*, but they ſpend too much of their vigour in my opinion of theſe late cuttings off or pruning, and are as much liable to blaſting for want of ſufficient ſtrength, to ſupport the tender ſhoots; whereas pruned in *November*, they never bleed, but being cut before the Sap ariſes, their wounds become hard and dry; and the ſpirit of the Plant kept in, makes them break out with more vigour at the Eyes, furniſhing the Branches with Pride and ill-humoured Buds.

How to manure your Vineyard with Compoſt, and when the moſt proper time.

If you find your Vineyard Poor in working, which the poorneſs of your Crop will ſoon make evident, then prune your Vines as you are directed; and ſpread good rotten Dung mixt with Lime, over all your Ground; let this lye a whole Winter, that its virtue may be waſhed into the earth: and this dunging I prefer much before the digging and mixing it with your Mould. But to have it in perfection, lay your materials in a large heap, in a proper place near your Vineyard: A Layer of freſh and natural Earth taken from the Surface, and then another of Dung a good deal thicker, then again a Layer of Earth, and ſo on, mixing a Load of Lime to every ten Loads of Dung, will make an extraordinary Dung or Compoſt for your uſe. But your ſtore will require the maturity of two or three Years, and to be covered with the before-mentioned qualified Earth, and ſomewhat ſhaded, that neither the Sun may draw from it, nor the Rains ſpoil it. In the Months of *January* and *February*, dung your whole Vineyard with this Compoſition; after you have, as I adviſed, pruned your Vines, I gueſs thirty Load may well ſerve an Acre, but ſpread it and lay it equally, and then with a ſlight digging you may turn it in, but not too deep, and in a ſhort time you will find it as light and tractable as the freſheſt Earth, which properly I aſcribe to the Lime. This done, re-eſtabliſh your Props, and with your Foot tread the Earth cloſe to the Roots, to defend their Fibres from *March* dry Winds, which will even penetrate the looſer Mould. But this Work ought to be performed in a dry and not in a wet Seaſon, leſt the Earth bind too faſt, and for other Reaſons. And thus I have ſhewn how Vineyards may be planted, governed, and continued with great Succeſs in *England*.

To prevent Bleeding or Gleeting of Vines that are cut or wounded.

Put hot Aſhes on the place ſeveral times; or drop on the place that bleedeth ſome melted Brimſtone; or take Mans Dung that is dry and ſtiff, and bind it to the place very hard with Packthread, or Bole-armoniack Powder, and the White of an Egg, mixt well, and bind it faſt on the place that bleeds with Flax, or Linen or Woolen Cloath. Some ſear the place with a hot Iron, and then put a good quantity of Turpentine thereon, and bind it faſt on with a Cloath and Packthread, or melted Pitch pour on your Vine.

To keep Wine from ſouring.

Tye a peice of very Salt Bacon, on the inſide of your Barrel; ſo it touch not the Wine, will do it.

To keep any Wine good ten or eleven Years.

Draw a third part out of your Hogshead every Vintage, and then rowl it on its Lees, and after fill it up with the beſt new Wine of the ſame kind you can get.

To make good Vineger.

Caſt into your Wine Salt, Pepper, and ſower Leaven mingled together, and then take a Red-hot Tyle or Gad of Steel, and put into it: Or put a Radiſh Root, a Beet Root, or a Slice of Barly Bread new baked, and put into the Wine; then ſet it in the Sun or a Chimny-corner, near the fire, and in a little time it will make good Vinegar. You may make it what ſort you pleaſe, Infuſing into it Red Roſe Leaves, or Elder, or Juice of Mints, and Centry, &c.

To make Vinegar of corrupted Wine.

Boyl it, and ſcum it all off that riſeth in boiling; let it thus continue till a third part is boyl'd away; then put it into a Vinegar Veſſel, and put ſome Charvel to it, cover the Veſſel ſo cloſe that no Air get into it, and in a little time it will be ſtrong and good.

To prepare a Gentleman's Garden.

Let not your Garden that is to be walled be above forty Yards Square, for that is full enough for that you deſign for your beſt Garden of choice Fruits and Flowers to grow in; let your Garden Walls be, if with convenience, between *North-Eaſt*, *North-Weſt*, *South-Eaſt*, *South Weſt*, for then the two latter will be good enough for the beſt Fruit, and the two former good enough for Cherries, Plumbs, and baking Pears; and if you plant a Crab-Hedge of three rows, which will grow up to be a better Fence than a Wall, againſt *South-Weſt* and *Weſt* Winds, which is believed to blow two parts in three of the whole Year, and if you plant an Elm here and there to grow high, it will be a means to guard againſt *Weſterly* Winds, which blaſts your Fruit, more than thoſe from the *Eaſt*, being much frequenter. Your Platform thus laid, and you have made your Gravel and Graſs Walks according to ſome Patterns here preſcribed, or as beſt pleaſe your Fancy; then build your Walls that the Fruit-Trees may be ready to plant in *October*, and in the mean while be digging your Ground to mellow all Winter and Summer. If your Garden is full of Weeds, deſtroy them by laying the whole Ground fallow all the Summer, by digging them over two or three ſeveral times, eſpecially in the greateſt Drouth and Heat, which not only certainly kills the Weeds, but it mellows and inriches the Ground greatly; and, let me tell you, that if you ſow any thing with expectation of Fruit, while your Garden is full of Weeds, it is all loſt labour. You ought, if your Ground is not extraordinary good, to dig a Hole four Foot Square, and two Foot deep; and if your Ground is a ſtiff Clay or Marle, get Rubbiſh of Lime-Stone, ſmall Bricks, and pieces of Tyle, Drift-*Sand*, and Coal-Aſhes, to mix with your beſt Mold and Dung; fill up your Hole with this about ſix Inches higher than the reſt of the level, and let ſome of your fineſt Mold, that is free from Dung, be at the top to plant your Tree in: But in caſe your *Soil* be not very rich, or a hungry Sand or Gravel, you muſt fill the Holes with the beſt rotten Horſe or Cow-muck you can get; and mix it with the richeſt Mold. Your Holes thus cleanſed from Weeds, and prepared and filled as before directed, put a Stick upright in the middle of the Hole, for a Mark where to plant your Tree in the order you deſire. But if you would have your Trees well planted, there is nothing better than to get a Mold or Earth that has not for many Years, (the older the better) and that which is on a waſte Ground or Common, whereon Cattle has been uſed to ſtand to feed or Shelter, or conveniency; this having never been uſed, there is as great fertility in it, as in any other Compoſitions of made Earth, eſpecially for Trees; and therefore the more you put in of this, the better: But dig not of this Mold above a Spit deep, taking firſt off the upper Turf; and for a Garden Soil of Marle or Clay, remember to mix Coal-Aſhes, or Drift Sand with it, or your Tree will die in a few Years, or canker and come to nothing; for, for want of this Mixture, all will quickly be converted to its native *Soil*. Set not your new Trees where an old one has grown, without taking care, that ſo far as the old Tree went, you dig up the Ground and fill it up again with this new untried Mold as far as the old Roots went, or the new need to go; and if your *Soil* be very ſhallow, or your Garden lye over-wet and moiſt, lay Tyles or Bricks, all over the bottom of your Trench, that ſo your Root may not ſtrike downward, but ſpread abroad, by this they bear Fruit much the better. You may alſo, if your Ground is too wet, ſpewy or Clay *Soil*, dig Tranches 26 or 36

inches deep, and lay Pebbles, Rubbiſh, or Stones at the bottom, and lay ſome green Boughs on the top, and then throw the Earth on again, and this will laſt many Years, and drain your Garden effectually.

To plant Fruit Trees.

Take care to ſet your Trees at a due Diſtance and Height, and prune their Roots, intirely taking away the ſmall Fibres, and ſhorning the bigger Roots to ſeven inches or thereabouts; and if any Wound or Bruiſe appears, cut that part of the Root off, three Spurs is ſufficient; but if there be more good ones they are never the worſe when pruned. If your Trees are dry by being ſeveral Days out of the Ground, ſteep them in a Tub of Milk and Water, or Ditch-water for a Day and Night, which will ſupple the Root, and make them grow when planted much ſooner and better. Prune the head alſo any time before the ſpring comes on; one Branch is enough for a Head, and I would not adviſe to above two. Prune above the place of Grafting.

A Dwarf ought to be placed as upright as you can; if for the Wall, ſet it from your Wall, leaning with its Top to the Wall. Obſerve that a great Head does endanger the Life of your Tree. But if your Tree is taken up very carefully, and with the Mold about the Root, I have known it ſucceed very well, if practiſed on ſmall young Trees. In a wet Clay Ground you can hardly plant too high, but in a warm dry Soil, a little height is ſufficient to keep new-planted Trees moiſt and cool for the firſt Year; and if need be for the ſecond, lay Fern and Straw five or ſix Inches thick, and two or three Foot round from the Stem of the Tree, having firſt laid rotten Dung all round the Tree, which keeps them warm and preſerves from the violent Froſts in Winter. But if you take Sand and lay it round the Stem of the Tree, and then pave it with Stones or ſmall Pebbles, *&c.* it will keep the Tree cool, and when you water it in Summer will let in the Water, and keep the Earth from being waſht away from the Roots. This method obſerve with your Ever-Greens, which ſeldom thrive after a removeal: you muſt plant them as before, but not prune them, eſpecially Yews, and Holly, which have matted Roots, and will hold the Earth to them, ſufficient to carry a ſmall Diſtance; or, if they go far, ſend them in Pots or Baskets, that neither Root nor Head may be touch'd with a Knife. If your Wall is ten or twelve Foot high, four Yards diſtance let them be planted; if but ſeven or eight Foot, five Yards diſtance or five and a half, ought to be allowed. But a Plumb, Pear, Apricock, and Cherry, requires a larger diſtance than a Peach or Nectarine. Our *London* Gardiners plant tall Fruit Trees, Cherries, or Plumbs betwixt the ſpaces of the Wall, ſo that the Top and Bottom is nigh furniſhed in two or three Years time, which is a commendable Practice. And then, as the Dwarfs ſpread and increaſe, they take quite away the tall ones, making Standards of them in their Orchards. But ſome rather chuſe to plant Vines in thoſe intermediate Places, which quickly runs up to the Top and bear the ſecond or third Year. Begin to plant about the fifteenth of *October* to the fifteenth of *March*, but avoid doing it in hard Froſts, and in caſe that happens, take them into your Cellar, and lay Mould over their Roots, and a good quantity of Straw over that, till the Froſt is gone. Planting in Autumn moſt Gardners prefer to *October* and *March*, if the Ground is not very Cold and over moiſt, and then it will ſwell, and be prepared for the Influence of the Sun in Spring, and the Earth be better fix'd and ſetled.

Your Trees being planted as before you are directed, and ſtanding with their tall Heads, till *March* begins, tack'd to the Wall, to be kept ſteddy, you may ſhorten their Heads as you have been directed, with a very ſharp Knife and a ſteddy Hand, that the Root may not be ſhaken nor hurt; cut it ſloping, the ſlope facing the Wall.

of

Of the Shape of a Garden, &c.

The Form of a Garden I have ſhewn you in ſeveral Cuts. Brick-wall is reckon'd the handſomeſt and beſt for Nailing, better then that of Stone; and Walls made of Earth and Straw, call'd Mud-walls are thought ſooner to ripen Fruit; and the Coping of Straw that is laid on the Walls, ſhelters them from down-right Rains. But, I ſay, theſe are not ſo comely as Brick and Stone-Walls. For your Borders under your Wall, a yard is ſufficient; and Dwarf-Box is both ſightly and durable, and kept with once clipping in a Year.

Thus I have laid down the beſt and eaſieſt Rules for Gardning yet extant, and all others of this kind that I have met with, are rather Amuſements, than inſtructive to a young Gardner, which is the deſign of this Book.

Ground bad to amend.

Earth that is bad and ſtinks or is meer dead, watery Loam, or elſe Gravelly and Stony, or full of Pebbles, or dry Sand only, take ſuch away to the Depth of a yard, in the chief places of the Garden, *viz.* for Trees and long rooted Plants, and 24 inches for leſſer Plants, filling it up with the beſt Mould you can; and if it be for a Garden next your Houſe, let it be two or three Foot lower than the Houſe, and from hence there ſhould be a Baluſters, with a few Steps to come down into this Garden, and it will look very Ornamental. If Ground is but indifferent, either too dry and light, or too tough and moiſt, or too much worn out, take care in this caſe to mend it, mixing new Earth with it, taking care to mix loomy Earth with what is too light and ſandy, Mould with that which is too tough, and that that is really good with that that is worn out, unleſs you let it lye fallow, to recover it that way. Obſerve to mix moiſt Dung, ſuch as Cow-Dung with light Earth, and Dung of a light nature mix with heavy Clay or Earth cold and loomy. If your Earth is good, but not a Yard deep, conſider whether it be a ſufficient heighth; if it be, then all the naughty Earth you muſt remove, and good need, to make it three Foot. If the Ground is watery naturally, you muſt turn it aſide at a diſtance, by Drains and Gutters, or elſe raiſe the whole Plats, or the great Beds only, upon Ridges, making deep Furrows to ſerve for Paths; and if theſe moiſtures are occaſioned, only by great Rains, uſe the ſame means, raiſing the Earth, and making Gutters and Drains to carry it away.

Rules for Tilling.

If your Earth is hot and dry, till it in Summer time, a little before, or whilſt it it rains, or ſoon after, or when there is a probability of more; at which time you cannot do it too often nor too deep. And on the contrary, till not in very hot weather, unleſs you immediately water it. Earth cold, ſtrong and moiſt, never till in time of Rain, but during great Heat. Times that Trees bloſſom and Vines ſhoot, are dangerous for Tillage.

There is good and bad Earth of almoſt all Colours, but 'tis the blackiſh grey that pleaſes moſt, reddiſh and whitiſh Earth, I have found incomparably good; but ſeldom any quite white deſerves that Character. But the moſt true Character of good earth, is the Strength, Vigour, Beauty and Largeneſs of the Plants and Herbs it brings forth.

CHAP. XII.

CHAP. XII.

What is to be done relating to Greens *Monthly, in the well Ordering them Abroad, and Cautions in bringing them Abroad, and Housing, to preserve them and make them Flourish, with other things.*

NOW as to *Greens* as well as other things, it's necessary those that take care of them or would improve them, should be well acquainted with the proper Seasons of Planting, Placing, and in every Thing ordering, for want of which Skill and Prudence, I have often seen a great Defect in some very choice Gardens, through ill Management; for these as well as other things that depend on a Gardner's Skill, require their proper Times and Seasons, and therefore to rectifie this Error in the Judgments of many, I shall briefly set down those Times and Seasons.

When the Sun enters *Aquarius*, or the watry Sign, it is proper for the Gardner to be busie at times in his Green-House or Conservatory, to keep a Warmth there as shall be hereafter directed; and from that time to the end of *February*, he has little Business to mind Greens abroad, for those that will endure the Rigor of the Cold, as Box, Yew, Fir, Cypress, *&c.* want not his Care, but when the Sun enters the Vernal *Equinox*, on the 10th. or 11th. of *March*, then it is time for him to think of these things, and require a Recruit, as sowing Box, Myrtleberries, Pine and Fir Kernels, and if the Weather prove open and seasonable, he may shear and prune such Greens as are abroad proper to be used; and in the Warmth of the Day uncover those that lie under Straw or Mats, to shelter them from the cold Season, may begin to open the Green-House, and bring the most hardy of his choice Plants nearer and nearer to the Windows to inure them to the Air, but then the Weather must be considered accordingly; for in this Month, Weather sometimes is frosty and piercing, the Winds cold and blustering, then in such cases keep close the Green-House; then if you have shorn your Cypress abroad, wrap Straw on the Tops of it, and keep warm your Ever-green and Nursery-Seedlings abroad of any kind, lest the sharp Winds too much dry and wither them; but at the end of the Month be more bold, for then the Weather being more favourable, you may set Orange-trees, Limon-trees, Myrtles, Lentistus Amomums, Aloes, Dates, Oleanders, Cyprus, Phylerea, *&c.* a Airing, open and exposed in the Warmth of the Day, the Sun having power then to cherish them; you may also transplant Ever-greens that are of some standing, and hardy to stand against the Weather, nor be negligent in raising Stocks to Bud Oranges and Limons on; these are are raised by setting Seeds in Pots, the Soil you set them in being a fine fat Mould, well mixed with some rotten Cow-dung; lay a hollowing at the bottom with Chips, Stones, or rotten Wood, that the Wet may sink away, and in the inclement Weather you may set the Pots to the Brims in hot Beds, and so growing up in Two or Three Years, they will be stocks fit to Imbud or Inoculate on, and the end of this Month is not improper to Inoculate or Imbud, placing Two on a Stock, one against another.

The next Month, *viz. April*, allows you to be yet bolder; you may sow the Seed, and set Slips of most perennial Greens, as their kinds are best taking towards the beginning of the Month, and you may Ingraft by approach of Limons, Oranges, Pomgranates, Jessamine, *&c.* and as the Month grows older and warmer, bring your Choice Plants or Shrubs out of the Green-House or Conservatory, but

House

Houſe eſpecially the tendereſt of them a Nights again, and cover thoſe you let ſtand abroad with Mats; alſo water them with Rain or Ditch-Water warm, but not too much; and Note by the way, when you Ingraft or Imbud, *&c.* any of theſe choice Stocks, cut them to an Inch and a half above the Ground, that the Roots may ſend a great ſupply of Nouriſhment.

May is a more kindly Month to the Gardner, for now he may open the Green-Houſe, and venture out thoſe things that are the hardieſt, and ſet the moſt tender in the *Portico*; he may bring out, remove and tranſplant Orange-Trees, put freſh Earth to the Shrubs and tender Plants, looſening the old Earth about them, but not utterly taking it all away, and putting other Earth to the Roots, which will much refreſh and nouriſh them, ſifting ſome rotten Cow-dung on the Top of the Earth; when levelled and ſmoothed down, cleanſe their Leaves of Duſt, and take off what is ſuperfluous, that ſo when they are ſet abroad, they may appear ſightly, and flouriſh the better. And for theſe kind of Plants, except Limons and Oranges, there is no great neceſſity of taking them up, and trimming the Roots, or tranſplanting them, unleſs the Roots be too much matted, and out of order, ſo that it may hinder the flouriſhing of the Plant; and now *Barba Jovis Alternus*, Cypreſs and Phylarea are properly to be clipped or ſhorn, or at your Diſcretion, let alone if they need it not.

In *June* the Weather is uſually very warm and cheriſhing to all Things that are produced, ſo that if you ſee it convenient, you may clear your Green-Houſe or Conſervatory, and place your choice things abroad in the Garden, taking care to cover them with Mats in caſe of exceſſive Rains or Hail till the Storms be over: Inoculate Jaſſamine, Roſes, and ſuch choice Shrubs as are proper to it, and find out a cold moiſt Plat to ſet Myrtle Slips in, and if you would increaſe by Slips *Cyſtilius Innatus*, let the Ground be fertile and moiſt where you plant them; let them be of the ſame Spring, and not exceed a handful in length, and in your Garden put things in ſightly order, that by Luxurancy or Intangling have been neglected.

July is the Time of Pleaſure in Gardens and pleaſant Orchards, for now bluſhing Fruits give pleaſure to the Taſte, and all the Senſes may be pleaſed; you may the beginning of this Month ſlip uſeful Greens, and after Sun-ſet, water choice Plants, but not too much. Aloes not at all, leaving them to be refreſhed by the Air and Dews, unleſs you perceive them pine and wither; and on the contrary, *Amomum* in the hot Seaſon requires more watering than others, as being of a hot nature: Lay Layers of Orange, Myrtle, Granates and *Amomum*, you may continue to Inarch and Graft by Approach. Inoculate Jeſſamine, Oranges, and other fine Shrubs; and in the cloſe of this Month lay Earth at the Roots of Orange-Trees, and if the Weather be exceſſive, remove them to the Shade, and compaſs their Pots or Caſes with cool Earth, for too exceſſive heat draws their Moiſture from them, and withers their Strength.

In *Auguſt* take the Advantage of the beginning to Bud Orange-Trees, but let the Seed-Stock you Inoculate, be between Three and Four Years growth, and take the Buds from an old Orange-Tree of a bearing kind, that ſo they may take ſooner, and thrive the better: And if the cold Dews, and morning Froſts come on about *Bartholomewtide*, then begin to think of Houſing; in the mean while cover them with Mats at Sun ſetting, and remove firſt thoſe that are capable to endure the leaſt degree of Cold, and theſe are chiefly Oranges, Myrtles, Oleanders, Pomgranates, Phylerea's, Limons, *&c.* alſo Monthly Roſes, Roſes, Jeſſamine, *Abrutus*, and peg down the Shoots of the

laſt

laſt Spring, in ſuch fertile Mould as may make them take Root in their Seaſon; and in this Month the next Year they will be fit to Remove or Tranſplant, therefore ſet them choicely, and ſo he ſhall not be deſtitue of a Supply to ſtore himſelf, and others.

September now calls on the Gardner to be careful of what is choice, leſt the next Year he repent it in the Thinneſs of his Stock: In the beginning you may ſow *Alternus*, *Phylerea*, Anula's, *&c.* plant Vernals, Cyclamen, *Iris* Chalcedon, *&c.* prune the Greens that are to endure the Winter abroad, and Tallow over the Wounds, to keep the Rain from too much penetrating, or they from chopping, and towards the end of the Month, when Miſts, cold Rains, and raw Damps fall; having all in your Green-Houſe that it requires, ſhut it up, unleſs in the warmth of the Day the Windows be opened, but ſhut them again before Sun-ſet, and lay freſh Mould on the Boxes, Caſes and Pots for the Winter Store, to nouriſh and ſuccour your Plants in their Confinement; however, that you may not loſe all the ſhow in your Garden, notwithſtanding what I have ſaid, you may venture your Myrtles abroad to the middle of *October*, if there be no hard Froſt: But the Limons, Oranges, *Indian* and *Spaniſh* Jeſſamine, *Chemælea-Tricocces*, *Sedum*, Aloes, Oleanders, *Citiſus Lunatus*, and ſuch like Tenderlings are endangered to be loſt, if abroad ſo long.

In *October*, the Weather open, ſow Cyprus, and prune ſuch Greens as require it, and have not already been ſo ſerved; Pillagreen and *Alternus* Seeds are proper to be ſown about the middle: Dung the Roots of Greens abroad, and cover the tendereſt of them for the whole Winter. As for *November* and *December*, little in this way is to be done abroad, the Buſineſs being in the Green-Houſe, which in its proper Place treating of the Green-Houſe is directed.

CHAP. XIII.

Monthly Obſervations throughout the Year, what is to be done in the Orchard, Kitchen-Garden, and Flower-Garden.

JANUARY. In your Orchard this Month lay bare the Roots of Fruit-Trees in open Weather, nouriſh them with good rotten Soil; prune thoſe Trees that are to ſtand, and tranſplant the younger, prune and nail up Wall Fruit, now cut the Vines cloſe, Moſs the Trees that are encumbred, with a Copper ſcraping Iron, gather Cions and Grafts, and turn your dunged Ground.

In the Kitchen-Garden, lay heaps of good Mould, mixed with Dung, to rot againſt Spring for your uſe, and if the Weather be open, ſet early Peaſe and Beans, ſow the Seeds of Radiſh, Spinage, Charvil, Lettice, Corn-Sallad, and make up your Hot-Beds to ſet things in, that are to be forced and come out of their natural Seaſon.

In the Flower-Garden, now is the time to preſerve the beſt *July* Flowers and Auricula's from Snow and over-much Wet, by laying the Pots or Boxes on one ſide they are planted in, ſupport Mat-coverings over them on Hoops Arch-wiſe, about a Foot from them, yet if the Sun ſhine clear, once a Week Air them, by opening in the middle of the Day, but by no means forget to cover them again e'er the Sun be much declined, and now and then looſen the Mould, and ſcatter freſh, mixed with a little Dung on the top.

FEBRUARY. In this Month take care to cover the Roots of your Fruit-Trees that were laid open the Month before; plant if the Weather be open, and towards

the

the latter end of the Month, graft Pears, Apples, Plums, Cherries, and cleanſe the Trees of Defects left undone in the laſt Month.

In the Kitchen-Garden continue to ſow and ſet Beans and Peaſe, Radiſh, Parſnips, Aſparagus, remove Cabbage-Plants, and Potatoes, *Jeruſalem* Artichoaks, Winter early Colliflowers, ſow Parſley, Spinage, and other Pot-Herbs that will endure the Weather; raiſe Hot Beds for Musk-melons and Cucumbers, *&c.* ſow the Seeds in them at Full Moon, ſteeping them in a little warm Milk; you may put Three Seeds in a Hole, cover them till they come above Ground, then Air them as the Sun is favourable, but cover them at other times.

In the Flower-Garden, ſow in mellow Earth Auricula Seeds in Pots, but not too thick; keep your choice Flowers in Pots, or Caſes warm with tilted Coverings; the Weather being open, this Month you may plant early Anemonies, ſow choice Seed in warm mellow Mould, and keep every thing, as much as may be, from too much Wet and cutting ſharp Air.

MARCH's *Obſervations.* In the Orchards proceed to graft choice Fruits, as Nectarines, Apricocks, Wall-Plums, Peaches, and the like; raiſe the Earth about the Roots of choice Trees, lay Layers of young Sprouts, cutting them underneath, that they may take root; inrich the Earth you lay them in, that they may do it ſoon, ſtake and bind up the weak Shrubs and Plants, that are apt to be much ſhaken and looſened by the Wind.

In the Kitchen-Garden, ſet ſlips of Sage, Roſemary, Lavender and Thyme; ſow Leeks, Radiſh, Endive, Succory, Parſnips, Beets, Skirrets, Sorrel, Parſly, Bugloſs, Burrage, Charvil, Lettice, Onions, Garlick, Purſlain, Peaſe, Carrots, Turnips, Cabbage, Marjorum, Creſſes, Fennel; ſtring Strawberry Beds, place Glaſſes over your Melons and Cucumber Plants, till you remove them from the Hot-Beds; tranſplant Medicinal Herbs.

In the Flower-Garden, ſow ſweet *William*, Auricula's, Wall Flowers, Stock-Gilliflowers, Candy-Tufts, *Venus* Looking-glaſs, French Honey-Suckles, Cowſlips and Primroſe-Seeds, Lark-heels, Campions, Lichins, Campanula, Indian Scabious, Pink or Gilliflower-Seed, *&c.* and in your Hot-Beds French Marygolds, Amaranth, *Noſtratum Indicum*, *Mirabula Peruana*, the ſenſible humble Plant, *&c.* Tranſplant Gilliflowers and Auricula's, if the Weather be favourable, weed after a gentle Shower, Earth up unremoved Gilliflowers and Auricula's.

APRIL's *Obſervation.* In the Orchard, cut Cions for Grafts, take Succory from the Roots of grown Trees, Earth up the Roots pretty high, ſmoak your Orchard in the Evening with wet Hay or Straw, ſcattering Pitch and Brimſtone on it, to prevent Inſects biting of the tender Buds, and cold Morning-Froſts from nipping them.

In the Kitchen-Garden, ſow Hyſſop, Marjoram, Baſil, Thyme, Lettice, Scurvy-graſs, Winter-Savory; ſlip Shrubs after a Shower, ſow Raddiſh, Marygolds Carnations, *&c.* ſlip Artichoaks, Lavender, Thyme, Roſemary, ſet French Beans, and remove tender Shrubs.

In the Flower-Garden, now the Seaſon requires you to ply your Task to the purpoſe, continue hot Beds for Exoticks, that without them cannot be brought to Perfection, and remove them not into the Air, till the common Earth can give them a ſufficient Warmth; take out Indian Tuberoſes, and divide their off-ſets from them, but beware in doing it you break not the Phangs, put them in natural rich Earth in Pots, ſo plunge your Pots in a hot Bed, moderately warm, but water them not till they ſpring up; in dry Weather, when they are well ſprung up, water them freely, and blowing in *Auguſt*, they will produce a curious Flower; ſhade your beſt Tulips from too much Heat of the Sun, as alſo your Seeding

Auricula's, or the latter will go near to die, if any of them be ſtripped, remove them from the reſt, leſt they infect them, and make them change their natural Colours; and this Month continue weeding.

MAY's *Obſervations.* In your Orchard now begin to Inoculate, as you find your Buds prompt and ready, which take off the middle Sprout, ſmoak your Orchard ſtill as before; for now Flies and Catterpillars are much abroad.

In the Kitchen Garden thin your Sallading and other Herbs, that what remains may grow more kindly, and flouriſh better; leave the Strawberry-Beds, that the Flowers and knit Berries may have the better Benefit to the Sun, ſtrow Lime and Pot-Aſhes to deſtroy Inſects in the Partitions, Allies or Sides of the Beds or Furrows.

In the Flower Garden, tranſplant *Flos Africanus*, *Amaranthus*, *Narſturtium Indicum*, *Mirabila*, *Peruviana*, and ſuch like choice Flowers; gather the Seeds of Anemonies as the Dew riſes, leſt it be loſt by the Winds blowing it away; ſow hot Aromatick Herbs, plant Stock-Gilliflowers in Beds, and ſuffer not Weeds to ſeed.

JUNE's *Obſervations.* In the Orchard Inoculate Apricocks, *Nectarines*, Peaches, Cherries, Apples, Plums, Pears, and gather ſuch Fruits as the Seaſon produces, for Drying, Candying, or Preſerving, and for the preſent Uſe of your Table.

In the Kithen-Garden, gather ſuch Herbs as you would keep dry for Uſe all the Year, in the Full of the Moon, when the Sun has dry'd the Wet from them; ſow Lettice, Charvil, Radiſh, diſtil Aromatick-Plants, water well after Sun-ſet.

In the Flower-Garden tranſplant Autumnal Cyclamen, gather the ripe Seeds of choice Flowers, Inoculate Jeſſamine-Roſes, and Roſe-Shrubs; take up Anemonies, Ranuncula's, and Tulip-Roots, ſo keeping them in dry Boxes or Sand, that they do not mould nor rot, till you may replant them; lay *July* Flowers, which will in Six Weeks ſtrike Root, ſo that you may tranſplant them into light loamy Earth, mixed with good rotten Soil, and in Winter to ſave room, preſerve them from too much wet, and what good Gilliflowers are now blown, preſerve them for Seed, ſuffering them so have but a few Layers, ſo the Pods will be fil'ed with the fairer Seed, take not Seed from thoſe that break their Pods, and e'er you gather it, obſerve the Sun has will ripened it.

JULY's *Obſervations.* In the Orchard water young Plants and Layers of Trees, prune Peaches and Apricocks, leaving the moſt proper Shoots for bearing, ſo that they may commodiouſly ſpread on the Wall, ſtop the luxuriant Branches of Vines, at the ſecond Joint above the Fruit.

In the Flower-Garden ſlip Stocks and other woody Plants and Flowers, lay

In the Kitchen Garden ſet ſweet Herbs you would have run to Seed, ſow Lettice, Radiſh, Charvil, and other Sallads, that may recruit the Stock that is waſted.

Mirtles, Jeſſamines, and other Greens, and make trial of Orange Trees, for if they take, they will certainly be more during, and leſs ſubject to be hurt by Cold; lay Gilliflowers that were not ready for it before, and cut off withered Stalks or Flowers; clip Box if out of order; ſow Anemony Seeds in fine ſifted rich Earth in Beds or Boxes, take up early Autumnal Cyclamens, and as ſoon as may be replant them in fit Soil; gather early Cyclamen-Seeds, and preſently ſow it in Pots, the end of this Month ſift your off-ſet Beds of Tulips, alſo for Anemonies, Ranuncula's, &c. ſo that they may be well prepared for replanting with ſuch things as you have ready in Pots, or to ſet in natural Ground, till the next Seaſon, as *Mirabila*, *Peruviana*, *Naſturtium Indicum*, and obſerve that every thing in your Garden be well cleanſed and ordered.

AUGUST's

AUGUST's Obſervations. In the Orchard, take away Branches that are incumbring or ſuperfluous, prune Suckers, and if you Inoculate in this Month, let it be early.

In the Kitchen Garden ſow Colliflowers and Cabbages for Winter, plant alſo Marigolds, Corn-Sallad, Lettice, Parſnips, Carrots, Onions, Spinage, Angelica, curled Endive, Scurvy-graſs, Columbines, Lark-Heels, Iron-coloured Fox-gloves, Holliocks, and the like; tranſplant Lettice for Winter Store, take up full grown Onions, Garlick, *&c.* gather Pot-Herbs for keeping all Winter, and to preſerve others growing, clip them about a handful high before the full Moon, ſow Charvil and Purſlain, and gather the ripe Seeds or Berries of Shrubs.

In the Flower Garden tranſplant Bulbs of Lilies, and other bulbous Roots that are to remain in the Ground, and now you may ſecurely remove and lay Perennal Greens, new Earth, Auricula Pots; tranſplant and divide their Roots into a light rich Earth, do the like by Oxlips and chocie Primroſes, alſo Campions or Lichins, Calcidonices; tranſplant ſeedling Anemonies, ſet Spider-Wort, Colchicums and Frittilaries, and begin to make up your Garden for the Winter.

SEPTEMBER's Obſervations. In the Orchard, in dry Weather begin to gather ripe Winter-Fruit, do it not till the Sun has exhaled the Moiſture, for if ſo, they'll ſpeck and rot; have a dry Loft to lay them in, in Wheat Straw or Shavings, pinch them not in gathering, for that rots them.

In the Kitchen Garden you may continue to ſow Radiſh, Spinage, Lettice, and Winter-Herbs; tranſplant moſt Herbs proper for Eating or Medicines, alſo Aſparagus Roots, Strawberries, and Artichoaks, clear your Alleys, and turn up vacant Ground.

In the Flower-Garden take care of the choice Plants and Flowers, and cover ſuch as you remove not into the Conſervatory before the end of the Month, if the Weather come ſharp, and thus preſerve your *Marum Cyriacum*, *Ciſtus Nocte Olens Germanicum*, *Flos Cardinails*; choice Ranuncula's, ſeedling *Arnbutus*, Anemonies, the covering of Mats or Canvas being warm and cloſe, but Archwiſe a Foot above them, not to preſs or injure them; place them, if in Pots or Caſes, againſt a South-Wall, and let them ſtand ſometimes Airing in the middle of the Day, when the Sun ſhines till *April*. This Month plant Tulips and all Bulbous Roots that are not very choice, but the choiceſt reſerve to the end of next Month, ſow Auricula's, Crocus, Cowſlips, Primroſe-Seeds, *Frittarlia* and Tulip Seeds, and ſcatter a little unſlacked Lime or Powder of Brimſtone among the Mould, to prevent Inſects from deſtroying the Seed.

OCTOBER's Obſervations. In the Orchard this Month, prune what is wanting, loſen the Earth about the Roots of Trees, but do not bare them; pour Water mixed with rich Dung to the Roots of young Trees, the better to enable them againſt the Cold; plant and tranſplant ſuch Trees as have their Leaves fallen off, alſo tranſplant Wall-Trees that are of Two Years Grafting or more; at the end of this Month you may lay bare the Roots of old unthriving Trees, or ſuch as bloom over-haſtily, or have their Fruit dry; the beſt time is in the Moon's decreaſing, ſet Cions before gathered and kept in Sand till now; ſet them three inches deep, the ſharp Ends uppermoſt, cover them with Fern or Straw againſt cold Blaſts, but in the Spring remove it.

In the Kitchen-Garden ſow ſtill Winter Sallads and Roots, dig and trench the Ground, laying it light in Ridges, that the Froſt may mellow it; prepare Dung in the Trenches, to mix with the Mould in the Spring, and Trench your Alleys for the Rain or Snow Water to paſs away, that it may not lie ſobbing to cauſe Sterility in the Earth.

In the Flower-Garden, ſet ſuch choice Tulips as are not yet diſpoſed of, ſow alſo their *Seeds*, plant Anemonies and Auricula's in prepared Earth, and as ſoon as they appear above Ground, cover them from the Froſts, or they die; remove the choiceſt Giliflowers, where they may be ſheltred from VVet and ſharp Winds, trim them up with freſh Mould, and cover ſuch as cannot be removed, leſt the *Snow* deſtroy them.

NOVEMBER's Obſervations. In the Orchard be careful to ſupply your Nurſery with *Stocks* for Grafting, bare the Roots of old Fruit Trees, and lay warm Dung about them, Moſs and Prune.

In the Kitchen Garden turn up the Melon and Cucumber Ground mixed with Dung, lay the Mould in Ridges, that it may mellow againſt the *Spring*; trench and fit up your Ground deſigned for Artichoaks, crop Aſparagus, and well cover it with long Dung or wet Litter, and prepare your Beds to plant it in the *Spring*, ſow and ſet early Peaſe and Beans.

In the Flower-Garden cover peeping Ranuncula's, and ſow Auricula's *Seeds*, plant fiberous Roots, as *Aletev*, *Frutax*, Roſes, *Cyringas Lilax*, &c. and ſee that no tender Roots that cannot be conveniently removed, be uncovered.

DECEMBER's Obſervations. In the Orchard plant Vines and Stocks for Grafting, prune Trees that are well grown, and *Standards*, alſo Wall-Trees bearing Fruit.

In the Kitchen-Garden you may yet continue to ſet or ſow early Peaſe or Beans, trench Ground, and dung it, that ſo you may make commodious Borders in the *Spring*; you may now, if the Weather be open, tranſplant young Fruit Trees, ſuch as be hardy, but not thoſe that are too much ſubject to be pierced by the cold Winds.

In the Flower-Garden, take care that your Anemonies, Ranuncula's, and Gilliflowers that are choice, be not expoſed to the Wet, ſharp Winds, or nipping Froſts; but if the Weather be open, ſet the beſt Ranuucula's in a Bed of old rotten Thatch or *Straw*, which having been mixed with choice Mould, is rotted and near turned to Earth, with good Mould above and below them; ſet in a rich loamy Mould the beſt Anemonies, let it be finely ſifted through a Wire *Sieve*, and this done, you will have time to refreſh your ſelf, and for a while reſt from your Labour, to enjoy in due *Seaſon* the rpofit and Pleaſure of it.

Miſcellaneous Curioſities.

Lilies among the Thorns, were Wood-Bines; the Husks the Prodigal eat, were the Fruit of a Tree; *Amaranthos*, that St. *Peter* ſays, fadeth not away, is a Flower that indureth a long time cool. Poiſonous plants: Hemlock, Night-ſhade, Hen-bane, Spurge, Mandrake, Wolfs-bane, Yew-tree, and Lettice, Onions, Garlick and Leeks, if the Juice is taken in too great a quantity.

Field-Herbs to eat boyl'd in the Spring, or to make Spring Pottage of them, worth minding.

Comfry, Goats-Beard, or Shaddons or Lady's-Thiſtle, Tops of Hops, and of the Vines and Tendrels, and of your Turnips and Radiſhes, Mercury, young Peaſe about a Hand in heighth, or young Pods, Corn when about a Handful high, boyl'd, bunched in Faggots, Rape, Nettle-Tops, the Tops of Hops and Turnips running up to Seed, boyl'd and butter'd, eat like Aſparagus; the Roots of Tulips boyl'd and butter'd make a rare Diſh, Muſhrooms ſtew'd or pickled, are pleaſant Food; the leaves and ſtalks of Alexanders boyl'd and eat alone, or with Fiſh, eat well; ſo doth the ſtalks pickled: The roots of Aaron boyl'd is good Food;

Aſh-weed

Aſh-weed, call'd, *Jump-about*, boyl'd with Bacon when Young, is good; Lambs-Lettice, or Corn-Sallad are alſo good: Pennyroyal put in a Pudding, gives a ſavory reliſh. *Spring* Pottage is made of Elder-buds, Nettle-Tops, Water-Creſſes, Brook Lime, Dandelion, Groundſel, Plantain, Cellary; all theſe, or one or any of them, are very wholſome in the *Spring* to cleanſe the Blood, *&c.*

SAUCES.

Jack by the Hedge, and Horſe-radiſh, Green-Sauce, *&c.* To give a rare Taſte to your Liquor, boyl in it Hops, Broom, Angelica, or Balm, *&c.* For diſtilled Waters, you may have Anniſeed, mix'd Angelica, *&c.*

Herbs ſo called from their Reſemblance and Uſe.

Arrow-head, is an Herb like the Head of a Barbed Arrow; Scurvygraſs, is called Spoon-wort, the Leaves repreſent the ſhape of a Spoon; Dandelion, like a Lions Tooth; Plantain, is called Rib-wort, becauſe every Leaf hath five ſtrings like Ribs; Sword-Flag, reſembles a Sword; Crow-foot, the Foot of a Crow; Teazel, or Venus-Baſon, like a Baſon; Goats-beard or Tragapon, is like a Goats Beard; Tway-blade, that hath two Leaves; Trefoil, three Leaves; Herb-Paris hath four; Cinquefoil, that hath five Leaves; Heptaphillon, becauſe ſeven Leaves; Butter-Bur feels as if Butter melted had been poured upon the Leaves; Sun-dew hath a Dew on the Leaves at Noon in the horteſt Weather; Shepherds call it Red-rot, becauſe it rots ſheep; ſaw-wort, the Leaves are nick'd like a Saw. Butter-Bur, becauſe they wrap Butter in them; Lead-wort hath Leaves the Colour of Lead; Houſe-Leek grows on Houſes; Bugloſs is like an Ox-Tongue; ſome Leaves have Sand about them always, as Mercury and Orage; the Leaves of all ſorts of *Scabions*, breakwith ſmall things like Hair in the middle, and ſo you may know it from Knap-weed, which is like it. Primpernell Leaves, are ſpotted underneath; St. *John*'s-wort, and St. *Peters*-wort, held to the Light, hath Holes like a *Sieve*; Leaves of Rheubard, Burdock, *&c.* are large and round; Docks, like Tobacco; Elecampane Leaves, are long, large and few; Thyme, Rue, Aſparagus, *Spigwell*, Fennel, *&c.* have many ſmall Leaves; Leaves of Orpine, Aloes, and Houſe-Leek, are thick and oily; *Stone*-Crop Leaves, long and round like Roſemary; ſome Leaves are indented, as Radiſh, Vervain, Dandelion; ſome leſs indented, as Maudlin, Alhoal, Tanſey, *Snees* wort; Aaron Root is ſmooth and ſpotted; Arſmart, rough and ſpotted; there is two ſorts, biting and not biting, which you may diſcern by laying a Leaf over your Tongue; Comfry and Teazel are rough Leaves; Bears-Breech and Mandrake are ſmooth and glib, *Arbor-vitæ*, or Tree of Life, the Leaves ſqueezed ſmall ſmell like Bread and Cheeſe; Burnet ſmells like a Cucumber; ſtinking Orage like Old-ing; Croſs-wort ſmells like Honey; Willow-weed, like codled Apples; Paſque-Flower, Gentian or Fell-wort, ſqueez'd and ſmelt to, will bite by the Noſe: Coriander ſmells ſtrong; ſo doth *Smallage*, Wormwood, Rue, Hemlock, Hen-bane, *&c.* Stinking Gladwin taſtes like Roaſt Beef; the ſtalk of the great Water-Dock, taſtes like Green-ſauce Pignuts taſte like other Nuts; Leaves of the Vine and Barbary-Buſh, taſte like Sorrel; Rocket taſtes like Milk burnt too; Cutkow-pint hath a biting taſte; ſo is *Spear*-wort, or Water Crow-foot; Aloes, Lavender Cotton, and the leſſer Centaury, ſmell little but taſte bitter; Creſſes, Garden-Ginger, and Tarrogan, have a biting taſte, but pleaſant; *Sea*-weed, *Scurvygraſs*, *Samphire*, taſte of ſaltneſs; Mirabolans, and Fennel-ſeeds are ſweet before they are ripe, and afterwards

afterwards taſte ſpicy; Tamarinds, Limons, Barberries, Crabs and *Sloes*, have a pleaſant and ſharp taſte; ſome are bittter; as Euphorbium, Celandine, *Sow*-Thiſtle, *Spinage*, old Lettice, Figs from the Tree: There is a Wormwood ſo like Lavender, that it can be only known from it by the *Smell* and Taſte.

Liquoriſh boiled in fair Water, with Maiden-hair and Figs, make a good Diet drink for a dry Cough, or any Grief of the Breaſt and Lungs.

Candied Elecampane Roots, is good for a Cough, ſhortneſs of Breath, and Wheezing in the Lungs.

Rhubarb purgeth the Body of Choler and Phlegm; Angelica is good againſt Poyſon and the Plague, and ſo is the Water of the Herb, Dragon-wort; Aſſarabaca purgeth upward and downward; Scordium ſtregthens the Heart and Stomach; Wood-Sorrel cools the Blood, helps Ulcers in the Mouth, hot Defluctions in the Lungs, *&c.* Marſh-mallows eaſe the Pain in the *Stone*; Pimpernell draws Thorns and *Splinters* cut of the Fleſh; *Smallage* provokes the Terms, and is good againſt the Yellow-jaundice; Drop-wort helps the *Stanguary*, and ſo doth Cetarach; Elder is good againſt all Diſeaſes inward and outward, I think, ſingular for Dopſie, and Gout; Fennel encreaſes Milk in Nurſes; Fumetary boyled in White-wine or in Water, and taken inwardly, helps itchy and ſcabby Folks; Plantane Leaves are excellent for Green Wounds, and the Juice for ſpitting of Blood; Does-foot helps the Wind-Cholick; Periwinkle cures the Cramp; Shepherds-Purſe ſtoppeth Blood; Houſe-Leek is good againſt the *Shingles*; *Siony*-roots are good againſt Conuulſions and Falling-ſickneſs; Centaury, Wormwood, Garlick, Lavender-Cotten, and all Plants that have a bitter Juice, kill Worms, *&c.* Our *Engliſh* Rhubarb, Angelica, Gentian, *Saxitrage*, and Maiden-hair, are not inferior to the Outlandiſh *Sorts*.

The Juice or Water of Flax-weed put into foul Ulcers, whether Cankerous or Fiſtulous, with Tents rowl'd therein, or the Parts waſhed or injected therewith, cleanſeth them thorougly from the Bottom, and healeth them up ſafely: The whole Plant of Centaury, as well Herb as Root, is very available in all ſorts of Wounds or Ulcers, to dry, ſoder, cleanſe and heal them, and therefore ſhould be a principal Ingredient in all vulenary Drinks and Injections: Knapweed, by ſome called Darbotttle, is good againſt Bruiſes, Bearings, or other Caſualties, the Decoction in Wine of this Herb and Root is good for thoſe that are Burſten; and apply the ſame to the Place outwardly, it is alſo good againſt all ſorts of running and Cancerous *Sores* and Fiſtula's, drying up the Moiſture, and healing them gently, without *Sharpneſs* or Biting: It doth the ſame in running *Sores* and *Scabs* of the Head or other *Sores*; it is of ſpecial Uſe for *Soreneſs* of the Throat, the *Swelling* of the Pallate and Jaws; it is alſo excellent for all Green Wounds, to ſtay the Bleeding; and cloſe the Lips of them together. All Plantains are ſingular good Wounds-Herbs to heal new or old *Sores*, and Wounds, both inward and outward. The Flower of Beans and Fennigreek mixt with Hony, cure Felons, *Boyls* and *Bruiſes*. The Roots of white Briony, bruiſed and apply'd of it ſelf to any place where the Bones are broken, helpeth to draw them forth, as alſo *Splinters*, Arrow-heads, and Thorns in the Fleſh; and being applied with a little Wine mixt therewith, it breaketh Boyls, and helpeth Whitloes. The Berries of Bitter-ſweet or woody Night-ſhade, bruiſed and laid to the Finger that hath a Felon, cures it; and ſo do the Leaves ſtamped together with ruſty Bacon: Self-heal, they that have it, need not Phyſician or *Surgeon*, it's ſo effectual, but eſpecially in Green Wounds. Hounds-tongue is good againſt the Biting of mad Dogs, and is the main Ingredient whereof Black *Salve* is made. The Decoction of *Scabions* and Ground-Ivy, cures Itch and *Scabs*. *Savine* dry'd into a *Sow-*

der

der and mixt with Honey, breaketh Carbuncle and Plague Sores; it alſo helpeth Kings Evil, being applied unto the Place: It alſo kills Worms ſpread upon Leather, and apply'd to the Navel: It helps Scabs, Itch, running Sores, Cankers, Tetters, and Ring-worms.

They ſay, that Miſletoe hung about the Neck, Witches can have no Power over you: Angelico is good in the ſame Caſe. Elder gather'd the laſt Day of *April*, and affixed to the Doors or Windows of the Houſe, diſappoints the Charms of Witches. *Mathiolus* ſays, that *Herba-Paris* takes away all Evil done by Witch-craft; he knew by Experience.

An Elder-ſtick put in your Pocket when you ride, prevents Gauling. Arſ-ſmart put under the Saddle of a tyr'd Horſe, makes him travel afreſh. Mug-worth worn under the Soles of your Feet, you may travel forty Mile, and not tire. The leſſer Moon-wort, they ſay, will open Locks, and pull the Shoes off Horſes Feet that walk over it. Soak wild Tanſey in Butter-milk nine Days, and waſh your Face with it, and it will cauſe you to look very fair. Spurge and Laurel-Leaves, if broken off upward, will cauſe Vomiting, if downward, Purging. It is ſaid, that the Seed of Parſley being eaten, cures the Falling-ſickneſs The Roots of Pellitory of *Spain* and Tarragon held between the Teeth, cureth the Tooth-ach, the Root of Male-Piony dried and tied to the Neck helps the Night Mare; and 'tis ſaid Caſtoreum, Musk, Rue-ſeed and Agnus-ſeed, do the ſame. If a woman eat Quince and Coriander-ſeed when with Child, the Child will be ingenious and witty; and that to eat much Onions, Beans, or ſuch vaporours Food, they will be Fools or Lunaticks. Calamint will recover ſtink-ing Meat, laid amongſt it when raw. Flea-Bane laid betwixt the Sheets, kills Fleas, and cauſeth Chaſtity. Sow-bread is dangerons for Women with Child.

Adders-Tongue cures the bitting of an Adder or other venomous Beaſt, Vipers Bugloſs is a Remedy againſt ſtings of Vipers and other venomous Beaſts. Rub your Hands with the Leaves or Roots of Dragon, and no Serpent will come near you. Heart-Tre-foil is like a Man's Heart, and is good againſt the Vapour or the Spleen. Tre-foil, called Purple-wort, cures the Purples. Hounds-Tongue laid at the Bottom of your Feet, Hounds will not bark at you. Maiden-hair, a Lee made of it, wherein it is ſodden, bath the Head, and the Hair will come thicker when thin and bare.

Arrow-head is good for a Wound made with the Head of an Arrow, and Kidney-Beans for the Diſeaſe of the Kidneys. Pimpernell, and all ſuch Plants as are ſpeckled like the Skins of Vipers or other venomous Creatures, are known to be good againſt the Stings and Bitings of them, and a powerful Antidote a-gainſt Poyſon. Winter Wolf's-bane, which is rank Poyſon, is good againſt Biting of Scorpions and Vipers.

To make Teas or Gruels.

Look into your Herbals, and you will find the Virtue of the Herbs, by which means you may make Tea or Gruel for all Diſtempers.

You may make your Teas or Gruels ſtronger or weaker, according to the Quantity of the Herb you put into your Liquor.

Sage-Tea is good for the Head, Memory, Eyes, and Palſie, and many other Virtues. Evelin *of Sallads*, p. 61.

Roſemary Tea is good for the Memory, Sight, Nerves and the Head.

Scurvygraſs Tea, good for the Scurvy, &c.

The green Husks, or first peeping Buds of the Walnut Tree, dry'd to Powder, serve for Pepper, and so do Myrtle-berries. Evelin *of Sallads*, p. 53.

Turnep Bread, as good as Wheat.

Peel your Turneps, then boil them till soft and tender, and press out the Juice well; mix them well, and when dry by a Fire or the Sun, beat them to Powder, and mix with them their weight of Wheat-meal, then Season it as you do other Bread, and knead it up, and let the Dough remain a little to ferment; fashion the Paste into Loaves, and bake it like common Bread. Thus you may make Bread of Potatoes, Parsnips or Carrots.

Grapes to make them grow long upon the Vines.

In *December* put a Vine-Branch through a Basket; fill the Basket with Earth, and when your Grapes are ripe, cut off the Branch under the Basket: keep the Basket abroad whilst warm Weather, and within Doors in cold.

Plants profitable for every Part.
Those which heat and dry the Head are,

Such as are well scented, yet not over-strong, for strong scents cause the Head-ach, by filling it with Vapour. Bettony, Marjorum, Sage, Hyssop, Bawme, Rosemary, which strengthens the Senses and Memory, and is good for the Palsey. The Leaves and Berries of Bays, Savory, Rue, Calamint, Lavender, Origany, Cowslips, Lilly of the Vallies, Cassidony, which helpeth the Nerves, and therefore ought to be used in all remedies that belong to them, Camomile, Basil, Clove-Gilly-flowers, Melilote, Piony, the seeds of Louage and Fennel, the root of the Flower de Luce, the Flowers of the Lime-tree, Juniper-berries, Corriander, Misseltoe, which cureth the Falling Sickness, *&c.* Rubarb.

Those which cool and moisten the Head are,

Roses which strengthen the Brain, Violets which provoke sleep, and allay the acrimony of Choler, Flowers of Water-lilly, the Leaves and Seeds of Lettice, Purslane, Poppy Seed, Wood Sorrell; To which may be added those which are moist, and fitter for Melancholly diseases, *viz.* Borrage, Bugloss, sweet smelling Apples, sweet Almonds. All which may be applyed outwardly also to cool the Head, and beside these Nightshade, Everlasting, Violet Leaves, the leaves of Willows, but especially of Roses, and whatsoever is made of them. For they refresh the Brain with their sweet Odour, and drive away vapours from thence.

Those which are good for the Eyes are,

Fennel, Eyebright, Rue, Verveine, Sellandine, Marjoram, Betony, Elecampain, the roots of Valerian, the seeds of Clary, but especially of the wild sort, which is called *Oculus Christi* one of which being put into each Eye, cleanseth them, and purgeth them exceedingly from watterish humours, redness and inflammation, and divers other maladies, if not all that happen unto the Eyes, and taketh away the pain and smarting of Rubarb.

Those

Herbs which are good for the Ears are,

If the diſtemper proceed of Cold, Rue, Bays, Alecoſt, Gith, bitter Almonds, Onions, white Hellebore with Honey, Hyſop, the juice of Savory heated with a little Oyl of Roſes, and dropped into the Ears, eaſeth them of the noiſe, and ſinging in them, and of deafneſs alſo, and ſo doth the juice of ſweet Marjoram: If the diſtemper proceed of Heat, Roſes, Mallows, Violets, Willow Leaves, Lettice, Water Lillies, the Oil of Apricocks and Peaches, Pain, Bay, Betony.

Herbs which heat and dry the Breaſt and Lungs are,

Hyſop, Scabious, which alſo openeth Impoſtumes in the Breaſt: Maiden-hair, Coltsfoot, which taken in a Pipe and ſwallowed down, breaketh Impoſthumes: Horehound, Calamint, Betony, Fluellin, Cardues Benedictus, Liquoris, the roots of Elecampagen, and Flower de Luce, round Birthwort, which prevaleth much againſt inward Impoſthumes, and thick Flegm, Nettle-ſeeds, Fennellſeeds, Figs, Raiſons, Almonds, the roots of Aron, Dragons, Burnet, Linſeed, Nettles, Rubarb.

Herbs which cool and moiſten them are,

Violets, Mallows, the Seeds of white Poppey and Fleabane, broth made of French Barly, *&c.* which allay the hot and ſharp humours, moiſten the Lungs being dry, and make ſmooth the rough paſſages.

Herbs which Heat the Heart are,

Roſemary, Bawme, Baſil, Carduus Benedictus, Water Germander, Fluellin, the Barks and Seeds of Cirtons, Clove-Gillyflowers, Angelica roots, and thoſe of Elecampaen, Marygold flowers, Mace, Nutmegs, Cinamon, Cloves, Saffron, Southernwood, Goats-rue, Wood-roffe.

Herbs which cool the Heart and reſiſt dryneſs are,

Roſes, Violets, Sorrel, Bugloſs, Water Lillie, Plantane, the juice of Limons Oranges, and Pomgranates, Cherries, ſweet ſmelling Apples, Raſpberries, Strawberry Leayes, Heartburn, Bramble, Lettice, Peaſe, Purſlain, *&c.*

Herbs which Heat and dry the Stomach are,

Mint, Wormwood, Fennell, Roſemary, Sage, the leaves of Bayes, the Berries of Bayes and Juniper, the Seeds of Carrowies, Anniſe, Cummin, Smalage, Avens, Bawm, Parſly, Time, *&c.* Rubarb.

Herbs which cool the Stomach are,

Sorrell, Sheepſorrell, Purſlane, Lettice, Plantane, Endive, Sowthiſtles, Chicory, Roſes, Violets, Peaches, Quinces, Corinths, *Cucumbers, Peares, Garden Corinths,* Barberries, the juice of Limons, Medlars, Strawberries, Mulberries, Stomach to ſtrengthen. Angelica, Bawm, Bay, Chervil, Cinque foil, Clary, Creſſes, *&c.*

Herbs which Heat the Liver are,

Agrimony, Wormwood, Maidenhair, Sage, Dodder, Asarabacca, Liverwort, Spike, Maudlin, Fennell, Alexanders, Parsly, Asparagus, Bitter Almonds, Elicampane, the Seeds of Annise, Carowayes, Cummin, Fennel, Parsly, *&c.*

Herbs, which cool the Liver are,

Endive, Succory, Clary, Dandelyon, Purslane, Lettice, Roses, Violets, Water-Lillies, Sorrel, Strawberries, the seeds of Melons, Gourds, Cucumbers, Citrulls, Endive, Lettice, Clary, Parsly, French Barley, *&c.*

Herbs which Heat the Spleen are,

Spleenwort, or Miltwaste, Wormwood, Dodder, Fumitory, Hops, Rue, Calamint, Alexanders, Fluell in, Germander, Groundpine, Bawm, Cresses, Scurvygrass, Horehound, Broom, Elder, Asarabacca, the roots of Polypode, Elecampane, Felwort, Ferne, Fennel, Parsly, Agnus, Tamarsik, Capers, Birthwort, Madder, Bitter Almonds, *&c.* Spleen obstructed. Angelica Archangel Betony.

Herbs which cool the Spleen are,

Succory, Endive, Surslane, Lettice, Willowleaves, Sorrel, Dandelyon, Barberries, Strawberries, Cherries, *&c.* Spleen obstructed. Bay Dittany.

Herbs which worm the Reins and Bladder are,

Maidenhair, Rue, Saxifrage, Betony, Privet, Fennel, Rocket, Mugwort, Horseraddish, Calamint, Sea Holly, Asparagus, Butchers,, Broom, Burnet, Licorish, Alexanders, Parsly, Nettles, Wild Carriots, Dropwor, Madder, Juniper, Berries, Camomile flowers, Chervile, Almonds, the kernels of Peaches, Cherries, *&c.*

Herbs which cool the Reins and Bladder are.

Knotgrass, Mallowes, Yarrow, Moneywort, Plantas, Endive, Succory, Lettice Purslane, Water Lillies, Houseleek, Pellitory, the Seeds of Poppy Flebare Pompions *&c.* Reins to cleanse. Acorns, *Pimpernel* Violets.

Herbs which Heat the Womb are,

Mugwort Motherwort Bettony Dittany Origany Pennyroyal Calamint Marjoram Sage Time Bawm Savory Rue Rosemary Bay leaves Camomile Flowers the Seeds of Cummin Annise Fennel Wild carrot Parsly Alexanders the roots of Birthwort Madder Sea Holly Fennel Alexanders Sparagus Burnet Angelica Valerian Masterwort *&c.*

Herbs which cool the Womb are,

Water Lillies Violets Roses Quinces and their Syrep, Purslane Lettice Clary Wildtansy Orawch Burdocks Willoweed Mirtle leaves Moneywort Southistles Endive Succory *&c.* Womb obstructed. Angelica, Betony, Birth-wort. *Herbs*

Herbs that Heat the Joints are,

Cowſlips, Sciatica Creſſes Marjoram Bettony Hot-Arſmart Sage Agrimony Camomile St *Johns* Wort Melilote Mugwort Roſemary Bayleaves Lavender *&c.* Fowl Aches to Cure. Briony Daſie Fennel Primroſe.

Herbs that cool the Joints are,

Plantne, Willow leaves, Vine leaves, Lettice, Henbane, Nightſhade, Houſe-leek, VVater Betony, the inner Bark of Elm, *&c.* Joint Aches to Cure. Comfry Elder.

Plants that are deſtructive to every Part.

As there be Plants profitable for every part, ſo there be ſome, tho not ſo many, which are ſomewhat deſtructive to ſome particular parts, if not corrected with mixture of ſome other ingredients. For though an Herb be good for the ſtomach, it may be naught for the Head, and that which is good for the Head, may be naught for the Stomach.

Herbs that are offenſive to the Head are,

The ſeeds of Agnus, Ivy taken inwardly; Camells Hay, the ſeed of Meddow ſweet, Hempſeed, Rocket, Horſe-raddiſh, Garlick, Onions, Leeks, Cedar berries, Bitter Vetch, the juice of VVormwood, Acorns, black Olives, the fruit of the the Strawberry tree, Frankincenſe taken imoderately, the fruit of the Maſtick-Tree, Saffron, Hogs Fennel, Sowbread, Mandrake, Hemlock, *&c.*

Herbs which are offenſive to the Eyes are;

Dill, Lentills, Hemp, Lettice, Beans, Raddiſh, Cabbage, Muſtard ſeed, Onions, Leeks, Garlick, *&c.* Eyes dim and Sore to Help. Elder Endive Plantain.

Herbs which are offenſive to the Heart are;

Spurge, Broom. Heartburn to Cure. Bramble Lettice Lung-wort.

Herbs which are offenſive to the Stomach are,

Hyſop, Soldanella, Flower de Luce, Alder, Spurge, Broom, Fern, Muſhromes, Beets, Diſtaffe Thiſtle. Stomach to ſtrengthen. Angelica, Bawm, Bay.

Herbs which are offenſive to the Liver are,

Spurge, Mezereon. Liver to ſtrengthen. Agrimony, Cinquefail, Lavender.

Herbs which are offenſive to Conception are,

Spleenwort, Colloquintida, VVild Cucumbers, Scammony, Savine, Hempſeed, the ſeeds of Agnus.

Of

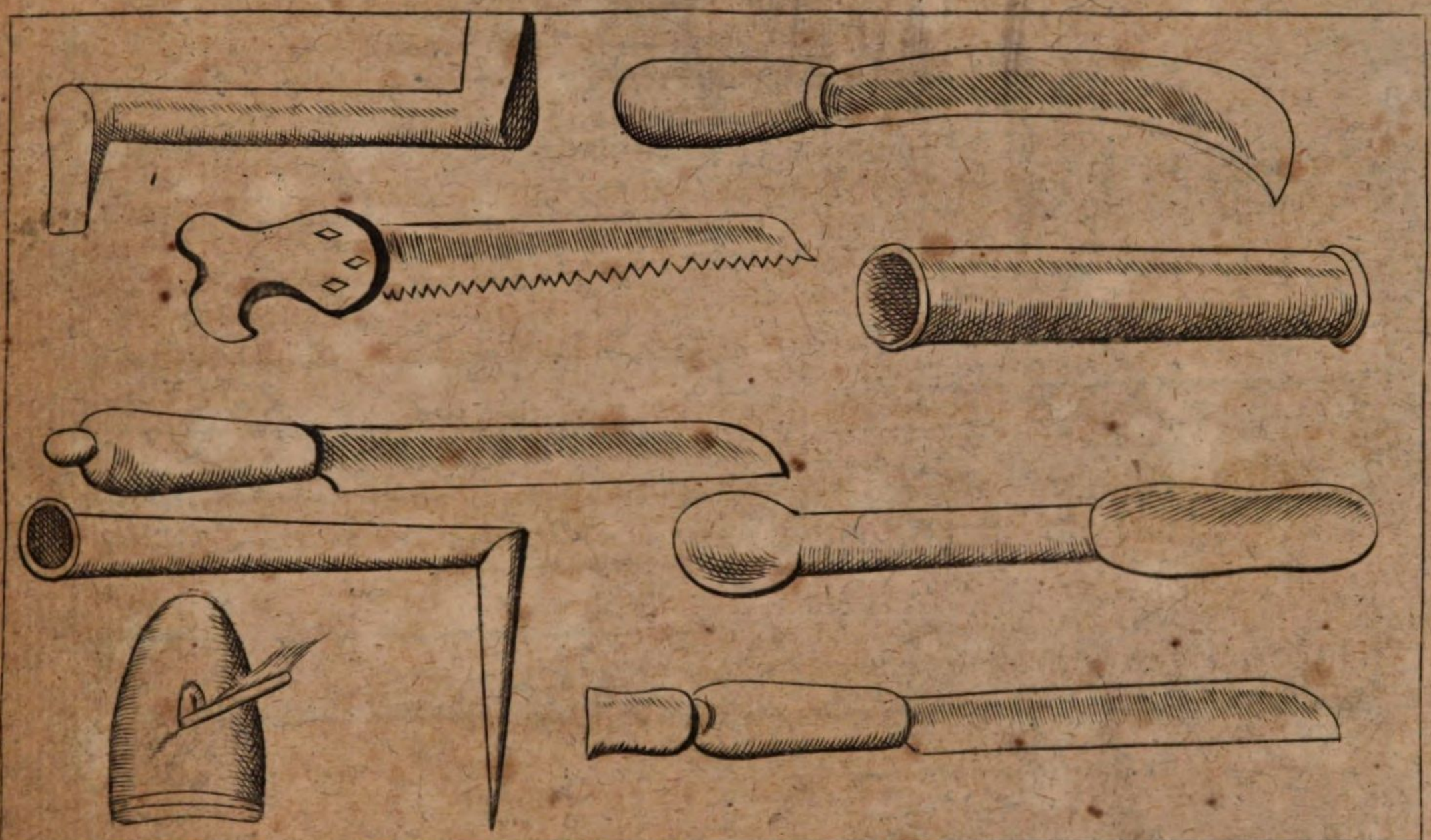
The profitable use of a Garden.

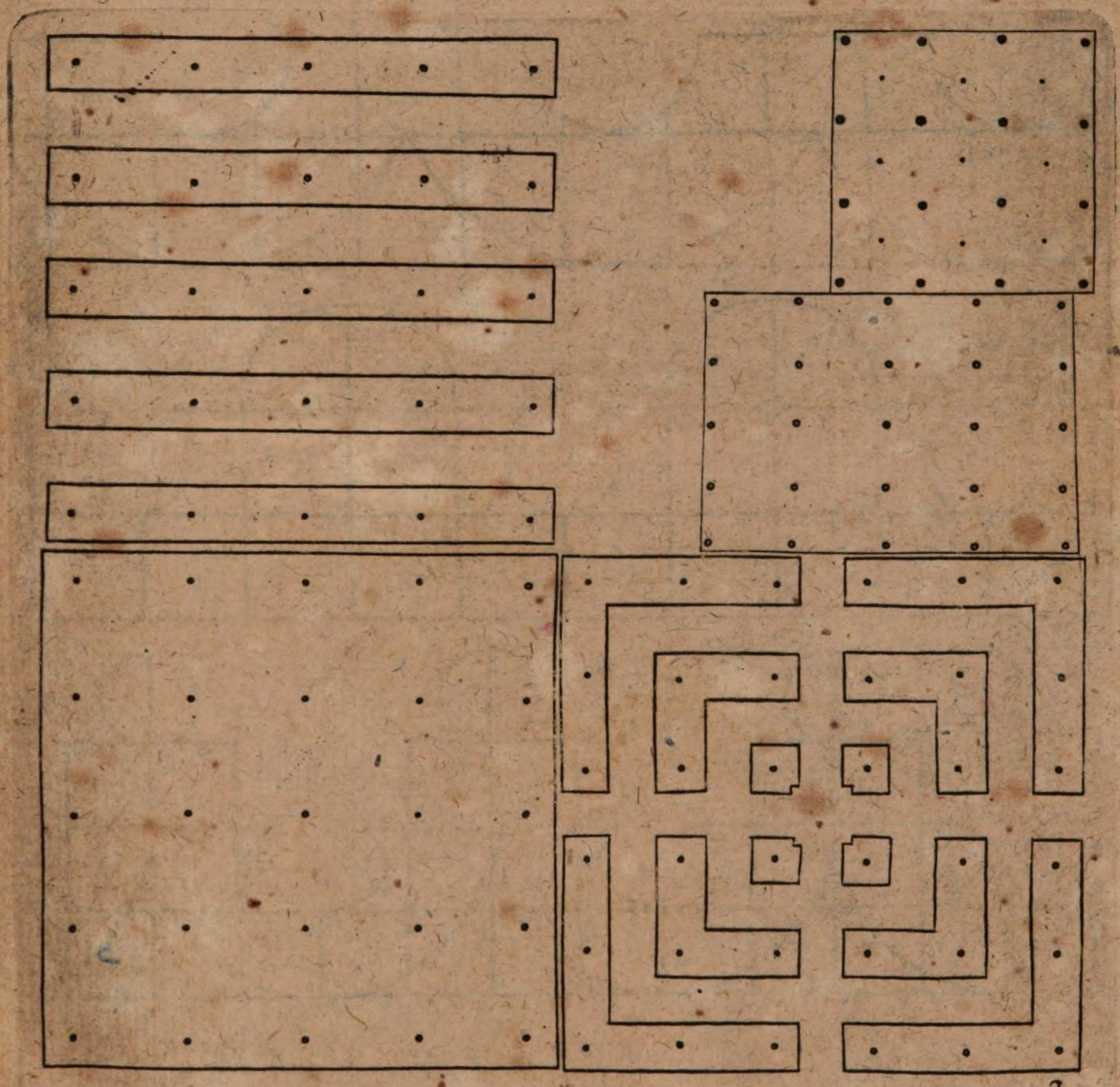
The pleasure of a Garden being thus demonstrated, I shall conclude all with the profit thereof, which is likewise manyfold. First, for household occasions, for there is not a day passeth over our heads but we have need of one thing or other that groweth within their circumference. We cannot make so much as a little good Pottage without Herbs, which give an admirable relish, and make them wholesome for our Bodies. In a Garden there be *Turneps*, and *Carrots* which serve for sauce, and if meat be wanting, for that too. Neither doth it afford us Aliment only, but Physick, (no Herbs being without their Physicall use, as I have said before, especially if it be well furnished with Simples.) But besides this inestimable profit, there is another not much inferior to it, and that is the wholesome exercise a man may use in it. And would Men be ruled by me, I would advise them to spend their spare time in their Gardens; either in digging setting weeding or the like, then which there is no better way in the world to preserve health. If a Man want an appetite to his Victuals, the smell of the Earth new turned up, by digging with a Spade will procure it, and if he be inclined to a Consumption it will recover him. Gentlewomen, if the ground be not too wet may do themselves much good by kneeling upon a Cushion and weeding. And thus both sexes might keep themselves from Idleness, and evil Company, which oftentimes prove the ruine of many people. But perhaps they may think it a disparagement to the condition they are in; truly none at all, if it were but put in practice: For we see that those fashions which sometimes seem ridiculous, if once taken up by the Gentry, cease to be so. And if you shall require a Precedent, I shall present unto you that of the wise and mighty Emperour *Diclesian*, who after he had reigned eighteen years, left for a season the whole Government of the Empire, and forsaking the Court, betook himself to a mean House, with a Garden adjoining, wherein with his own hands, he both sowed, set and weeded the Herbs of his Garden; which kind of Life so pleased him, that he was hardly intreated to resume the Government of the Empire. By this time I hope you will think it no dishonour to follow the steps of our Grandsire *Adam*, who is pictured with a Spade in his hand, to march through the Quarters of your Garden with the like instrument, and there to rectifie all the disorders thereof, to procure, as much as in you lies, the recovery of the languishing Art which did it but appear in lively colours, I am almost perswaded, it would so affect of you that you would be much taken with it. There is no better way to understand the benefit of it, than by being accquainted with Herballs, and Herbarists, and by putting this Gentile and ingenious Exercise in practice, that so this part of Knowledge, as well as others, may receive that esteem and advancement that is due to it, to the banishment of Barbarisme and Ignorance.

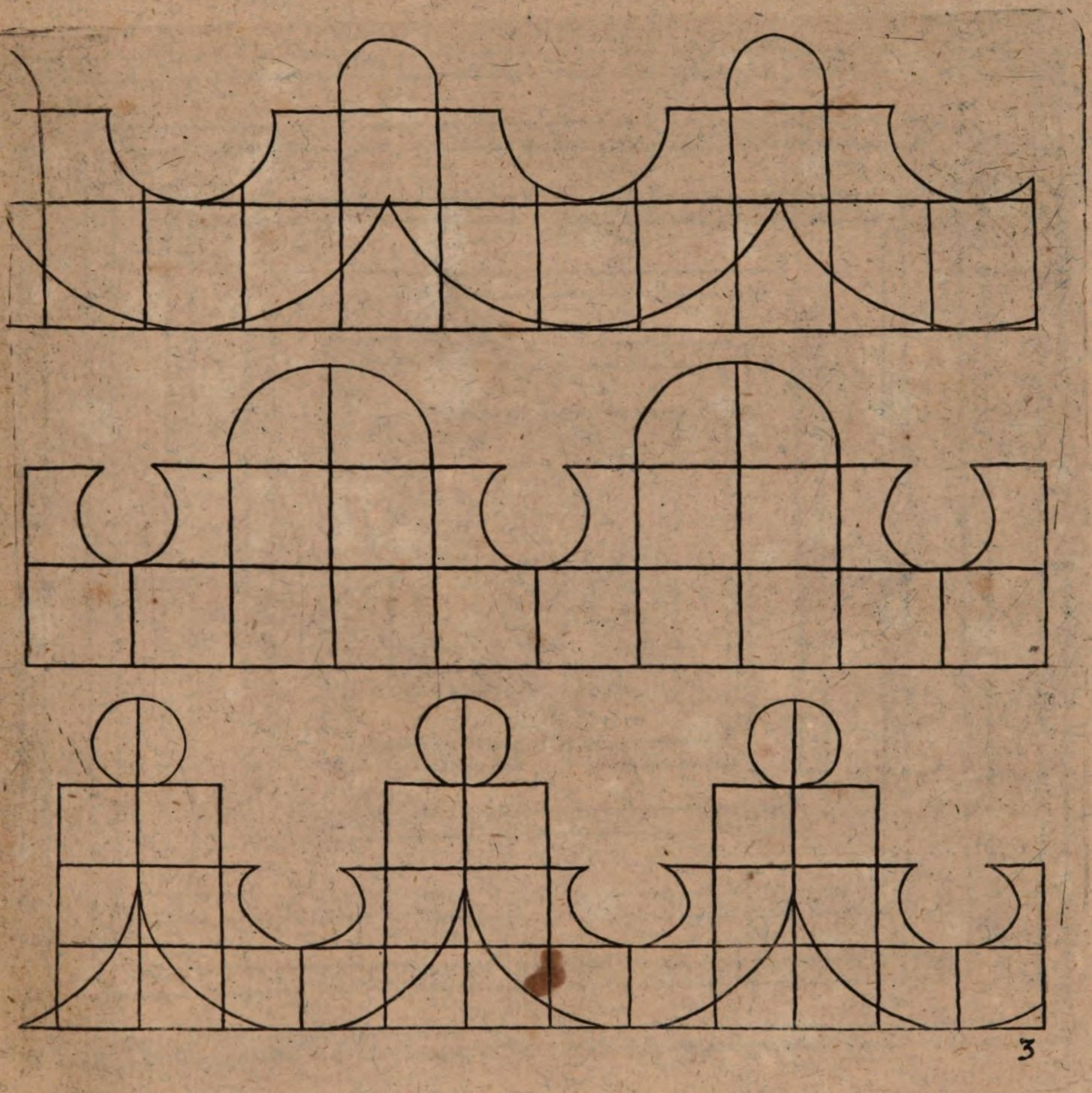
Teas pleasant.

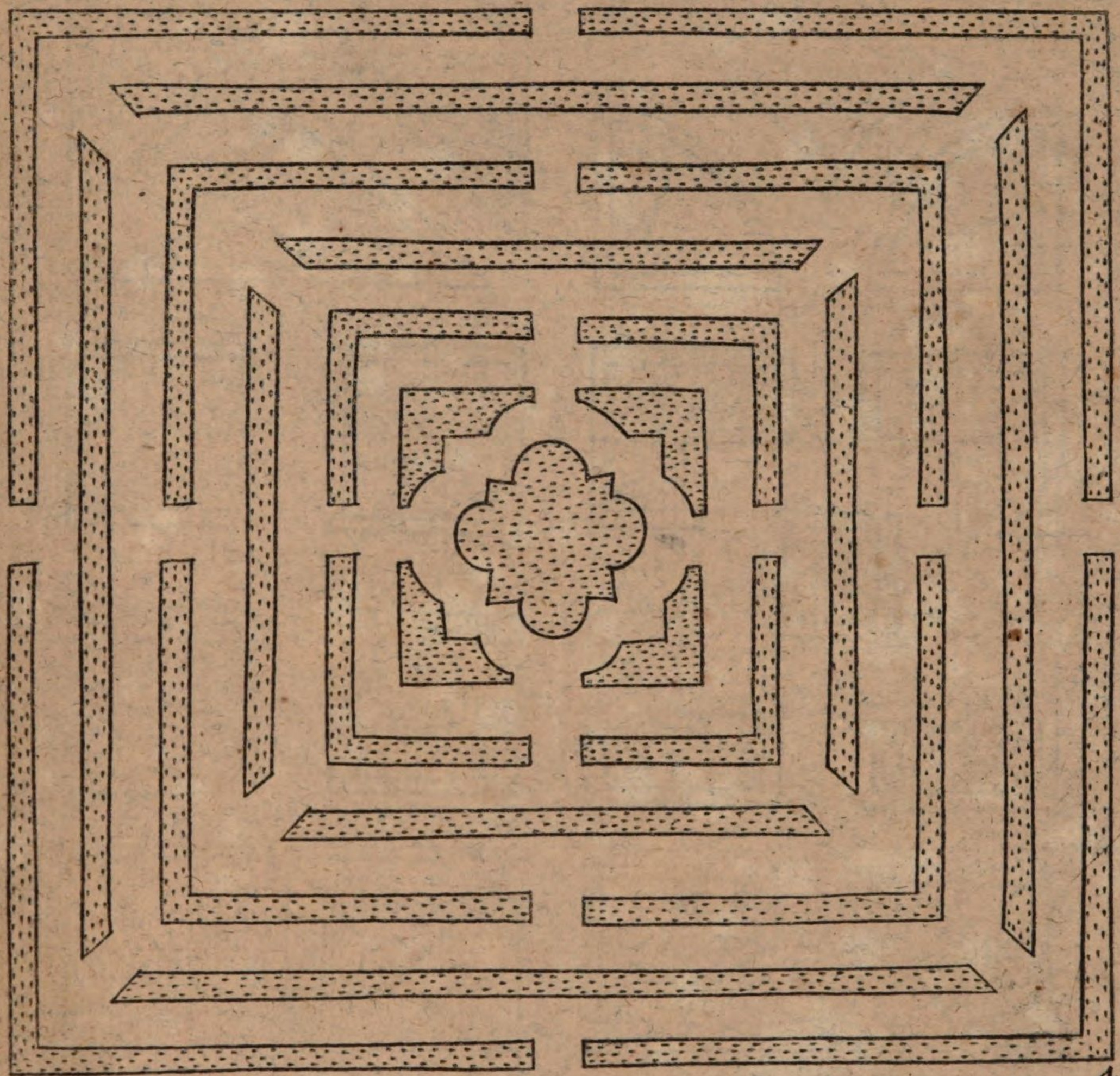
Sweet marjoram, Limon-Time, Ground-Ivy, Mint, Rosemary, Penyroyal, Marygold's, Betony, and divers others, I might mention; but I leave it to the Judgment of the Readers. I design shorrly to Print a small Herbal, giving an Account of the Virtues of all English Herbs, collected from all our English Herbals, which I hope to afford at the Price of 1*s*.

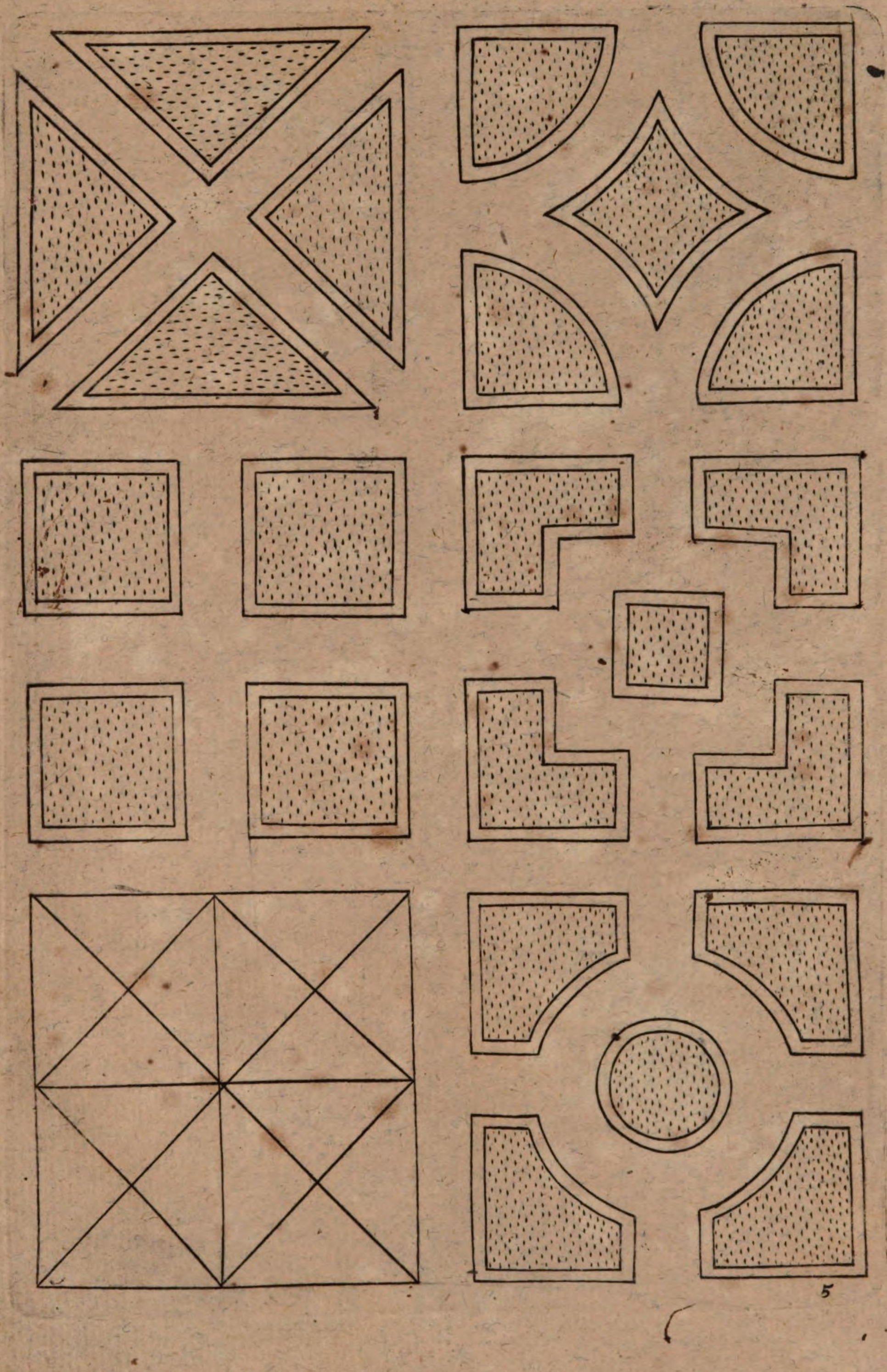
F I N I S.

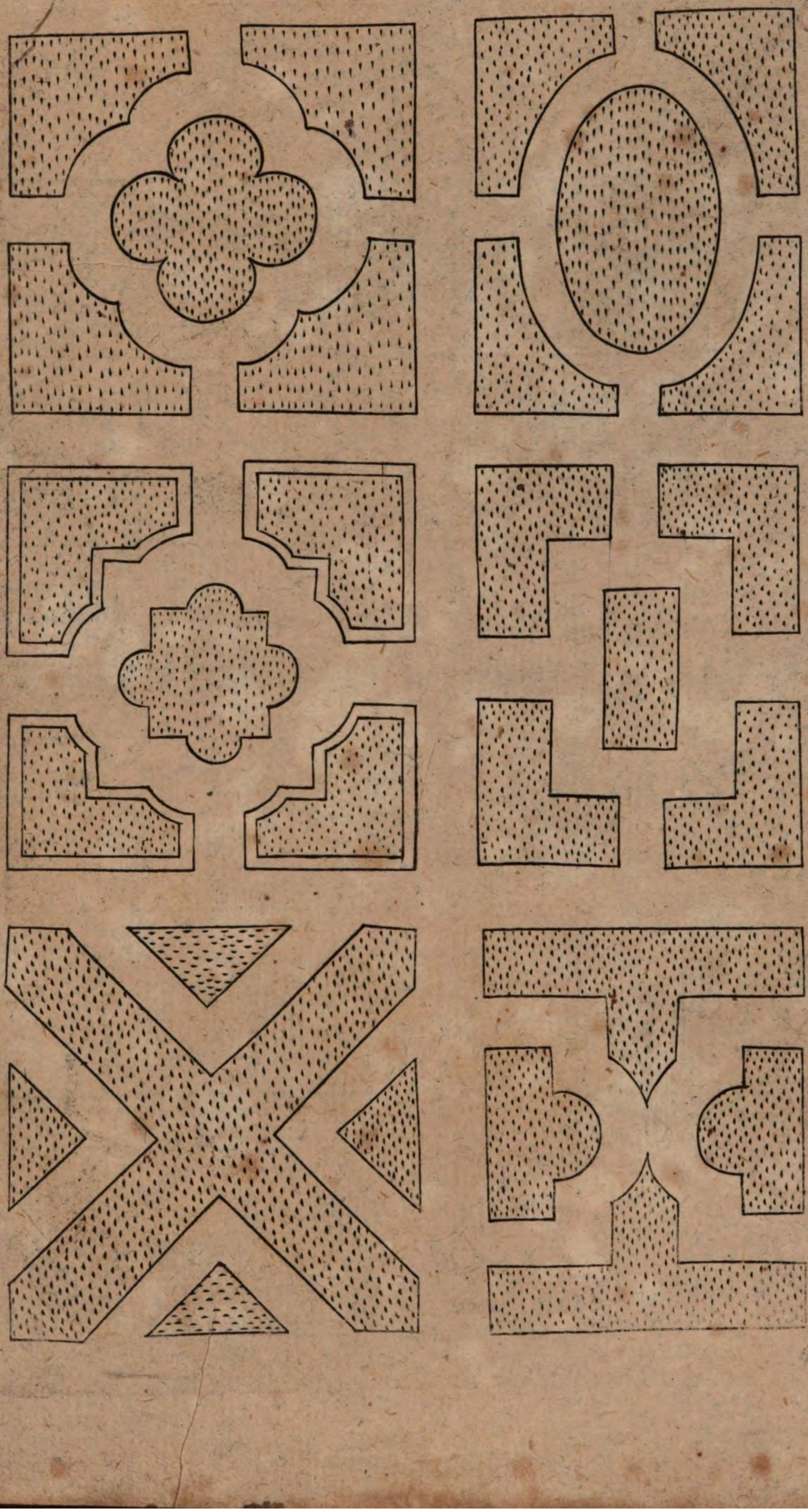


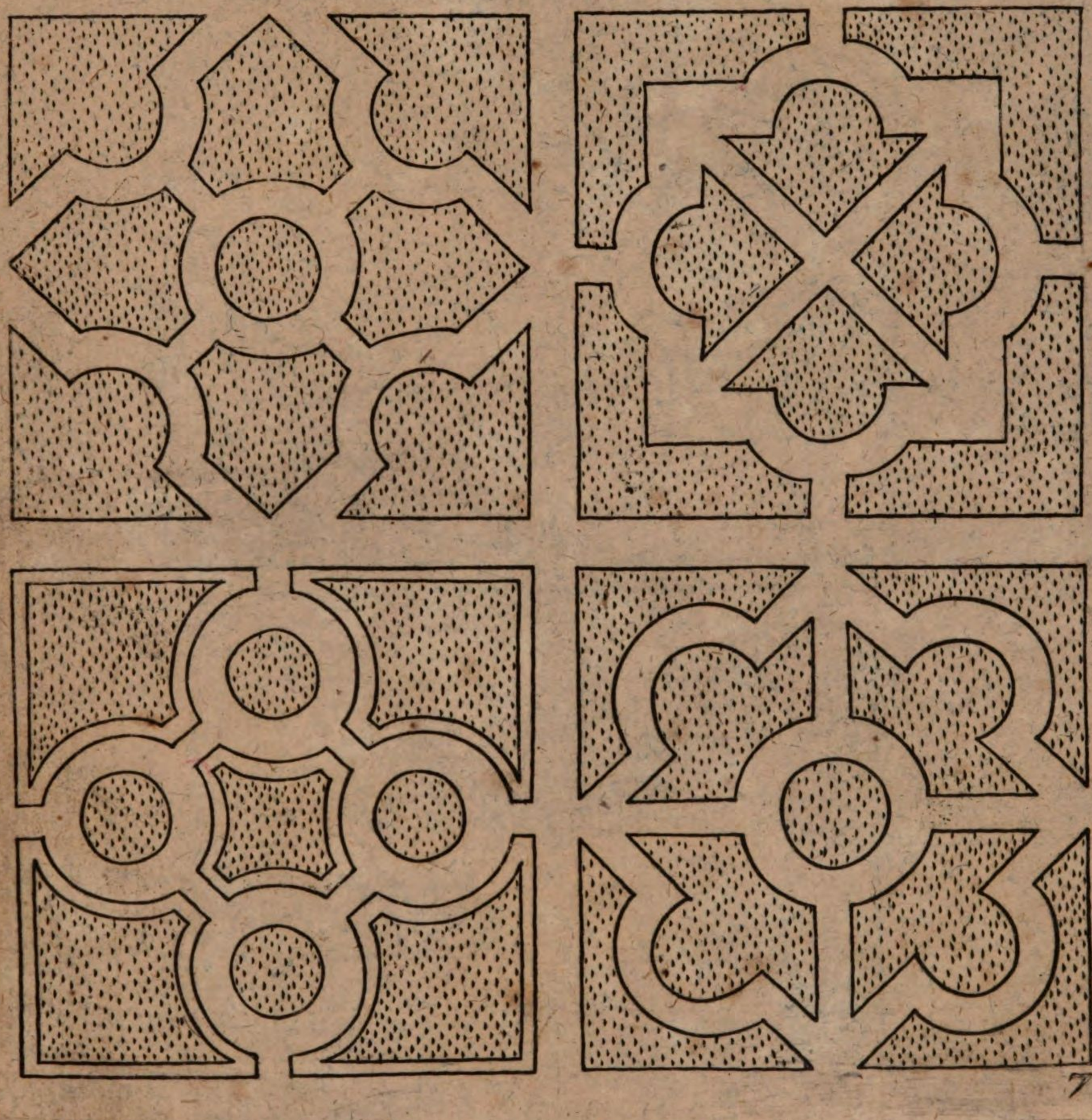


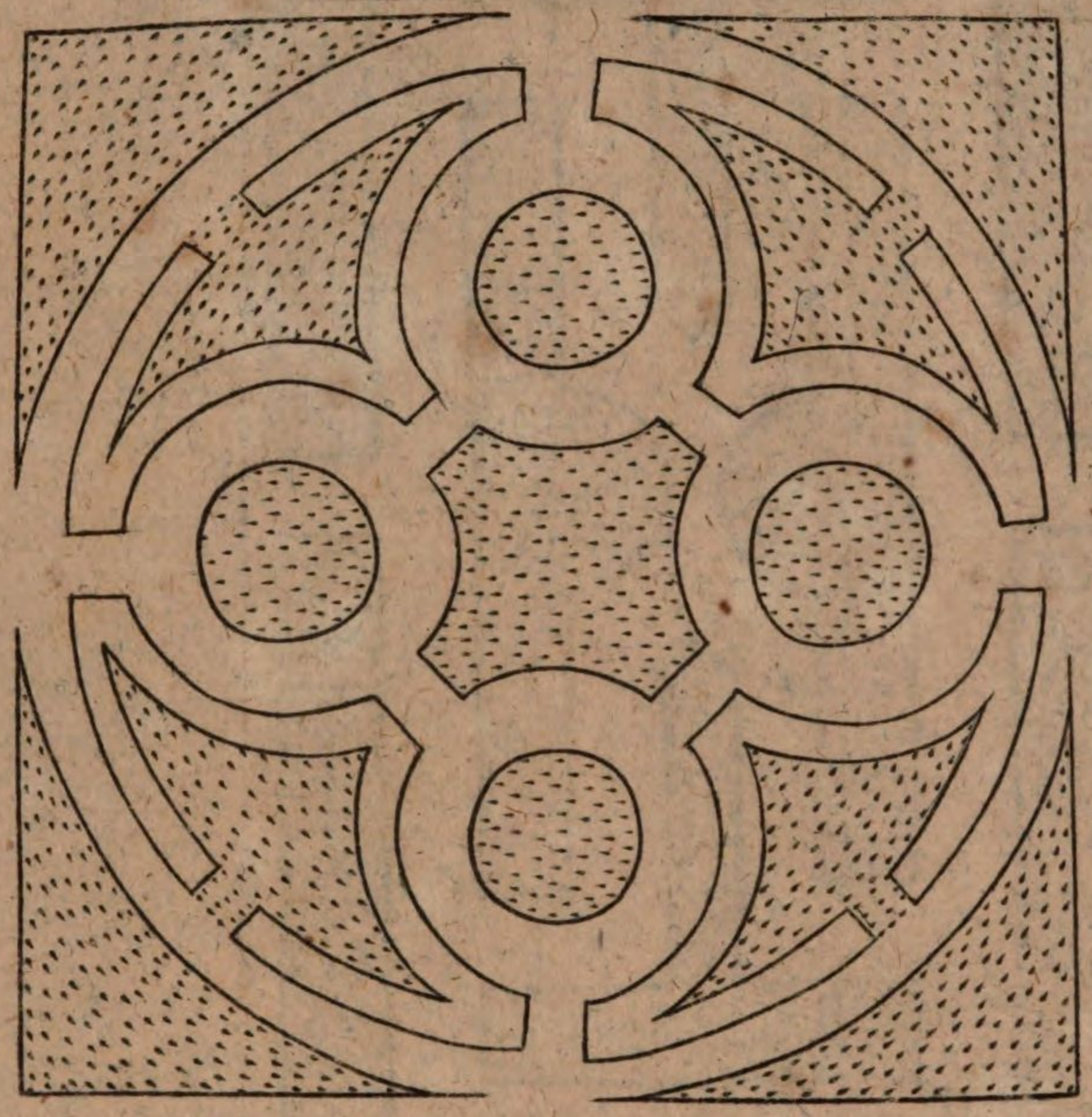


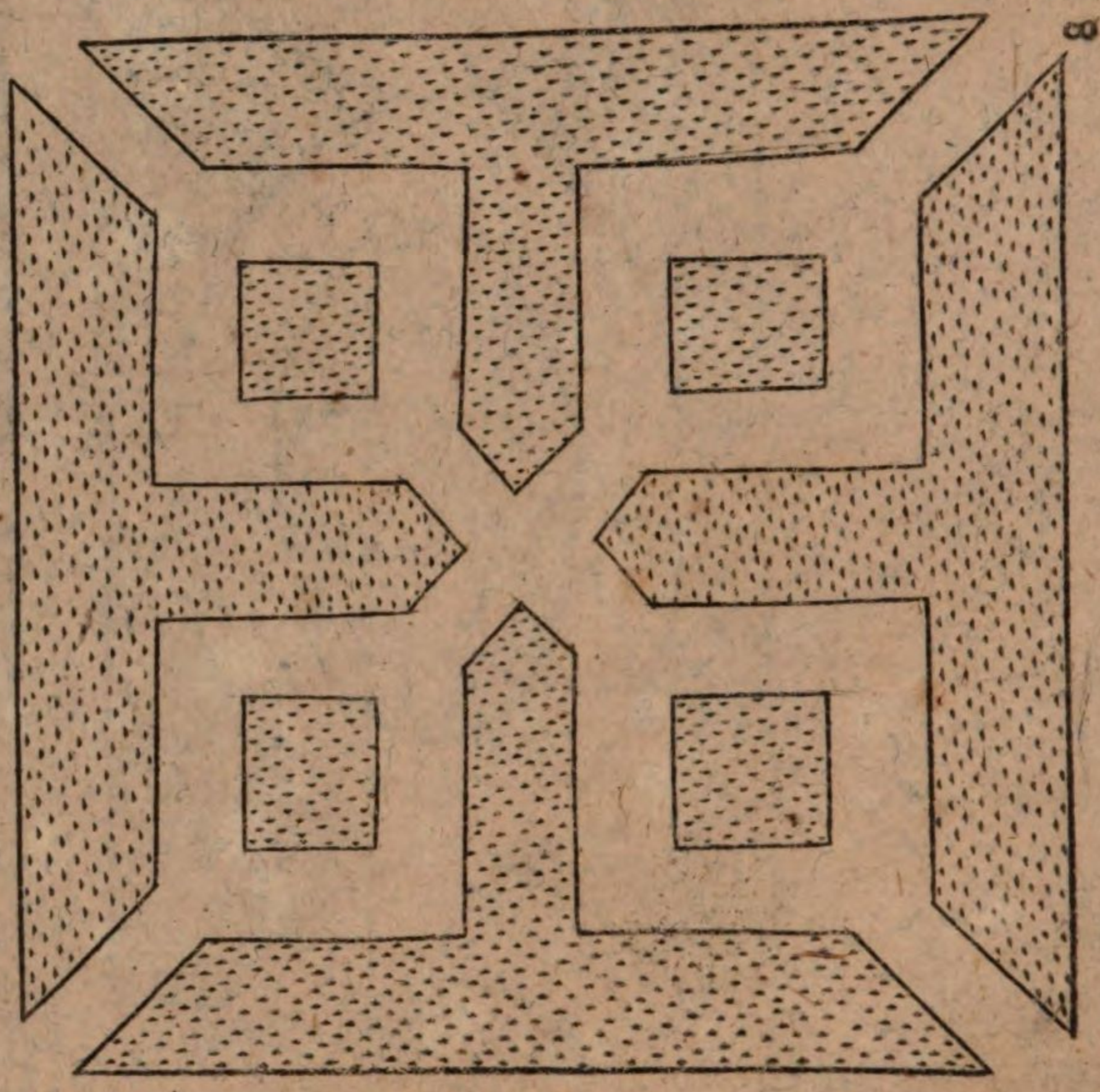


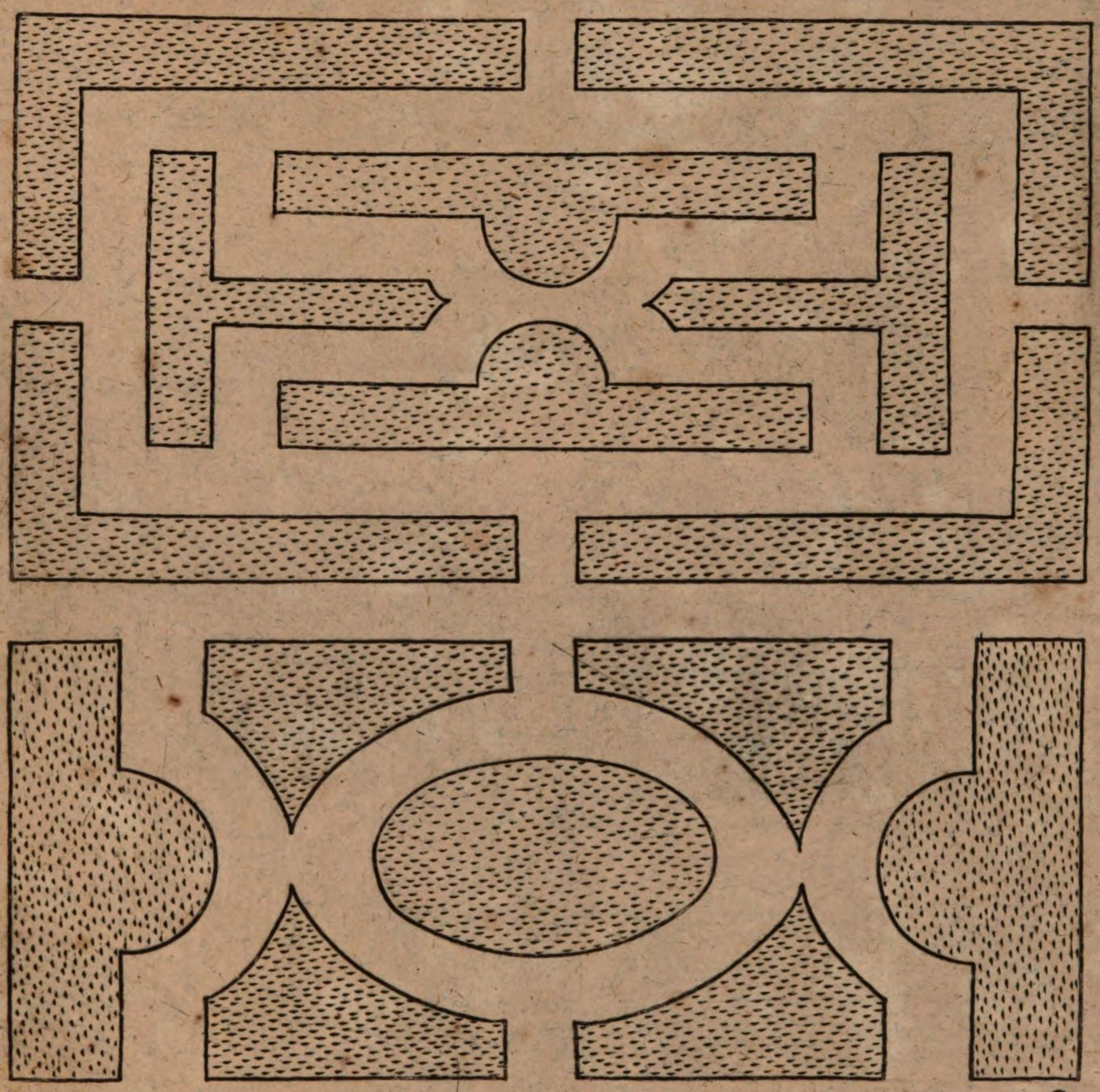


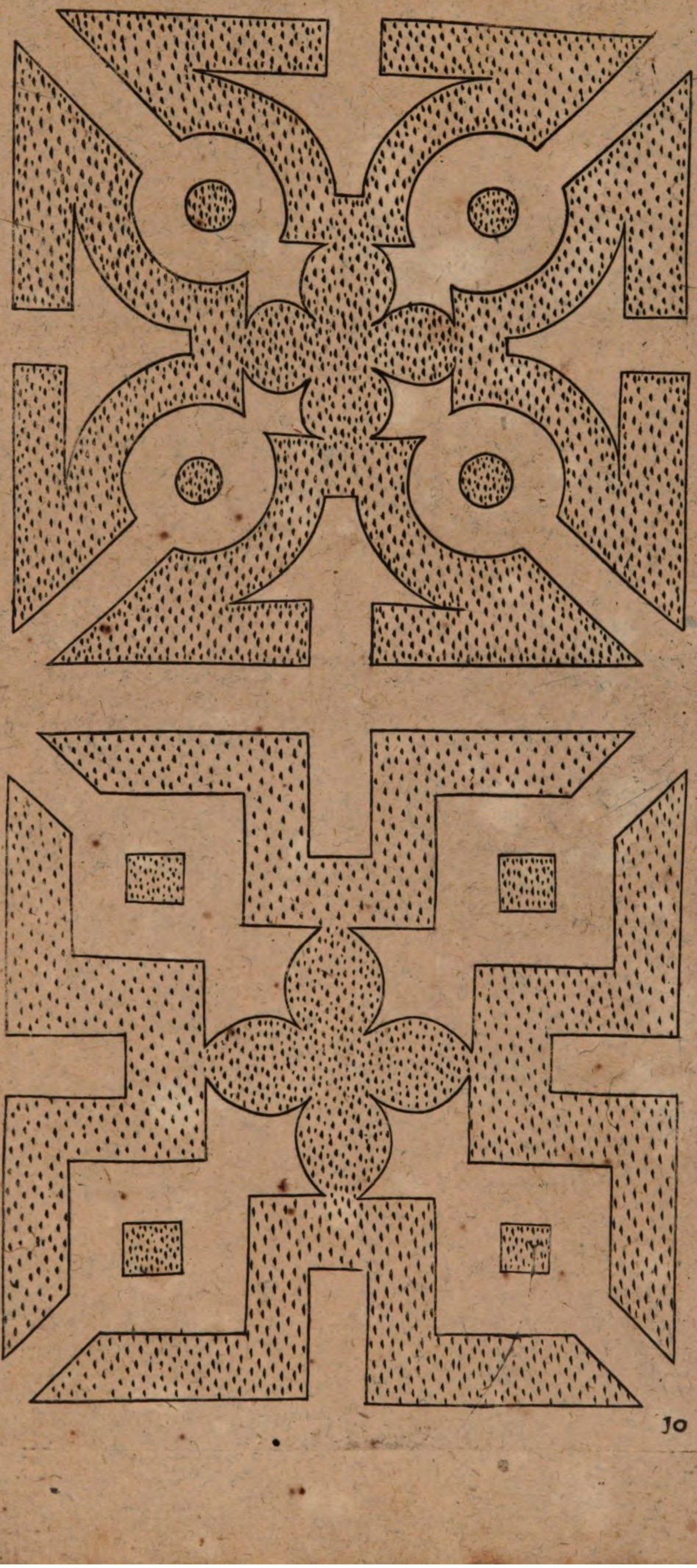


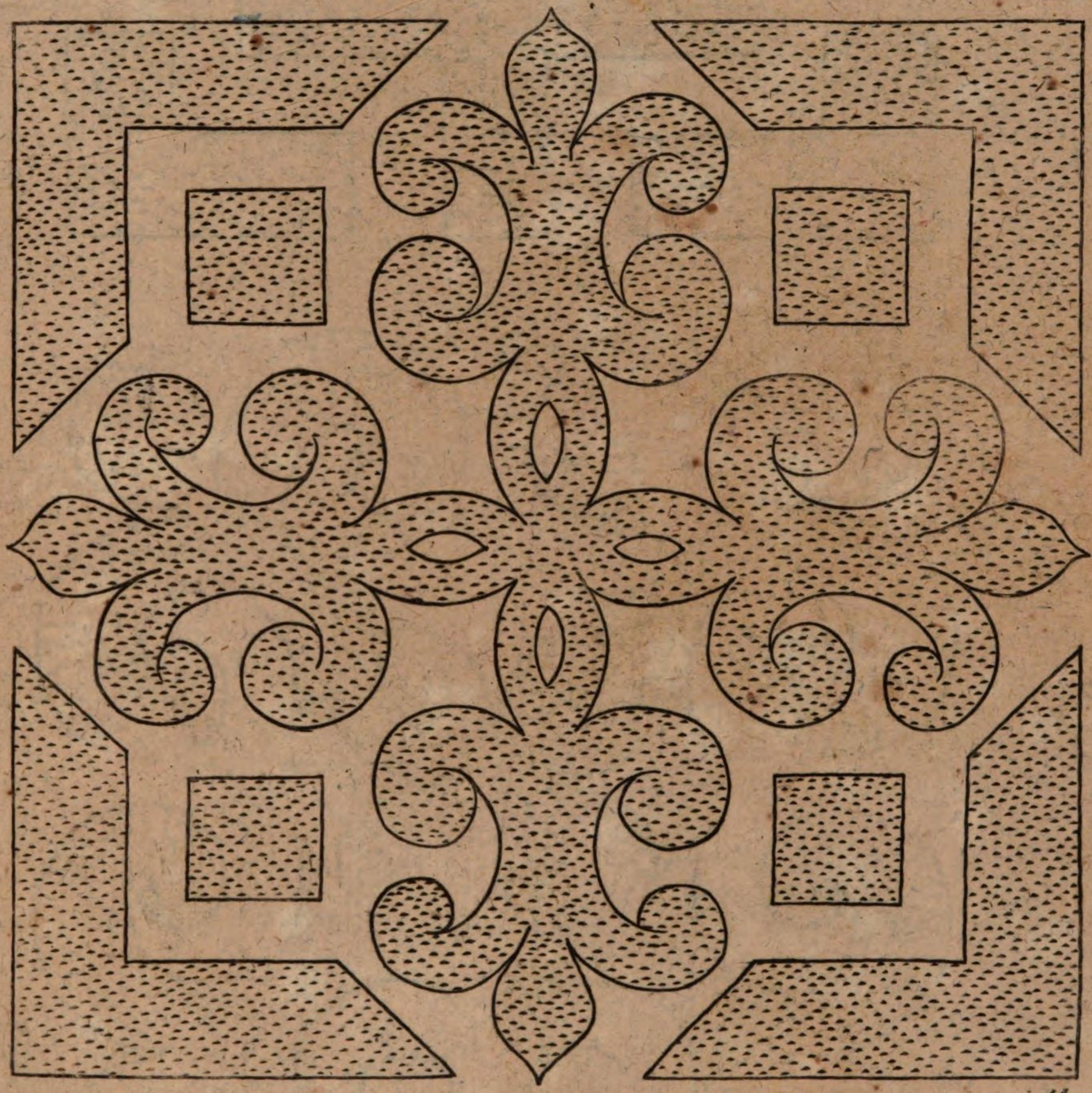


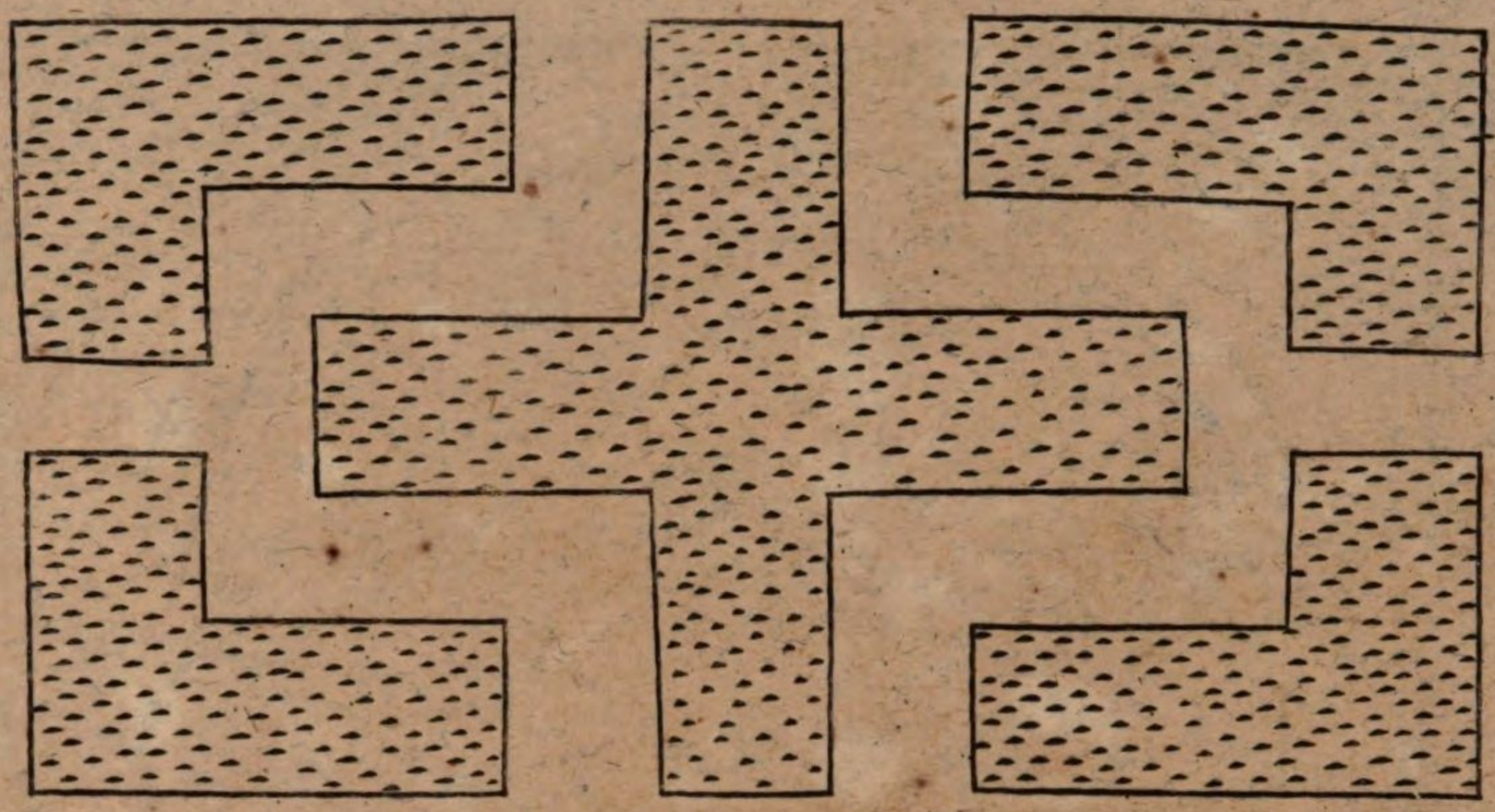


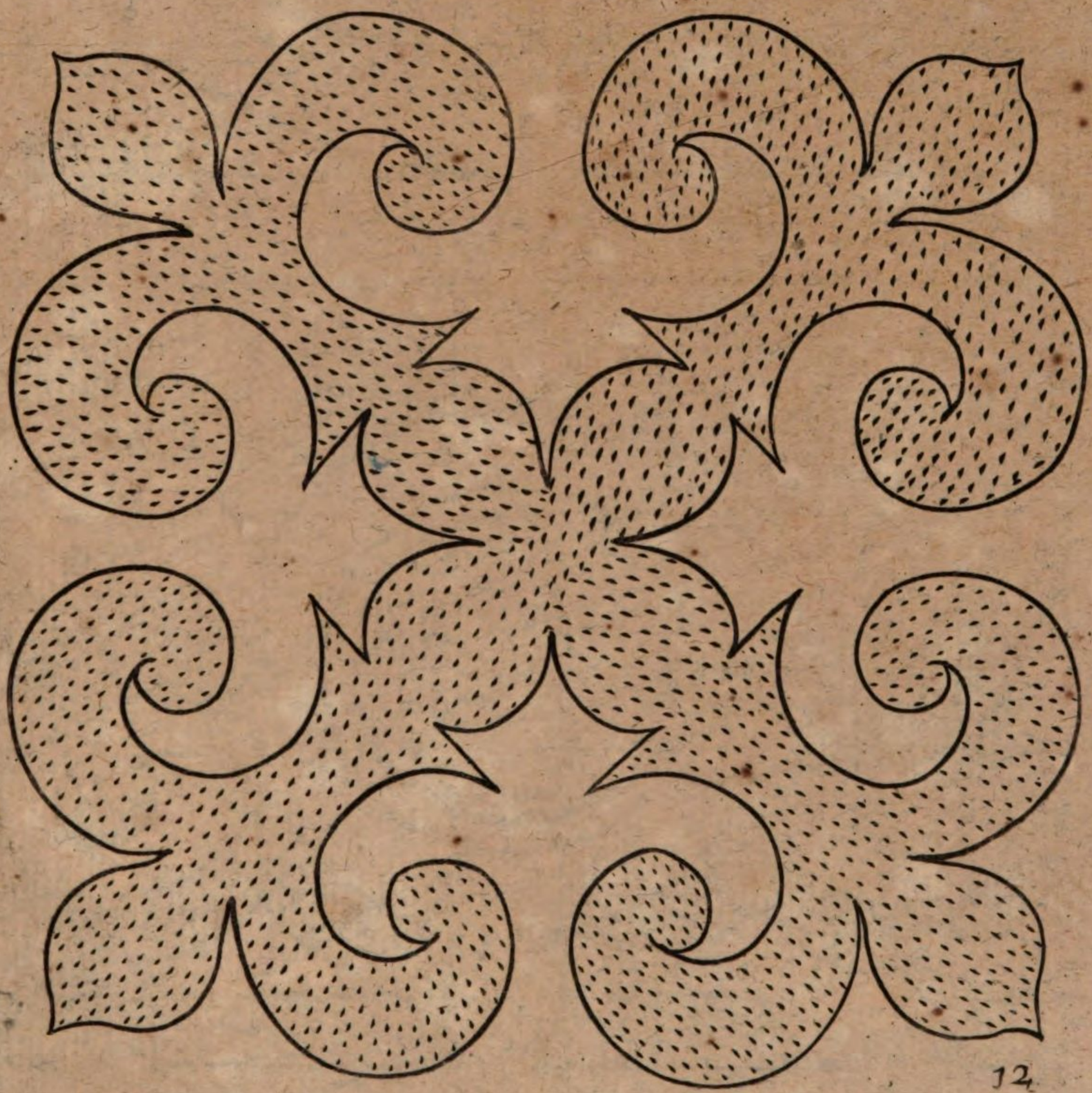


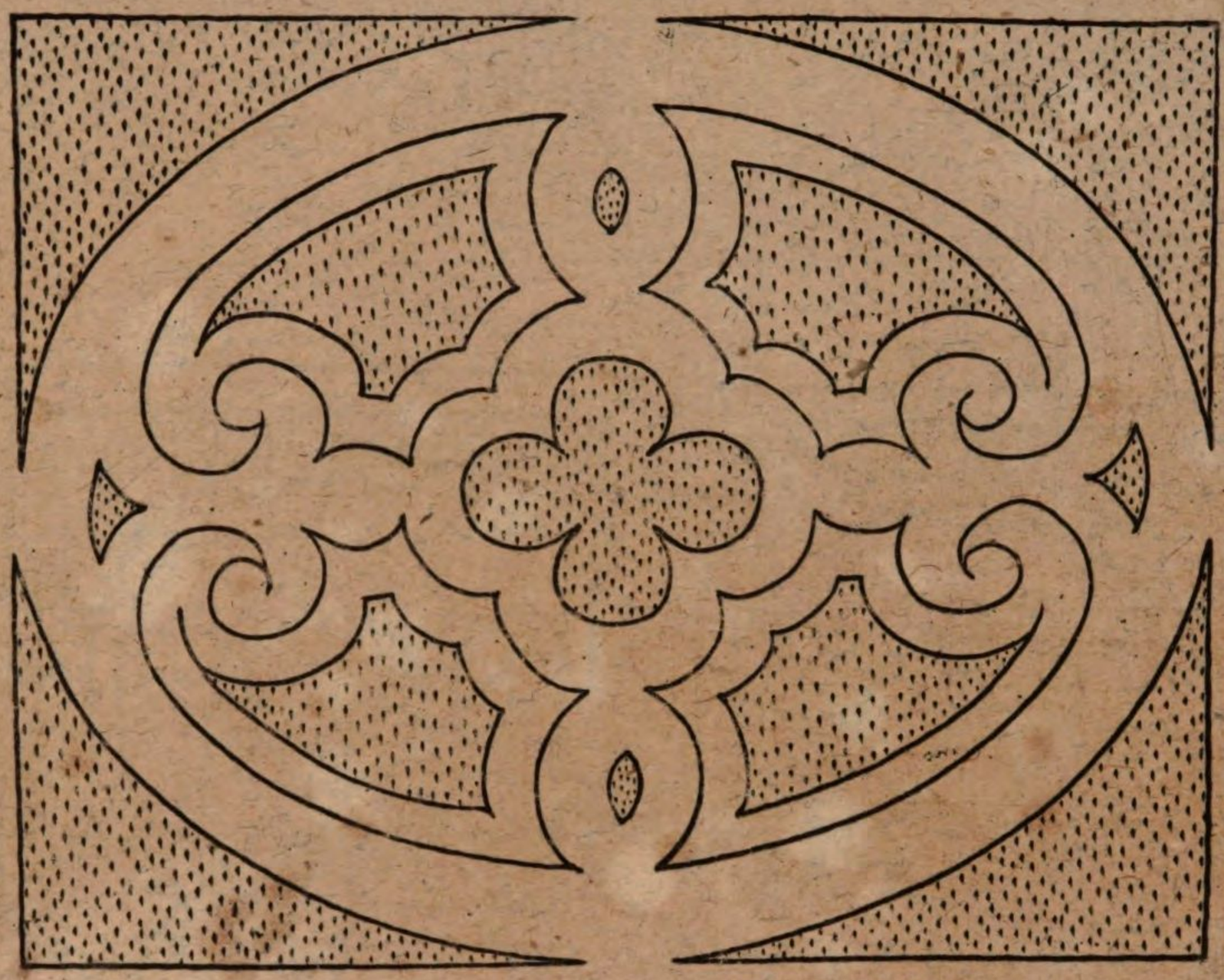


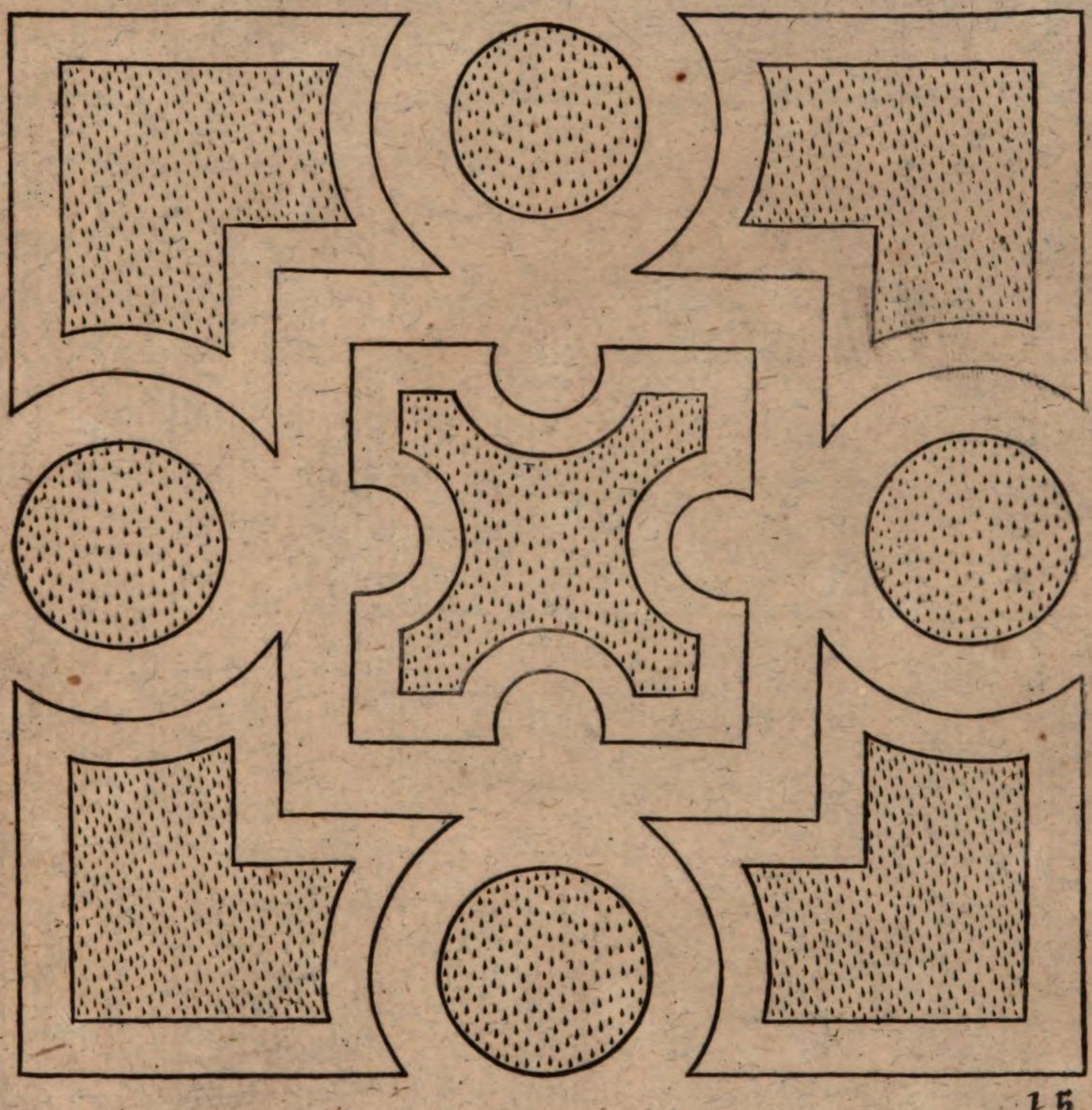


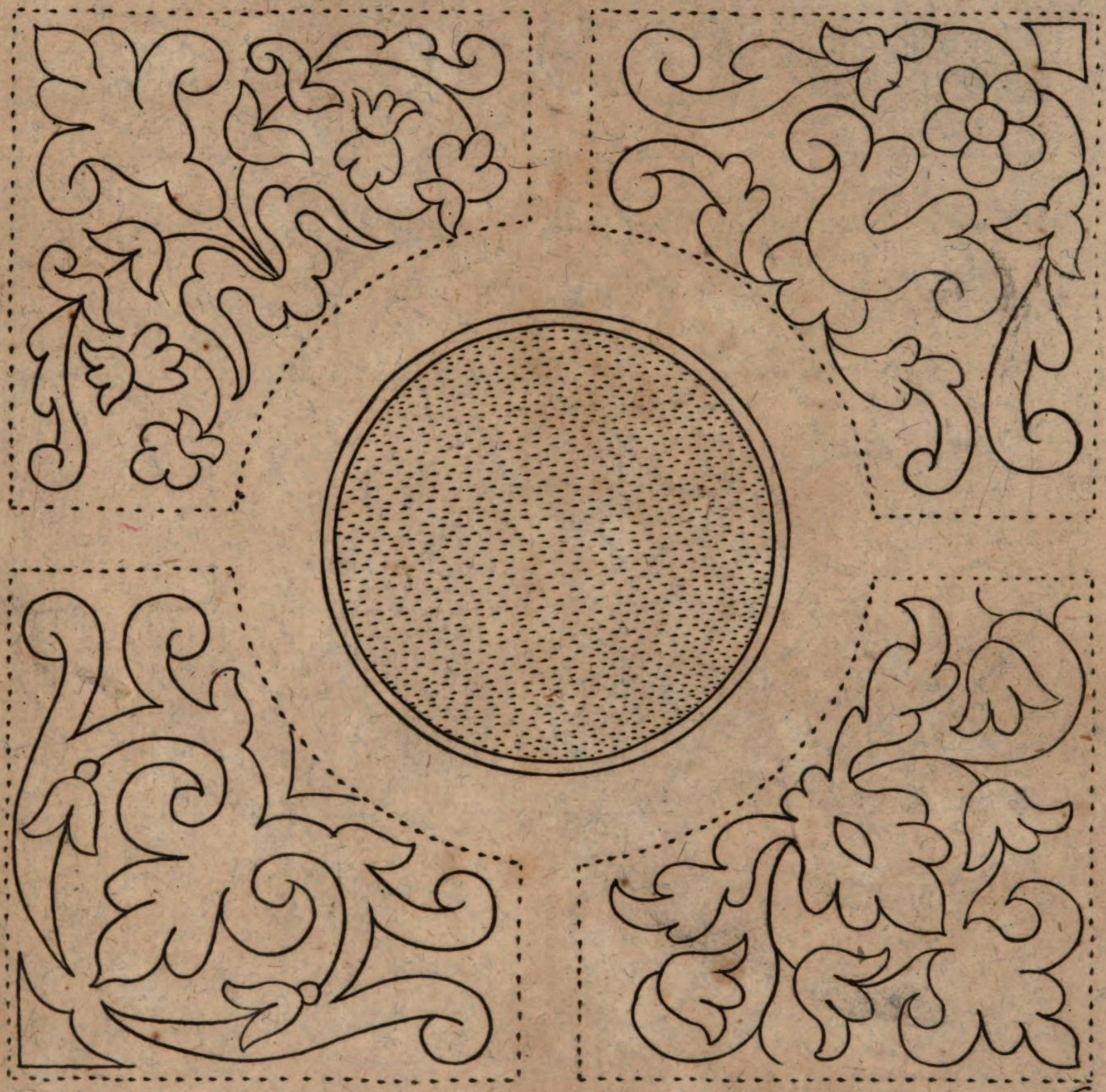


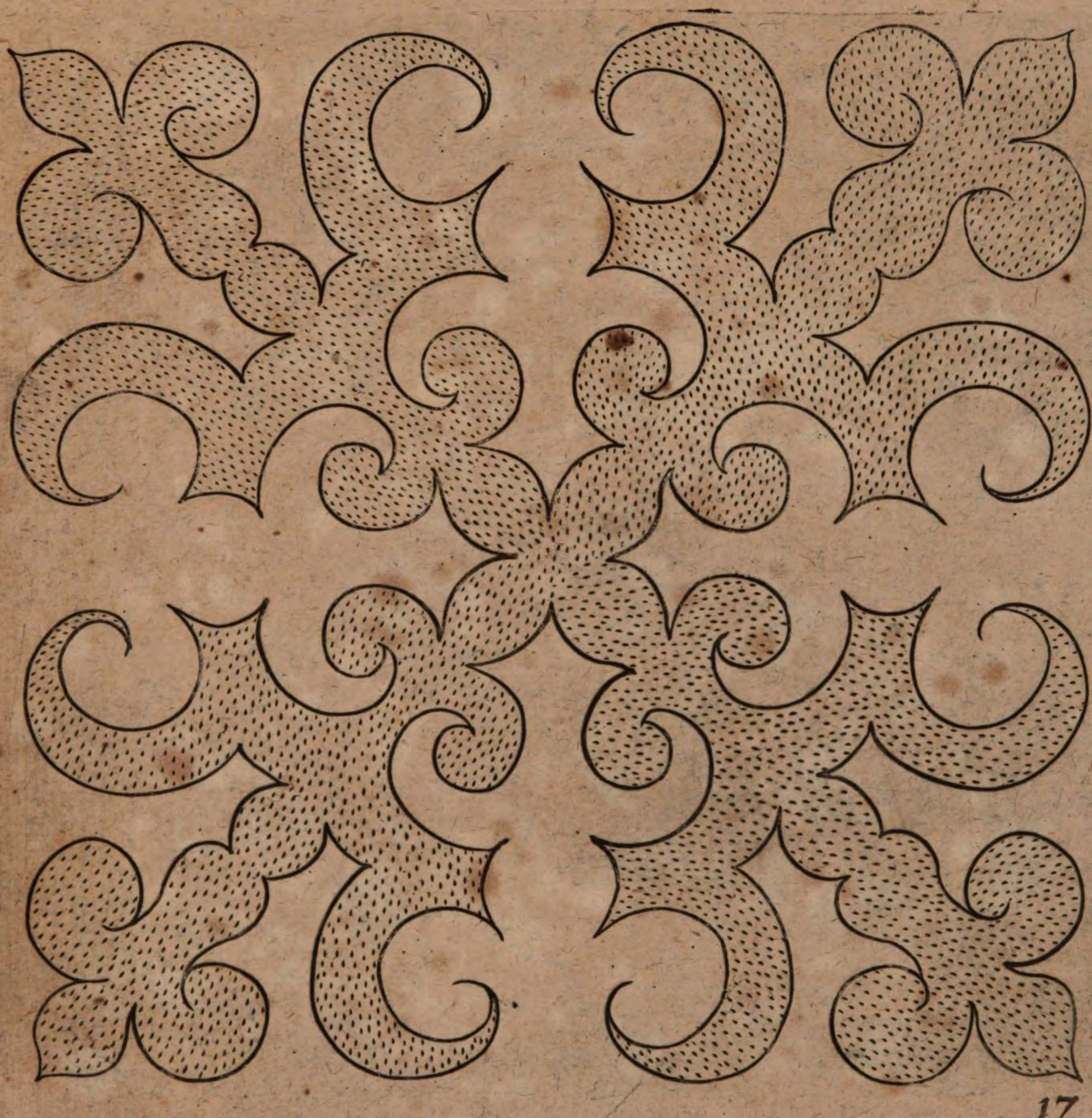


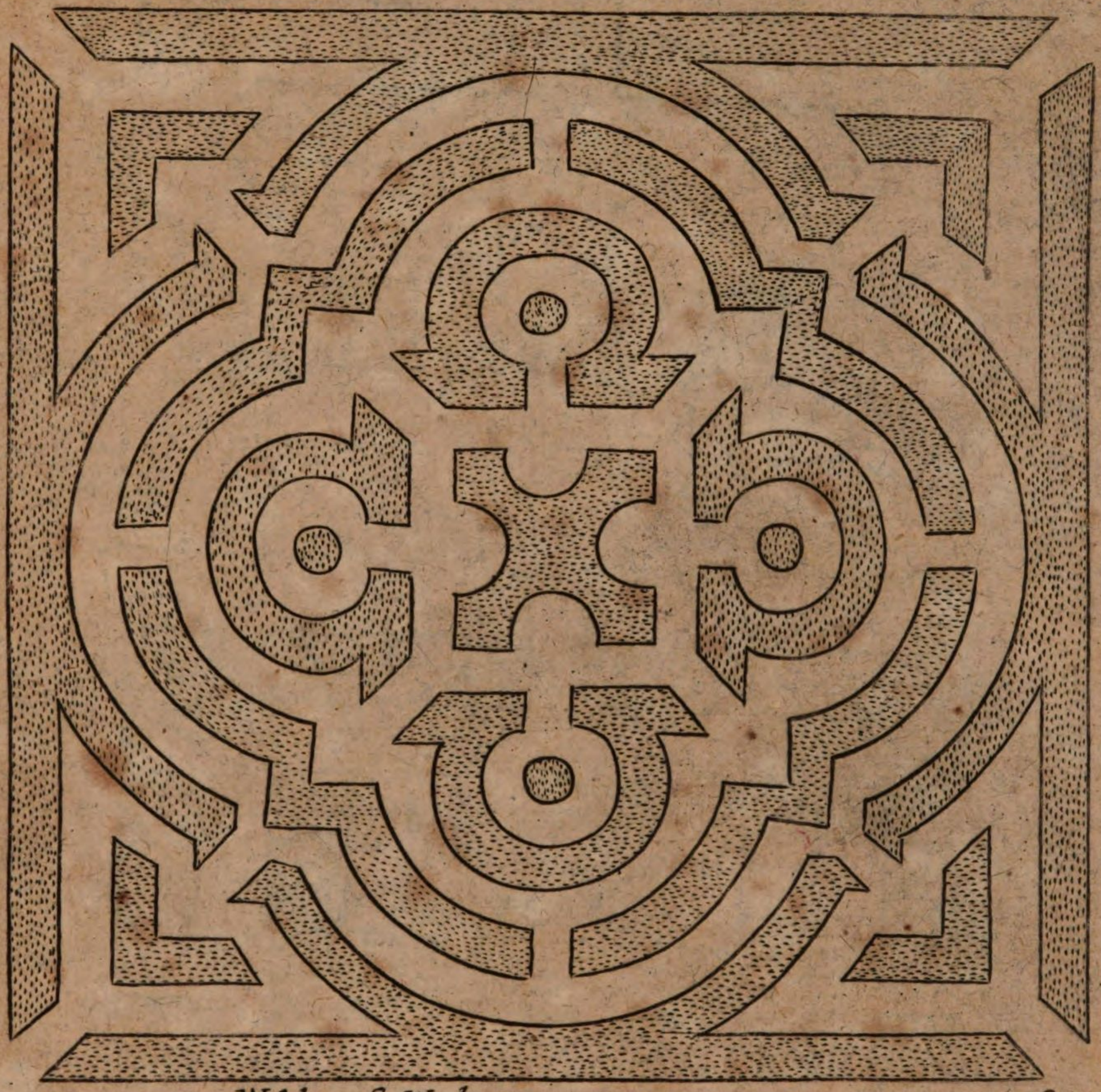


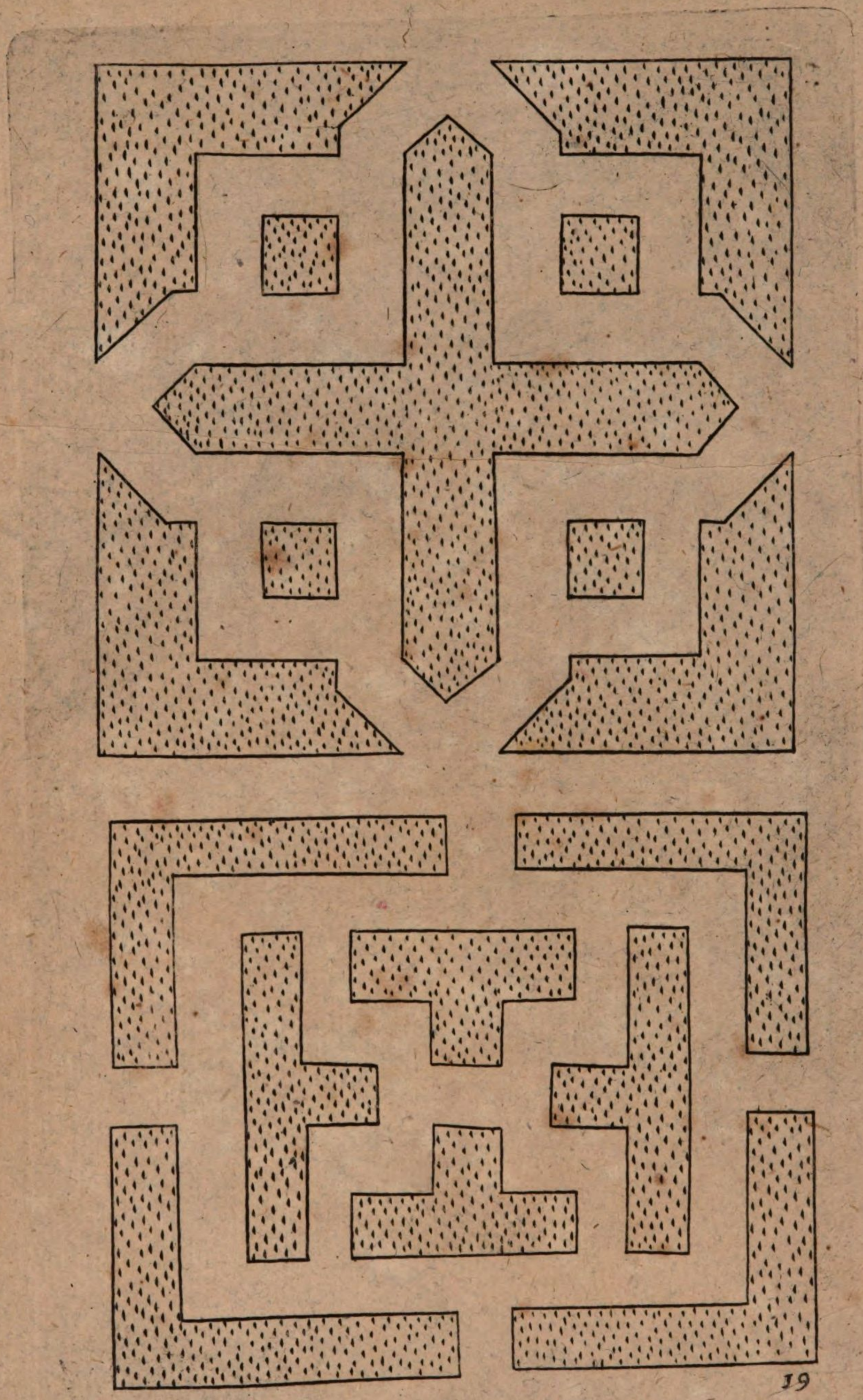


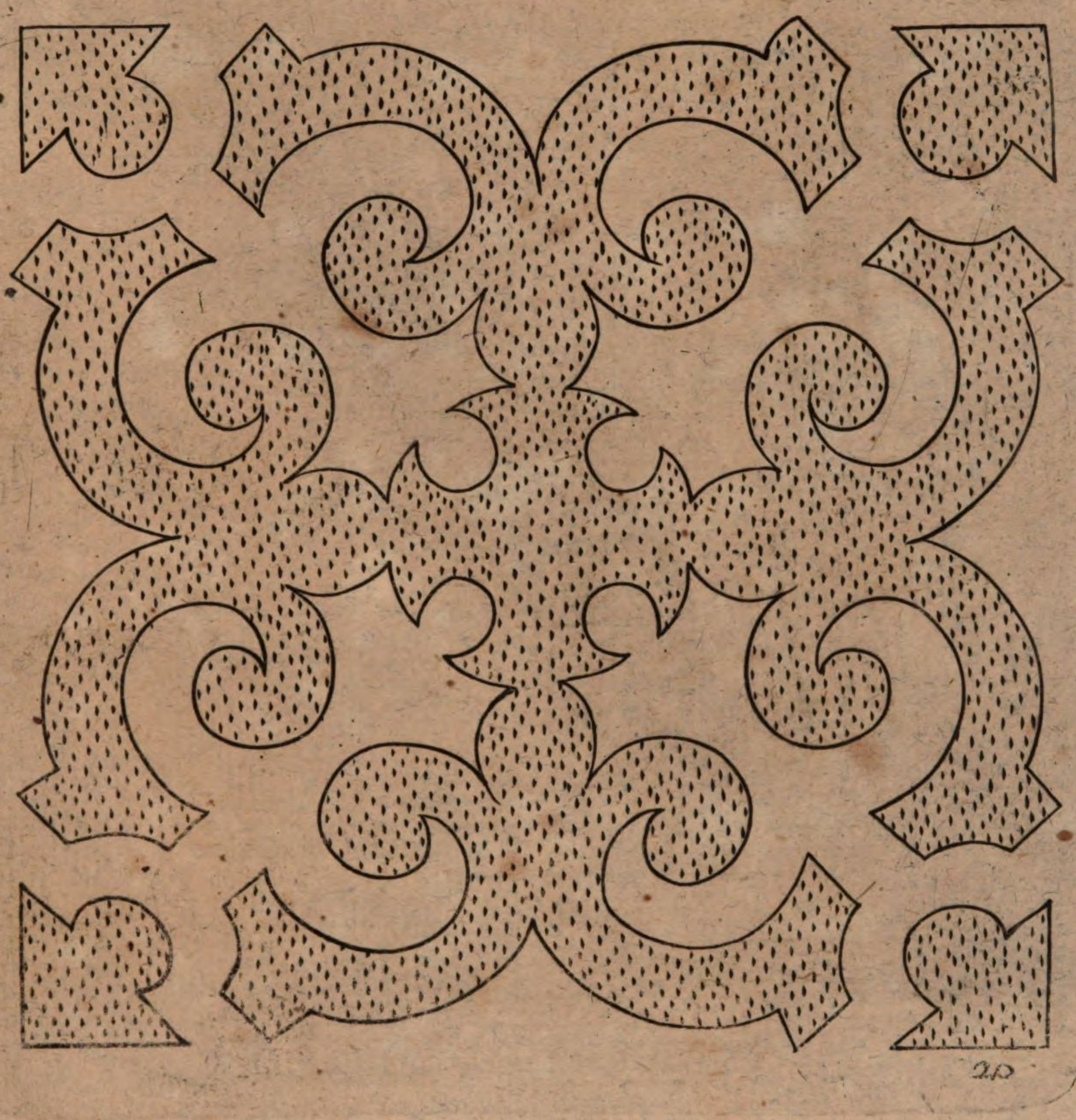


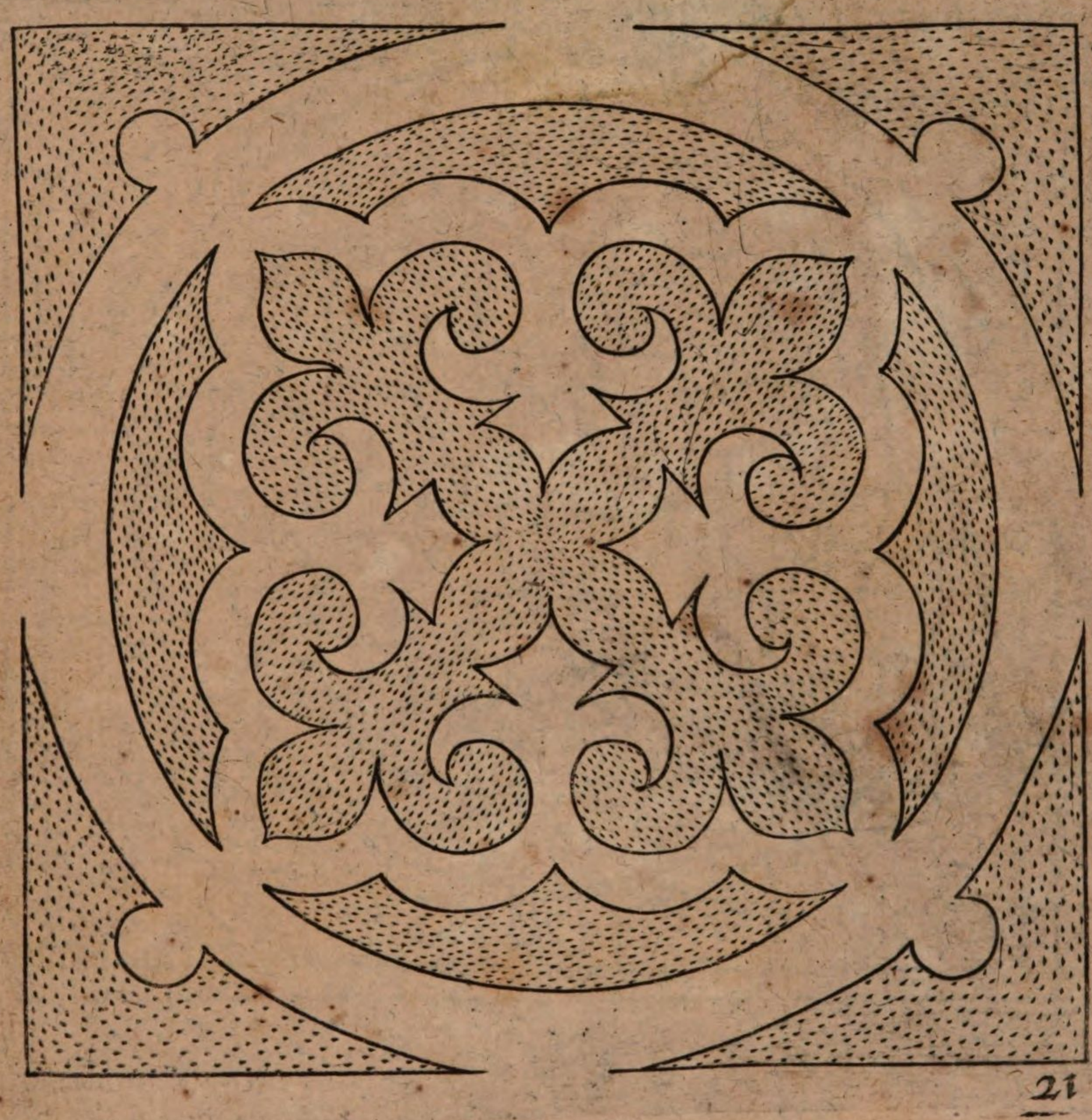


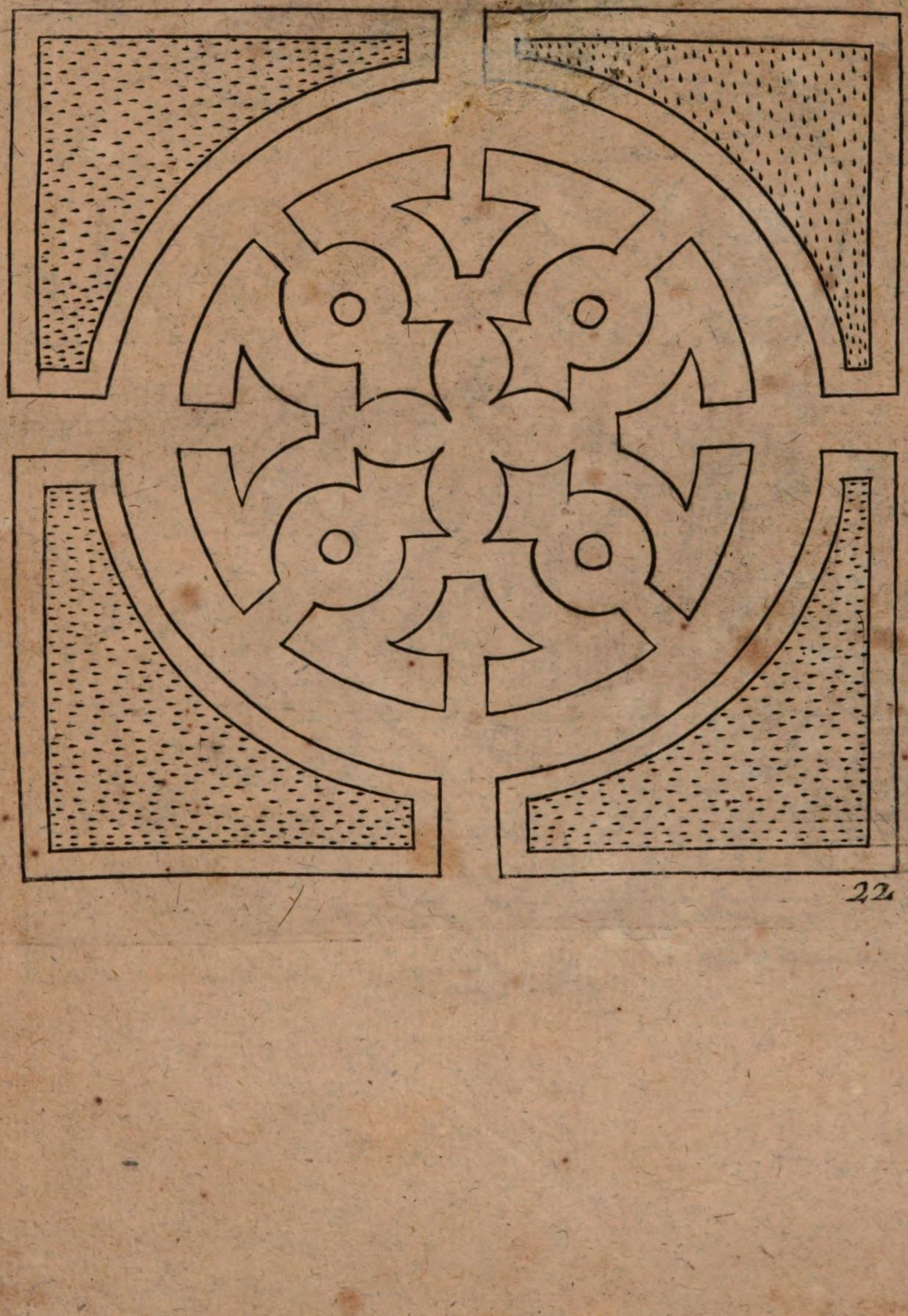


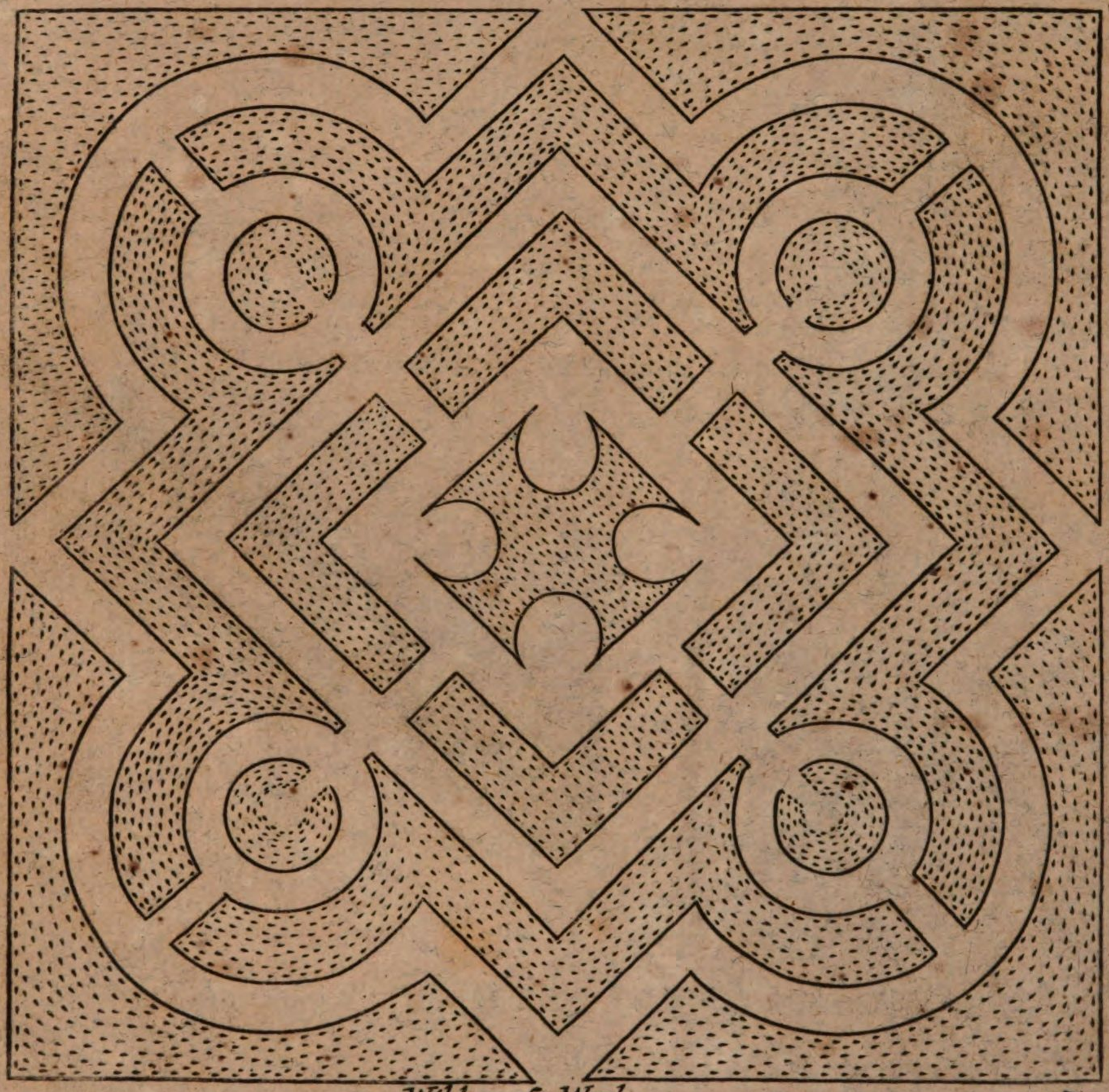


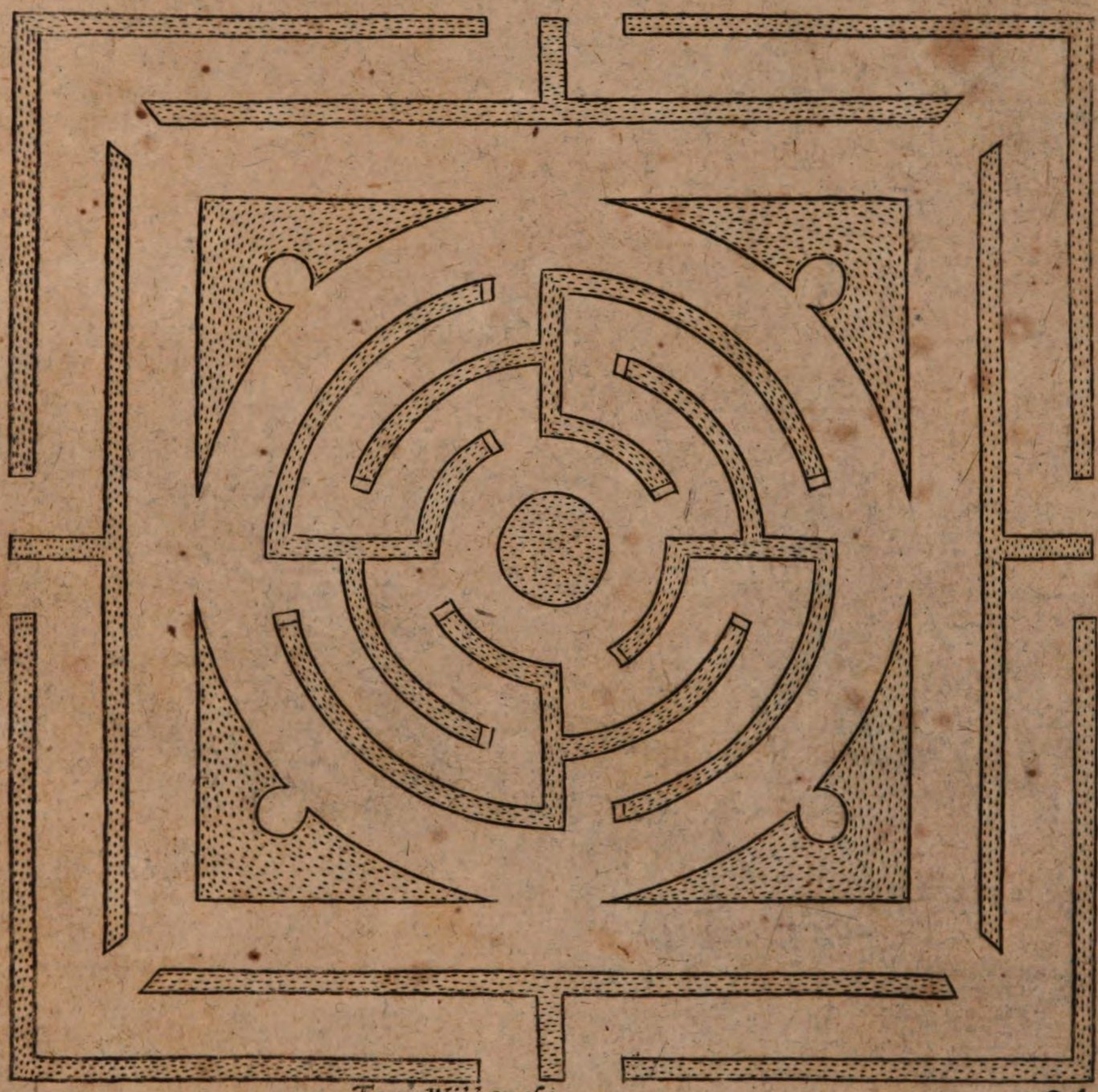












Bought of

Booth for 2-6

BSB Bayerische StaatsBibliothek
MDZ Münchener DigitalisierungsZentrum Digitale Bibliothek

Meager, Leonard

The Compleat English Gardner Or, A Sure Guide to Young Planters and Gardners: In Three Parts ...

London [ca. 1710]

4 Oecon. 147
urn:nbn:de:bvb:12-bsb10990115-1